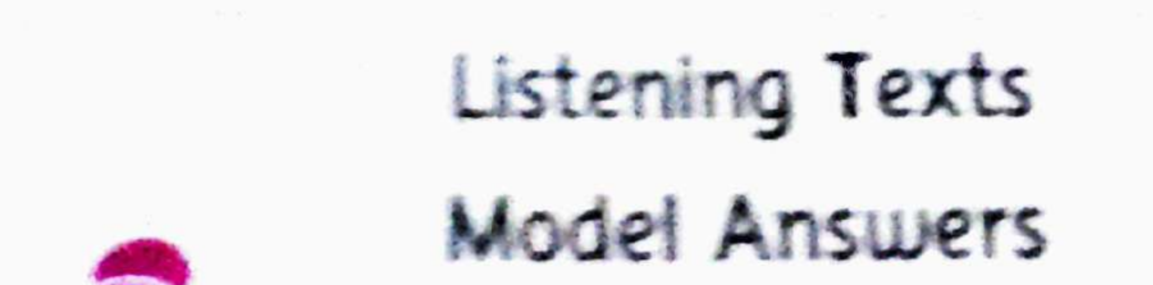
AL-BAHER

CONNECT PLUS



Let's remember





Theme (1) - I discover myself

	Unit 1 Express yourself	Unit 2 Home is where the heart is
		
...cabulary	Creative activities: animation, beads, clay, cloth collage, jewelry, junk modeling, outdoor art, pottery, rocket, sculpture Words related to music: award, cello, choir, musician, perform, stage, talented Words related to art: apron, advertisement, bubbles, costumes, edit, exhibition, irregular, kilo, lump, materials, photography, play (n), reflect, sculptor, spheres, stainless steel, wheel	Activities: [illegible] play chess, play the piano, [illegible] comic books, watch cartoons Appliances and electricity: appliance, [illegible] blender, candle, [illegible] games console, hairdryer, [illegible] lighting, microwave oven, [illegible] refrigerator, smoothie Phrasal verbs: clean up, hang up, [illegible] pick up, put away, put out, tidy up Other words: brick, [illegible] charge the car battery, [illegible] curious, [illegible] great-grandmother, heat food, iron the clothes, [illegible] shocked, vacuum Words related to caring for animals: attention, collar, [illegible]
...guage	Zero conditional If you paint, you get paint on your hands. If I go to bed late, I can't wake up in the morning. Prepositional phrases I'm always tired after a concert. I looked under all the chairs.	First conditional If it's hot tomorrow, I'll make a smoothie. Phrasal verbs I think we need to clean up the kitchen.
...ding	An article about a competition, a poem about fireworks, an article about sculptures, a story about a school show	A description of a room, an [illegible] about an appliance, a story about robots in the future, a story about a [illegible], a story about a [illegible] house
...ing	A report using when to sequence events	A short description of a room, [illegible] at home, an instructional care guide for a pet, a [illegible] about your home
...ing	Ask and answer about creative activities, ask and answer about when and where something happens, discuss sculptures, discuss a school show	Describe what you have in your room, discuss appliances, retell a story
...ing ...skills	An interview with a musician Self-expression: varied ways to express yourself Art appreciation: learning about sculpture and poetry	A dialog about a family organizing their chores Problem solving: how to care for a pet Science appreciation: learning about appliances
...	Curiosity Appreciation of art	Respect Responsibility
... and ...nges	Non-discrimination	Citizenship
... of ...with other	Art: sculptures and their materials	Science: [illegible] appliances and inventions

Review 1

Non-fiction reader: [illegible] A biography

Theme (2) - Myself and others

	Unit 3 School time!	Unit 4 We can make a difference
		
Vocabulary	Words related to school: art, boarding (school), break, cafeteria, demonstration, equipment, flexible green roofs, gym, halls, history, ICT, math, mobile, test, nomadic, reindeer, science, sets, subject, timetable, uniform Words from stories: bit, challenge, collapsed, court, herbs, journey, palace, papyrus, poisonous, screamed, scribe, script, shook, tablet	Describing people: braces, curly hair, glasses, hearing aid, mean, straight hair, wheelchair Methods of communication: finger spelling, lip-reading, sign language, written notes Words with suffixes: advertisement, information, kindness Other words: cerebral palsy, crawl, decorate, herd, hunter, leader, movable (elbow), physiotherapist, prosthetic (arm), roar, route, walker
Language	Adverbs of frequency with the present simple: Sometimes, I get the bus with my friends. I often walk to school when it's dry. Reported speech: Basel said that they couldn't go to school.	Reported questions: He asked us if we heard lots of sounds outside. Superlative adjectives: Science is the hardest subject for me. That was the worst test ever!
Reading	A report about schools around the world; a blog about school life in the USA; a brochure about an event at a school; a story about school life in ancient Egypt; a story about a difficult journey to school	A story about a lesson; a play; a story about a special girl; a traditional story
Writing	A paragraph about your school week; sentences about your plans for the future; an opinion with adverb phrases	A paragraph describing people; a detailed personal profile
Speaking	Discuss different school clubs; present your plan for a new school; discuss events in stories	Discuss opinions on different topics; discuss what is the same and what is different between you and a partner; practice and present a play; discuss events in stories
Listening	An account of school life in Bangladesh; a dialog about school clubs	A dialog about an amazing young man
Life skills	**Creative thinking:** designing your own school **Independence:** writing an opinion with a conclusion	**Critical thinking:** comparing similarities and differences **Self-expression:** writing a detailed personal profile
Values	**Cooperation** **Respect**	**Tolerance and acceptance** **Respect**
Issues and challenges	**Citizenship** **Globalization**	**Non-discrimination** **Citizenship**
Integrated cross-curriculum topics	**History:** school life in Ancient Egypt	**Social studies:** ensuring everybody in a community helps each other

Review 2

Fiction reader: A wonderful surprise

Lesson (1) LET'S REMEMBER

Natural resources موارد طبيعية

coal	فحم	flax	نبات الكتان
salt	ملح	linen	الكتان (قماش)

Adjectives صفات

annoying	مزعج	tired	متعب
excited	متحمس	frightening	مخيف

Ecosystems نُظم بيئية

grassland	أرض عشبية	desert	صحراء
forest	غابة	rainforest	غابة مطيرة (استوائية)

Extreme weather الطقس الشديد

thunderstorm	عاصفة رعدية	hurricane	إعصار
dust storm	عاصفة ترابية	flood	فيضان

Forces القُوى

wheel	عجلة	rope	حبل
spring	زنبرك	hook	خطاف

Free-time activities أنشطة وقت الفراغ

go camping	يذهب للتخييم	go hiking	التنزه سيرًا على الأقدام
go skiing	يذهب للتزلج	play sports	يمارس الرياضة

Jobs in science وظائف علمية

engineer	مهندس	astronaut	رائد فضاء
scientist	عالم	pilot	طيار

Places in a city أماكن في المدينة

aquarium	معرض الأحياء المائية	harbour	مرفأ - ميناء
planetarium	مبنى القبة السماوية	ruins	أطلال - بقايا

Help your child revise these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يراجع هذه الكلمات.

Extra vocabulary

skateboarding	التزلج (على الألواح)	beauty	جمال
tropical	استوائي	origami	فن طي الورق (الأوريجامي)
natural wonders	عجائب طبيعية	put up a tent	ينصب خيمة



Relative pronouns ضمائر الوصل

who for people ذي / التي (للأشخاص)

e.g. Tarek is my friend who wants to be a teacher.

which for things and animals ي / التي (للأشياء والحيوانات)

e.g. These are flowers which grow in Egypt.

where for places ث (للمكان)

e.g. Salma sent me photos of the park where she plays tennis.

Question tag السؤال المذيل

جملة خبرية مثبتة , فعل مساعد أو ناقص منفي + ضمير فاعل ?

e.g. He can jump, can't he?

جملة خبرية منفية , فعل مساعد أو ناقص مثبت + ضمير فاعل ?

e.g. He can't swim, can he?

enjoy / like يستمتع بـ / يحب

enjoy / like + noun / (v + ing)

e.g. I enjoy English classes at school very much.

- He likes reading short stories.

Lesson (1)

go + (v + ing) يمارس نشاط

e.g. She goes swimming on Fridays.

anyone / anybody / anything تأتي في السؤال والنفي

e.g. Did you see anyone in the class?

- I didn't find anything to eat.

everybody "الجميع "للأشخاص / **everything** كل شيء

e.g. Everybody is at school. e.g. I enjoyed everything at the party.

too جدًا لدرجة أن لا

too + adj. + to + inf.

e.g. The tea is too hot to drink.

enough كافٍ

adj. + enough + to + inf.

e.g. The water is warm enough to swim.

Request الطلب

Will + subject + inf. ...?

e.g. Will you help me do my homework?

Conjunctions

أدوات الربط

and و

e.g. He went to the club and played tennis.

but لكن

e.g. He went to school, but it was a holiday.

so لذلك

e.g. He loves doing art, so he goes to art club.

because لأن

e.g. He went to hospital because he was ill.

Adjectives and nouns الصفات والأسماء

Noun		Adjective	
luck	الحظ	lucky	محظوظ
beauty	الجمال	beautiful	جميلة
patience	الصبر	patient	صبور

"If" Zero Conditional "إذا / لو" الحالة الشرطية الصفرية

If / When + present simple , present simple or imperative "جملة أمر"

- When you go down the hill, the bike moves.
- When you boil water, it turns from a liquid to a gas.
- If you don't want to sleep, read a good book.
- When a volcano erupts, fire and rocks come out of the top.

General Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I have a friend .... is very good at skateboarding
   a) who b) which c) where d) when
2. These photos show people the .... of the desert
   a) beautiful b) beauty c) ugly d) pretty
3. I really enjoy .... time outside with my friends in the summer
   a) spent b) spends c) spend d) spending
4. I have to do a project about a natural wonder. Will you .... me
   a) help b) to help c) helping d) helped
5. I love this café. .... I've tried here is delicious
   a) Anybody b) Everybody c) Everyone d) Everything

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

6. Do you like .... hiking?
   a) go b) goes c) going d) went
7. Do you know .... who can put up a tent?
   a) anybody b) anything c) everyone d) everybody
8. It's .... early to get up, go back to sleep!
   a) many b) such c) enough d) too
9. When you .... water, it turns into a gas.
   a) boil b) boiled c) boiling d) boils
10. The bike moves .... you go down the hill.
   a) if b) but c) so d) before

2 Circle the correct words.

1. You need patient / patience to learn a new language.
2. Tarek was pleased because everybody / anybody came to his party.
3. They play basketball every week, don't / didn't they?
4. Mariam enjoys learn / learning new languages.
5. It's enough / too late to start watching a movie now.
6. Elephants can't jump, can / can't they?
7. That team was very luck / lucky to win the football game.
8. There are big black clouds in the sky. I think it can / might rain.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. of - photos - Can - the ruins - take - you - ?

....

2. in - Is - a bright - sleep - room - easy to - it - ?

....

3. salad - yet - Have - the - made - they - ?

....

4. going - like - Do - you - shopping - ?

....



Lesson (2) LET'S REMEMBER



Vocabulary

heart	قلب	solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية
Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	nocturnal animals	حيوانات ليلية
brakes	فرامل	renewable natural resource	مورد طبيعي متجدد
archery	الرماية	wrestling	المصارعة
Earth	الأرض	slow down	يبطئ (من سرعة)
sense of hearing	حاسة السمع	blood	دم
airplanes	طائرات	project	مشروع
definitely	بالتأكيد	popular	مشهور - محبوب
find out	يكتشف / يعرف	interview	مقابلة شخصية



Conjugation of verbs

Present		Past	P.P
be	يكون	was / were	been
make	يصنع / يجعل	made	made
tell	يخبر	told	told

1- The Present Perfect Tense زمن المضارع التام

Form **Subject + have / has + P.P**

e.g. I have eaten pizza. She's seen her friends.

Negative

Subject + haven't / hasn't + P.P

e.g. I haven't met the king yet. She hasn't eaten pizza yet.

Question

Yes/No question **Have / Has + subject + P.P ....?**

e.g. Have you fixed the car yet? - Yes, I have. - No, I haven'

Has Ali been to France? - Yes, he has. - No, he has

Lesson (2)

Wh- question

Q.W + have/ has + subject + P.P ....?

e.g. Where have you been? - I have been to school.

What has Sara done? - She has cooked lunch.

2- Sequence connectors

First أولا Then ثم Finally في نهاية

e.g. First, I went to the library.

Then, I found an interesting book.

Finally, I borrowed it to read at home.

3-"If" first Conditional إذا أو الحالة الشرطية الأولى

If/ When + present simple, will + inf.

e.g. If we go to the planetarium, we will see some amazing stars and planets.

"If" Second Conditional

If + past simple would + inf.

e.g. If I had a lot of money, Id buy a car.

4- Giving advice

should / shouldn't + inf.

e.g. You should study hard for your exams.

You shouldn't eat candy every day.

5- Reported speech

e.g. "I'm going to ride my bike to school."

Youssef said he was going to ride his bike to school.

General Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Have you .... to India?
   a) be b) being c) to be d) been
2. Have you ever .... koshari?
   a) make b) made c) makes d) making
3. Have you .... your dad about your test score?
   a) tell b) tells c) told d) telling
4. Amina wanted to find .... how to be an astronaut.
   a) in b) out c) of d) with
5. Amina found a/an .... with an astronaut in a magazine.
   a) view b) views c) interview d) interviewer
6. Football is the most .... sport in my class.
   a) unknown b) popular c) informal d) unpopular

2 Read and complete with the correct form.

1. If I .... (have) a lot of money. I'd buy my parents a big present.
2. Have your cousins ever .... (swim) in the sea?
3. You shouldn't .... (eating) candy every day.
4. If we go to the planetarium, we .... (see) some amazing stars and planets.
5. Mom .... (not finish) watching her favorite TV program yet.
6. If I saw a lion in the shopping mall, I .... (run) away!

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Australia - have - I - to - been - .
   ....
2. my birthday - I - is - feel - when - excited - it - .
   ....
3. an - be - I - to - astronaut - want - .
   ....
... happy - got 100% - My dad - I - that - was - .

...such questions.

Unit 1 Express yourself!

Having fun and being creative!

In this unit, the students will ...

- talk about different creative activities.
- understand and use the zero **conditional.**
- listen to and understand an interview.
- understand and use prepositional phrases.
- read and understand a poem.
- read and understand an article.
- **write** a report using time clauses and sequencing.
- read and understand a story.

Lesson (1) HOW CREATIVE ARE YOU?

Key vocabulary


junk modeling
صناعة المجسمات من الأشياء القديمة


making jewelry
صناعة المجوهرات


outdoor art
الفن الخارجي


pottery
صناعة الأواني الفخارية


computer animation
الرسوم المتحركة بالكمبيوتر


sculpture
فن النحت


making collage
تصميم الملصقات "فن الكولاج"


designing clothes
تصميم الملابس



Extra vocabulary

competition	مسابقة	poem	قصيدة
creative	مبدع / إبداعي	skill	مهارة
exhibition	معرض	clay	صلصال
museum	متحف	planet	كوكب
painting	لوحة	material	مادة خام
cardboard box	صندوق ورق مقوى "كرتونة"	wood	خشب
plastic bottles	زجاجات بلاستيكية	stone	حجر
beads	خرز	leaves	أوراق شجر
bracelet	سوار / إسورة	bowl	سلطانية
lids	أغطية الأوعية	temporary	مؤقت
necklace	عقد / قلادة	shells	أصداف

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك ...

Lesson (1)

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present		Past	P.P
enter	يدخل	entered	entered
appear	يظهر	appeared	appeared
express	يُعبّر	expressed	expressed
design	يصمم	designed	designed
melt	يذوب	melted	melted
recycle	يعيد تدوير	recycled	recycled

Irregular verbs

Present		Past	P.P
show	يعرض / يبين	showed	shown
send	يرسل	sent	sent
make	يصنع / يجعل	made	made
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
find	يجد	found	found

Important expressions and prepositions

How creative are you?	ما مدى إبداعك؟
a bit of everything	القليل من كل شيء
to get you excited	تثير حماسك
save money	يدخر مال
make your own clothes	تصنع الملابس الخاصة بك
enter the competition	يدخل / يشترك في المسابقة
creative work	عمل إبداعي
creative activities	أنشطة إبداعية
in the outside world	في العالم الخارجي
prefer using technology	يفضل استخدام التكنولوجيا
get your hands messy	تتسخ يداك

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

Show your creativity!

أظهر إبداعك!

Enter our fun new competition and show us how creative you are!

شارك في مسابقتنا الجديدة الممتعة وبين لنا مدى إبداعك!

We want children between the ages of five and fifteen to send us their creative work. Your work will appear in a big art **exhibition** in the city museum.

نريد من الأطفال الذين تتراوح أعمارهم بين خمسة وخمسة عشر عامًا أن يرسلوا لنا أعمالهم الإبداعية. سيتم عرض عملك في معرض فني كبير في متحف المدينة.

There are so many different ways you can express yourself. You could send us a painting, a photo, a poem, or a story. Or why not try something new? Here are some ideas for different creative activities to get you excited!

هناك العديد من الطرق المختلفة التي يمكنك من خلالها التعبير عن نفسك. يمكنك أن ترسل لنا لوحة أو صورة أو قصيدة أو قصة. أو لما لا تجرب شيئا جديدًا؟ إليك بعض الأفكار للأنشطة الإبداعية المختلفة ستثير حماسك!

Junk modeling: What can you make with a cardboard box? Plastic bottle and **lids**? Try junk modeling! Use your creative and design skills to build a rocket, a ship, a car, or a house.

صناعة المجسمات من الأشياء القديمة: ماذا يمكنك أن تصنع من صندوق من الورق المقوى؟ الزجاجات والأغطية البلاستيكية؟ جرب صناعة المجسمات من الأشياء القديمة! استخدم مهاراتك الإبداعية والتصميمية لبناء صاروخ أو سفينة أو سيارة أو منزل.

Pottery: Do you like getting your hands messy? Then try pottery! Use cl to make a bowl, a cup, or a vase.

صناعة الأواني الفخارية: هل تحب أن تتسخ يداك؟ إذا جرب صناعة الأواني الفخارية! استخدم الصلصال لعمل وعاء أو كوب أو مزهرية.

Designing clothes: If you can't find anything you want to wear, how abo designing and making your own clothes? You can use recycled cloth save money and help the planet.

تصميم الملابس: إذا لم تتمكن من العثور على ما تريد ارتداءه، ماذا عن تصميم وصنع ملابسك الخاصة؟ يمكنك استخدام القماش المعاد لتوفير المال ومساعدة الكوكب.

Making a collage: If you can't decide what to use in your project, use a bit of everything! You could make a beautiful collage with material, pa and colored paper.

عمل الملصقات "الكولاج": إذا لم تتمكن من تحديد ما يجب استخدامه في مشروعك ، فاستخدم القليل من كل شيء! يمكنك أن تصنع ملصقات جميلة باستخدام المواد ، والطلاء ، والورق الملون.

Lesson (1)

Making jewelry: Use **beads** to make beautiful jewelry, for example, necklaces or bracelets.
صناعة المجوهرات: استخدم الخرز لصنع مجوهرات جميلة ، على سبيل المثال ، قلادات أو أساور.

Sculpture: You could use wood, clay, or stone to make a sculpture of an animal, a person, or a completely new shape.
فن النحت: يمكنك استخدام الخشب أو الصلصال أو الحجر لعمل تمثال لحيوان أو شخص أو شكل جديد تمامًا.

Outdoor art: Use the things you find around you in the outside world, for example, leaves or shells to make some outdoor art.
الفن الخارجي: استخدم الأشياء التي تجدها من حولك في العالم الخارجي ، على سبيل المثال ، أوراق الشجر أو الأصداف لعمل بعض الأعمال الفنية الخارجية.

Computer animation: If you prefer using technology, you could use your computer skills to make an **animation**. Moving pictures can tell a great story!
الرسوم المتحركة بالكمبيوتر: إذا كنت تفضل استخدام التكنولوجيا ، فيمكنك استخدام مهارات الكمبيوتر الخاصة بك لعمل رسوم متحركة. الصور المتحركة يمكن أن تحكي قصة رائعة!

There are so many things you can do! How do you like to express yourself?
هناك الكثير من الأشياء التي يمكنك القيام بها! كيف تحب أن تعبر عن نفسك؟

Note:

"so" shows the result. "لذلك" تبين النتيجة

e.g. Recycling is important, so I would do junk modeling.

"because" shows the reason. "لأن" تبين السبب

e.g. I would make outdoor art because I like collecting shells.

Asking about creative activities



Which creative activities do you think are easy?
ما الأنشطة الإبداعية التي تعتقد أنها سهلة؟



I think outdoor art and junk modeling are easy.
أعتقد أن الفن الخارجي وصناعة المجسمات سهلة.



Which creative activities do you think are difficult?
ما الأنشطة الإبداعية التي تعتقد أنها صعبة؟



I think pottery and sculpture are difficult.
أعتقد أن صناعة الفخار والنحت أنشطة صعبة.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. You could use your computer .... if you like technology
   a) mouse   b) keyboard   c) scanner   d) skills
2. You could use your computer to make a/an ....
   a) movie   b) animation   c) story   d) exhibition
3. Moving pictures can tell a great ....
   a) story   b) poem   c) time   d) word
4. There are many things you can .... to express yourself
   a) make   b) do   c) play   d) stay

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

exhibition - creative - painting - express - art

We want children between the ages of five and fifteen to send us their 1).................... work. Your work will appear in a big art 2).................... in the city museum. There are so many different ways you can 3).................... yourself. You could send us a 4).................... , a photo, a poem, or a story.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. You can use .... or shells in outdoor art
   a) leaves   b) cloth   c) books   d) beads
2. To make jewelry, you can use different colored ....
   a) clay   b) beads   c) linen   d) cloth
3. You could use plastic bottles or a .... box in junk modeling
   a) cloth   b) sand   c) cardboard   d) clay
4. Wood or .... are good things to use for sculpture
   a) glass   b) plastic   c) cloth   d) clay
5. You could use a .... to make an animation
   a) computer   b) radio   c) TV   d) fridge
6. If you design clothes, you can save money by using recycled ....
   a) beads   b) cloth   c) clay   d) jewelery

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Andy Goldsworthy is a famous British artist who works both with and in nature. He creates sculptures that are made with natural materials, such as flowers, leaves, snow, grass, and wood. To do this, he uses only his hands and simple tools. Then, instead of putting his works in a gallery, he presents them outdoors in their natural environment. Because they are in the wind, sun, and rain, the works are usually temporary. They give us a sense of connection with natural world and the way that it changes through the seasons. This is because the sculptures will change how they look according to each season. So for example, a sculpture made of snow will melt and disappear if the weather is not very cold.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Andy is from ....

   a) America   b) Britain   c) France   d) Egypt

2. He makes sculpture from .... materials.

   a) wood   b) plastic   c) natural   d) environment

3. The word "create" means ....

   a) play   b) make   c) break   d) heat

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to? ....

5. Why are his sculptures usually temporary? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. make - a cardboard - What - box - can - with - you - ?

   ....

2. like - I - make - to - a collage - .

   ....

3. made - He - a bowl - with - clay - some - has - .

   ....

قبعة شمس	luckily	
	environment	

Definitions

messy	not clean or tidy
disappear	to go away; you can't see it any more
uncomfortable	not feeling nice on your skin
relaxing	making you happy and not worried

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present		Past	P.P
mix	يخلط	mixed	mixed
paint	يلون	painted	painted
disappear	يختفي	disappeared	disappeared

Irregular verbs

Present		Past	P.P
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
think	يعتقد / يفكر	thought	thought
meet	يقابل	met	met
set	يضبط (الساعة)	set	set
leave	يترك / يغادر	left	left

Important expressions and prepositions

That looks good.	هذا يبدو جيدًا.	feel better	
with my hands	بيديّ	I suppose you are right.	
set an alarm	يضبط المنبه	good at / bad at	

Help your child identify these words.

Lesson (2)

Listen and read.

Noha : Have you heard about this competition, Hesham? It's for any kind of creative project. I'd like to enter.

هل سمعت عن هذه المسابقة، يا هشام؟ إنها لأي نوع من المشاريع الإبداعية. أود أن اشترك فيها.

Hesham : Oh wow, that looks good. What are you going to make?

أوه واو، هذا يبدو جيدًا. ماذا سوف تصنعين؟

Noha : I don't know. My favorite activity is painting. I always feel happy when I'm painting. If I'm sad, I paint. Then I feel better.

لا أعرف. نشاطي المفضل هو الرسم. أشعر دائمًا بالسعادة عندما أرسم. إذا كنت حزينة ، أرسم. عندئذ أشعر بتحسن.

Hesham : Hmm. If I paint, I don't feel happy. I'm not very good at it!

همم. إذا قمت بالرسم ، لا أشعر بالسعادة. أنا لست جيدًا جدًا في ذلك!

Noha : Yes, you are! Anyway, no one is bad at a creative project. You can do or make anything you like. There's no right or wrong!

بلى ، أنت جيد! على أي حال ، لا أحد سيء في مشروع إبداعي. يمكنك أن تفعل أو تصنع أي شيء تحبه. ليس هناك صواب أو خطأ!

Hesham : I prefer making things with my hands. I like sculpture or junk modeling, but my favorite is pottery. I think it's really relaxing!

أنا أفضل صنع الأشياء بيدي. أحب النحت أو صناعة المجسمات من الأشياء القديمة، لكن المفضل لدي هو صناعة الأواني الفخارية.
أعتقد أنه مريح حقًا!

Noha : Oh, I don't agree. I don't like pottery because I don't like getting my hands messy. I think it's really uncomfortable to have clay on my hands.

أوه ، أنا لا أوافق. أنا لا أحب صناعة الأواني الفخارية لأنني لا أحب أن تتسخ يداي. أعتقد أنه من غير المريح حقًا أن يكون لدي طين على يدي.

Hesham : But if you paint, you get paint on your hands.

ولكن إذا قمت بالرسم ، ستجدين الطلاء على يديك.

Noha : Well, yes, I suppose you're right. Luckily, the paint disappears quickly when I wash them!

حسنًا ، نعم ، أعتقد أنك على حق. لحسن الحظ ، يختفي الطلاء بسرعة عندما أغسلهم!

Help your child listen and read.

Listen and read.

Samia : Hey, Amira. How are you? You look worried.

أهلا، أميرة. كيف حالك؟ أنت تبدين قلقة.

Amira : I am. I'm making some outdoor art for the creative project competition, but it's very windy today. When it's windy, the leaves and flowers in my art move.

نعم، أنا أقوم بعمل بعض الأعمال الفنية في الهواء الطلق لمسابقة المشاريع الإبداعية. لكن الجو عاصف جدا اليوم. عندما يكون الجو عاصفًا، تتحرك الأوراق والزهور في أعمالي الفنية.

Samia : Oh, dear. Where is the art?

يا عزيزي. أين هو الفن؟

Amira : It's at the back of the school playground. Here's a photo.

إنه في الجزء الخلفي من ملعب المدرسة. هنا صورة.

Samia : Why is it at the back of the playground?

لماذا هو في الجزء الخلفي من الملعب؟

Amira : If the art's here, then nobody sees it. The back of the playground is better.

إذا كان الفن هنا، فلن يراه أحد. الجزء الخلفي من الملعب أفضل.

Samia : It looks great. Where did you get those pretty leaves?

تبدو رائعة. من أين حصلت على تلك الأوراق الجميلة؟

Amira : In the park. When I walk in the park, I get lots of ideas for outdoor art. Oh, no! I think it might rain. When it rains, outdoor art looks terrible. If I make it inside, then it isn't outdoor art!

في الحديقة. عندما أسير في الحديقة، أحصل على الكثير من الأفكار للفن الخارجي. أوه لا! أعتقد أنها قد تمطر. عندما تمطر، يبدو الفن الخارجي فظيعا. إذا قمت بذلك في الداخل، فهذا ليس فنًا خارجيًا!

Samia : Don't worry, Amira. Let me help you. We can put a big cloth over it until the wind stops.

لا تقلقي يا أميرة. دعيني أساعدك. يمكننا وضع قطعة قماش كبيرة فوقها حتى تتوقف الريح.

Amira : Thank you, Samia. That's a good idea.

شكرًا سامية. إنها فكرة جيدة.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.



(If) Zero Conditional

Usage الاستخدام

We use the zero conditional to talk about facts or things that are usually true for us. نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الصفرية للتحدث عن حقائق أو أشياء عادة ما تكون صحيحة بالنسبة لنا.

If / When + present simple , present simple or (can + inf.)

e.g. If you paint, you get paint on your hands.
If I go to bed late, I can't wake up in the morning.

present simple or (can + inf.) + if + present simple

e.g. You get paint on your hands if you paint.
I can't wake up in the morning if I go to bed late.

- We also use the zero conditional to give instructions or make suggestions.
- نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الصفرية لإعطاء التعليمات وعمل الاقتراحات.
- وتكون جملة جواب الشرط جملة أمر (تبدأ بالفعل في المصدر).

If / When + present simple , imperative "جملة أمر"

e.g. If it starts to rain, use an umbrella.
When you arrive at school, come to the classroom.

Imperative + if / when + present simple

e.g. Use an umbrella if it starts to rain.
Come to the classroom when you arrive at school.

Notes:

إذا بدأنا الجملة بـ (If / When) نضع (,) comma بين الجملتين.

e.g. If I do something good, I feel happy.

أما إذا جاءت if / when في منتصف الجملة فلا نضع (,) comma.

e.g. I feel happy if I do something good.

Help your child identify zero conditional.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الحالة الشرطية الصفرية.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I always .... happy when I pain[t]
   a) feel b) feels c) felt d) will feel
2. If I paint, I .... sad
   a) doesn't feel b) don't feel c) isn't feeling d) am feeling
3. If you paint, you .... paint on your hands
   a) get b) gets c) got d) getting
4. You can make green if you .... blue and yellow
   a) mix b) mixes c) mixed d) mixing
5. If she .... her brush in water, she cleans it
   a) put b) puts c) putting d) will put
6. If it rains, ... an umbrella
   a) use b) uses c) used d) using
7. If I go to bed late, I can't .... up in the morning
   a) wake b) wakes c) woke d) waking

2 Read and complete with the correct form.

1. If you leave your painting for about an hour, the paint .... (dry)
2. If you use recycled paper, you .... (could) help the environment
3. If you are free, ... (visiting) us
4. When you .... (arrives) at school, come to the classroom
5. We can .... (gets) green if we mix blue and yellow

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Noha feels .... when she's painting.
   a) happy b) sad c) tired d) bored
2. If Noha is sad, she ....
   a) runs b) eats c) paints d) washes
3. Hesham isn't good at ....
   a) swimming b) singing c) painting d) running
4. Hesham likes .... and junk modeling.
   a) outdoor art b) animation c) animals d) sculpture

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

feels - creative - feel - painting - competition

Noha : Have you heard about this 1) ...., Hesham? It's for any kind of creative project. I'd like to enter.

Hesham : Oh wow, that looks good. What are you going to make?

Noha : I don't know. My favorite activity is 2) .... I always feel happy when I'm painting. If I'm sad, I paint. Then I feel better.

Hesham : Hmm. If I paint, I don't 3) .... happy. I'm not very good at it!

Noha : Yes, you are! Anyway, no one is bad at a 4) .... project. You can do or make anything you like. There's no right or wrong!

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. If I do something creative, I .... happy.
   a) feel b) felt c) feels d) feeling
2. When you go for a walk, you can .... things for outdoor art.
   a) find b) finding c) found d) finds

3. When I meet my friends, we .... animations.

   a) make   b) made   c) makes   d) making

4. If she has clay, she can .... pottery to give her friends.

   a) make   b) makes   c) made   d) making

5. If you want to get up early, you can .... an alarm.

   a) set   b) setting   c) sets   d) to set

6. When you go to the beach, ... a sunhat.

   a) taking   b) take   c) takes   d) took

7. If you are cold, ... a jacket.

   a) can wear   b) will wear   c) wear   d) wears

8. When my little brother is tired, he ....

   a) cries   b) is crying   c) cry   d) don't cry

4 Read and complete with the correct form.

1. If you mix blue and yellow, you can .... (makes) gree
2. If you .... (mixing) red and blue, you make purpl
3. If you put your brush in water, you .... (cleaned)
4. If you .... (leaves) your paintings for about an hour, the paint drie
5. If you .... (used) recycled paper, you can help the environme

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. feel - paints - How - does - she - Noha - when - ?

....

2. doesn't - Why - like - Noha - pottery - ?

....

3. it - If - use - an umbrella - rain, - to - starts - .

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (3) A NIGHT OF COLORS

Key vocabulary

poem (n)	قصيدة	concert (n)
beads (n)	خرز	forest (n)
blasts (n)	انفجارات	bang (n)
verse (n)	مقطع (شعر)	lights (n)
line (n)	بيت شعر	bright (adj)
poet (n)	شاعر	day (n)
rhyme (n)	قافية - يتطابق في القافية	brilliantly (adv)
jewels (n)	جواهر	sailing boat
fireworks (n)	ألعاب نارية	softly

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present		Past	P.P
cheer	يهتف / يهلل	cheered	cheered
dance	يرقص	danced	danced
fill	يملأ	filled	filled
explode	ينفجر	exploded	exploded
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	imagined

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Irregular verbs

Present	Past	P.P
stand	يقف stood	stood
shoot	يُطلق shot	shot
burn	يحرق burnt / burned	burnt / burned
shine	يسطع shone	shone
hold	يمسك held	held

Definitions

a verse	is a part of the poem.	مقطع من القصيدة
a rhyme	is when two words sound the same at the end of the word.	قافية

Important expressions and prepositions

Expression	المعنى	Expression	المعنى
in the cold, black night	في الليلة المظلمة الباردة	with flashes of light	لها وميض من الضوء
far away	بعيد	hold our breath	نحبس أنفاسنا
quiet and still	هادئ وساكن	win an award	يفوز بجائزة
as bright as day	ساطعة مثل النهار	look like	يبدو مثل / يُشبه
shoot up into the air	ينطلق في الهواء	take off	تقلع (الطائرة) / ينطلق
fill my ears	يملأ آذاني	see them dance	نراهم يرقصون
make the sky bright	تجعل السماء ساطعة	watching them fly	نشاهدهم يطيرون
give away	يهب / يتبرع	on stage	على المسرح

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك لأن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (3)

Listen and read.

A Night of Colors

We stand together in the cold, black night,
The sky is dark and far away.
Everything is quiet and still, until – BANG!
The lights make the sky as bright as day.

Rockets shoot up into the air,
We shout and cheer, watching them fly.
Colors burn brilliantly against the black,
We see them dance happily through the sky.

The sound fills my ears, as each rocket takes off,
Exploding noisily with flashes of light.
Beads of red, yellow, silver, and gold,
Are beautiful jewels in the black night.

With blasts so loud and rockets up high,
A colorful fire against the stars.
The sky shines brightly with light and color,
We hold our breath, looking out far.



A Read and match.

1. The sky
2. Rockets
3. The sound
4. We hold

a. our breath.
b. fills my ears.
c. shines brightly.
d. shoot up.

B Answer the following questions.

1. How many verses are there in the poem? ....
2. How many lines are in each verse? ....
3. How many words in each verse rhyme? ....

Read the poem. How many verses are there?

Can I build a giant rock
To fly as far as the moon?
Or can I make a big tall tower
That won't fall down too soon?

I'd like to paint a dinosaur
In a forest of beautiful trees.
Or write a song to softly sing
Or make a collage out of leaves.

Or I could paint some picture
You know I love to draw.
I'd paint a hundred elephants
And I'd put them on the wall.

Or maybe paint a long red train
I'd be as happy as could be.
Or I could build a sailing ship
And sail happily on the sea.

I could easily write a book
And sell it or give it away.
or maybe I'll act on stage
And win an award for my play.



Tip!

In a poem, the poet sometimes uses words or something that is not real to help the reader imagine the way something real looks. For example, the fireworks in the sky are not really jewels, but they are so beautiful that they look like jewels.

قصيدة، يستخدم الشاعر أحيانًا كلمات أو شيء غير حقيقي لمساعدة القارئ على تخيل الطريقة التي يبدو بها الشيء الحقيقي. على المثال ، الألعاب النارية في السماء ليست حقًا جواهر ، لكنها جميلة جدا لدرجة أنها تبدو مثل الجواهر.

e.g. ***Beads of red, yellow, silver, and gold,***
Are beautiful jewels in the black night.

ead and learn.

/hen you want to write a poem, you make a chart like the following:

Topic:	Fireworks
Adjectives	bright, cold, black, dark, quiet, beautiful
Adverbs	brilliantly, happily, noisily, brightly
Verbs	shoot up, shout, cheer, dance, shine



Choose a topic and complete the chart.

the sea   a forest





Topic	
Adjectives	
Adverbs	
Verbs	

1 Circle the words that ryhme.

1. moon - tower - soon
2. be - ship - sea
3. sing - trees - leaves
4. book - away - play
5. draw - pictures - wall

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The sky shines ....
   a) noisily   b) brightly   c) brilliant   d) happily
2. Rockets shoot .... into the ai
   a) up   b) down   c) through   d) at
3. The .... fills my ears
   a) taste   b) touch   c) sound   d) sight
4. We hold our .... when we see the fireworks
   a) breathe   b) sight   c) ears   d) breath
5. A .... is a part of the poem
   a) rhyme   b) sentence   c) verse   d) word
6. A .... is when two words sound the same at the end of the word
   a) sound   b) word   c) verse   d) rhyme

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. take - Rockets - noisily - off - with - of light - flashes - .

....

2. shines - sky - The - brightly - .

....

3. is - The sky - dark - far away - and - .

....

4. fireworks - happily - We - dance - see - .

....

Lesson (4) BEAUTIFUL SCULPTURES



Key vocabulary

sculptor	نحات	sphere	كرة	damage	تلف / ضرر
sculptures	منحوتات	shiny	ساطع / لامع	sight	مشهد / معْلم
materials	مواد خام	irregular	غير منتظم	concert	حفل موسيقي
stainless steel	فولاذ مقاوم للصدأ	bubbles	فقاعات		

Important expressions and prepositions

interesting shapes	أشكال مُثيرة للاهتمام	all over the world	في كل أنحاء العالم
as well as	بالإضافة إلى	is made of	مصنوع من
a piece of	قطعة من	look like	يُشبه
for public places	للأماكن العامة	for a long time	لفترة طويلة
good for	جيد لـ	over the years	على مر السنين



Famous sculptures

منحوتات شهيرة

Sculpture		place	
Tall Tree and the Eye	الشجرة الطويلة والعين	Guggemheim Museum, Bilbao.Spain	متحف جوجنهايم، بلباو، إسبانيا
Cloud Gate	بوابة السحاب	Chicago, USA	مدينة شيكاغو في أمريكا
Balloon Dog	كلب البالون	20 places around the world	في ٢٠ مكان حول العالم
Sibelius Monument	نُصب سيبيليوس	Helsinki, Finland	هلسنكي ، عاصمة فنلندا
Nahdet Misr	نهضة مصر	Giza, Egypt	الجيزة، مصر



Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present		Past	P.P
move	ينتقل	moved	moved
study	يدرس	studied	studied
arrange	يرتب	arranged	arranged
float	يطفو	floated	floated
stay	يظل - يبقى	stayed	stayed
damage	يُتلف	damaged	damaged
reflect	يعكس	reflected	reflected

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Irregular verbs

Present		Past	P.P
stand	يقف	stood	stood
understand	يفهم	understood	understood

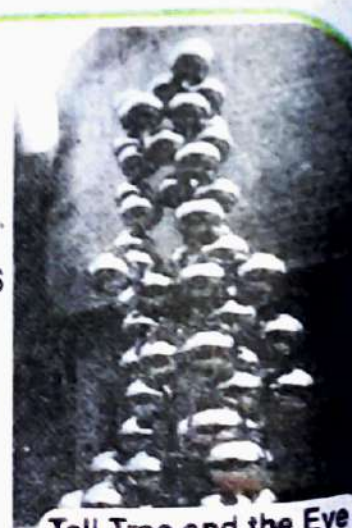


Definitions

bubble	a liquid ball full of air	فقاعة
sphere	the shape of a ball	كرة
irregular	not following a pattern	غير منتظم
reflect	when a mirror shows an image	يعكس
material	what something is made from, for example, gold, clay, wood	مادة خام
sculptor	a person who makes sculptures	نحات

Listen and read.

Anish Kapoor's sculptures


Tall Tree and the Eye

Anish Kapoor is a **sculptor**. He was born in India in 1954, and moved to London, UK, to study art in 1973. He likes to use new and interesting shapes as well as different **materials**. Kapoor makes very large pieces of art for public places, and people can see his art all over the world.

أنيش كابور نحات، ولد في الهند عام ١٩٥٤ ، وانتقل إلى لندن، في المملكة المتحدة ، لدراسة الفن في عام ١٩٧٣. يحب استخدام أشكال جديدة ومثيرة للاهتمام وكذلك مواد مختلفة. يصنع كابور قطع فنية كبيرة جدا للأماكن العامة ، ويمكن للناس رؤية فنه في جميع أنحاء العالم.

Tall Tree and the Eye is a famous sculpture by Anish Kapoor. It stands outside the Guggenheim Museum in Bilbao, Spain.

"الشجرة الطويلة والعين" هو قطعة نحت شهيرة صنعها أنيش كابور. تقع خارج متحف جوجنهايم في بلباو بإسبانيا.

Lesson (4)

This sculpture is about 13 meters tall. It is made of 73 stainless steel balls, or **spheres**.

يبلغ طول هذا التمثال حوالي ١٢ مترًا. وهو مصنوع من ٧٣ كرة من الفولاذ المقاوم للصدأ.

Stainless steel is very shiny, so when you look at *Tall Tree and the Eye*, you can see your own face many times. The spheres are arranged in an **irregular** pattern. This makes them look like **bubbles** which are floating!

الفولاذ المقاوم للصدأ لامع للغاية ، لذلك عندما تنظر إلى الشجرة الطويلة والعين ، يمكنك رؤية وجهك عدة مرات. ترتيب الكرات في نمط غير منتظم. هذا يجعلها تبدو وكأنها فقاعات تطفو!

Kapoor is a great artist. He understands math well, and he also understands materials. This means he can make sculptures that will stay in place for a long time.

كابور فنان عظيم. يفهم الرياضيات جيدًا ، كما أنه يفهم المواد الخام. هذا يعني أنه يمكنه صنع منحوتات ستبقى في مكانها لفترة طويلة.

For example, in *Tall Tree and the Eye*, Kapoor uses stainless steel because it is a very strong material. It's very good for outdoor sculptures because it stays shiny, and bad weather doesn't damage it.

على سبيل المثال ، في الشجرة الطويلة والعين ، يستخدم كابور الفولاذ المقاوم للصدأ لأنه مادة قوية جدًا. إنه جيد جدًا للمنحوتات الخارجية لأنه يظل لامعًا ، والطقس السيئ لا يتلفه.


Cloud Gate

Over the years, Kapoor has made many other famous sculptures. Another famous Kapoor sculpture is *Cloud Gate*. You can see it in Chicago, USA.

على مر السنين ، صنع كابور العديد من المنحوتات الشهيرة الأخرى. تمثال آخر شهير لكابور هو بوابة السحاب. يمكنك رؤيته في شيكاغو ، بالولايات المتحدة الأمريكية.

Cloud Gate is very high – people can even walk under it! It is also made of stainless steel, which **reflects** the sky, the buildings, and the people around it, like a huge mirror. It is a very popular sight to visit in Chicago.

منحوت بوابة السحاب عالي جدًا - يمكن للناس حتى المشي تحته! كما أنه مصنوع من الفولاذ المقاوم للصدأ الذي يعكس السماء والمباني والأشخاص المحيطين به مثل المرآة الضخمة. إنه معلم مشهور جدًا يمكنك زيارته في شيكاغو.

- **Read again. Complete the fact file for *Tall Tree and the Eye*.**

FACT FILE

1- **Name:** ....
2- **Sculptor:** ....
3- **Height:** ....
4- **Material:** ....
5- **Location:** ....

Help your child listen and ...

Read and complete the table.


The Sibelius monument

The Sibelius monument was built in 1967 to celebrate
the famous musician Jean Sibelius, who died in 1957.
Sibelius was from Finland, a country in northern
Europe. Sibelius's work is still popular today and
played at concerts and in theaters all around the world.
The sculpture was created by the female artist Eila
Hiltunen, who was also from Finland. The sculpture has 600 steel pipes o
different sizes in an irregular shape. It is 8.5 meters high and 10.5 meter
wide. Hiltunen wanted the sculpture to look like the way Sibelius's musi
sounds. You can see this sculpture in the Sibelius Park, in Helsinki, th
capital city of Finland.

ي نُصب سيبيليوس في عام ١٩٦٧ تخليدًا للموسيقار الشهير جان سيبيليوس، الذي توفي في عام ١٩٥٧.
ان سيبيليوس من فنلندا، وهي دولة تقع في شمال أوروبا. لا تزال أعمال سيبيليوس تحظى بشعبية كبيرة حتى يومنا هذا ويتم عزفها في
حفلات الموسيقية والمسارح في جميع أنحاء العالم.
قطعة المنحوتة من صنع الفنانة إيلا هيلتونين، وهي أيضًا من فنلندا. يحتوي المنحوت على ٦٠٠ أنبوب فولاذي بأحجام مختلفة وأشكال
ر منتظمة. يبلغ ارتفاعه ٨,٥ مترًا وعرضه ١٠,٥ مترًا. أرادت هيلتونين أن يبدو المنحوت مثل موسيقى سيبيليوس. يمكنك رؤية هذا
نحوت في حديقة سيبيليوس في هلسنكي، عاصمة فنلندا.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Anish Kapoor is a ....
   a) vet   b) doctor   c) sculptor   d) pilot
2. He was born in ....
   a) France   b) Spain   c) America   d) India
3. He moved to London to study ....
   a) art   b) math   c) history   d) geography
4. People can see his art all over the ....
   a) country   b) world   c) town   d) village

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

Chicago - walk - steel - Gate - Cairo

Cloud 1) .... is very high – people can even 2) .... under it! It is made of stainless 3) ...., which reflects the sky, the buildings, and the people around it, like a huge mirror. It is a very popular sight to visit in 4) ....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Stainless steel is very shiny, so when you look at Tall Tree and the Eye, you can see your own face many times. The spheres are arranged in an irregular pattern. This makes them look like bubbles which are floating! Kapoor is a great artist. He understands math well, and he also understands materials. This means he can make sculptures that will stay in place for a long time.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Tall Tree and the Eye is a ....
   a) story   b) sculpture   c) subject   d) museum
2. The spheres are arranged in a/an .... pattern.
   a) regular   b) ordinary   c) fixed   d) irregular
3. The word "shiny" means ....
   a) black   b) bright   c) rainy   d) strong

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What does Kapoor understand? ....

sculpture made of? ....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Anish Kapoor is a/an ....
   a) driver b) pilot c) sculptor d) vet
2. Kapoor was born in ....
   a) Egypt b) Syria c) India d) France
3. Anish moved to London to study ....
   a) Arabic b) Germany c) math d) art
4. Kapoor likes to use different ....
   a) subjects b) strings c) materials d) balloons
5. A .... is the shape of a b
   a) sphere b) square c) sculptor d) bubble
6. A .... is a person who makes sculptu
   a) doctor b) vet c) pilot d) sculptor
7. When we look at the mirror, it .... our ima
   a) absorbs b) reflects c) sends d) draws
8. A .... is a liquid ball full of
   a) designer b) bubble c) square d) sphere

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. can - Gate - People - walk - Cloud - under - .
....
2. from - Anish - Where - Kapoor - is - ?
....
3. was - displayed - first - in - Nahdet Misr - 1928 - .
....

6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Balloon Dog sculpture

Guiding elements:

Name: Balloon Dog
Sculptor: Jeff Koons
Height: 3.5 meters
Material: stainless steel, then painted blue, yellow, or pink
Location: in about 20 different places around the world – there are lo of Balloon Dogs!

Lesson (5) LANGUAGE



Vocabulary

interviewer	محاور	magazine	مجلة
talented	موهوب	theater	مسرح
musician	موسيقار	actor	ممثل
concert	حفل موسيقي	confident	واثق
songs	أغاني	surprised	مندهش
poems	قصائد	later	لاحقًا / في وقت لاحق



Important expressions and prepositions

write a song / poem	يكتب أغنية / قصيدة	through the forest	عبر الغابة
a bit nervous	متوتر قليلًا	on a sunny day	في يوم مشمس
for over an hour	لأكثر من ساعة	look confident	يبدو واثقًا
come into	يدخل	on stage	على خشبة المسرح



Conjugation of verbs

Present		Past	P.P
talk	يتكلم	talked	talked
own	يمتلك	owned	owned
perform	يؤدي / يمثل	performed	performed
relax	يسترخي	relaxed	relaxed
practice	يتدرب	practiced	practiced
write	يكتب	wrote	written

Definitions

stage	the part of a theater where actors act	خشبة المسرح
award	a prize	جائزة
musician	a person whose job is playing music	موسيقار
talented	with a special ability to do something well	موهوب
cello	a kind of musical instrument with strings	آلة التشيلو
perform	show your acting or musical skills to other people	يؤدي / يمثل

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

isten and read.

nterviewer : Wow, Mazen! The concert was amazing! You're so talented!

واو، مازن! كان الحفل مذهلًا! أنت موهوب جدًا!

Mazen : Thank you so much! I loved it, but I'm always tired after a concert!

شكرًا جزيلًا! لقد أحببته ، لكنني دائمًا متعب بعد الحفل!

Interviewer : I'm not surprised. You played the guitar and sang for over an hour!

أنا لست مندهشًا. كنت تعزف على الجيتار وتغني لأكثر من ساعة!

Mazen : It went very quickly. But nobody knew about the problem I had before the concert!

لقد مرت بسرعة جدًا. لكن لا أحد يعرف عن المشكلة التي واجهتها قبل الحفل!

Interviewer : A problem – what was that?

مشكلة - ماذا كانت المشكلة؟

Mazen : I couldn't find my guitar! I was practicing in a different room this morning, and I put my guitar somewhere, and later I forgot where. I looked everywhere, even under all the chairs, but I couldn't find it! Five minutes before the concert, my friend came into the room. She saw it behind the door. I was very lucky!

لم أجد جيتاري! كنت أتدرب في غرفة مختلفة هذا الصباح ، وضعت جيتاري في مكان ما ، وبعد ذلك نسيت مكانه. بحثت في كل مكان، حتى تحت جميع الكراسي ، لكنني لم أجده! قبل الحفل بخمس دقائق ، دخلت صديقتي إلى الغرفة. ورأته خلف الباب. كنت محظوظًا جدًا!

Answer the following questions.

1. How was Mazen after the concert?

....

2. How long did Mazen play the guitar?

....

3. What was the problem?

....

4. Who found the guitar?

....



Prepositional Phrase
شبه الجملة

1. A prepositional phrase is a group of words beginning with a preposition, and ending with a noun, or pronoun, that the preposition refers to, and sometimes an adjective.

- شبه الجملة هي مجموعة من الكلمات تبدأ بحرف جر، وتنتهي باسم ، أو ضمير يشير إليه حرف الجر ، و أحيانًا تنتهي بصفة.

2. It doesn't contain a verb.

- لا تحتوي على فعل.

3. It can give information about where or when.

- يمكن أن تعطي معلومات عن المكان أو الوقت.

4. Prepositions can include:

- يمكن أن تشمل حروف الجر:

- after	بعد	- before	قبل	- behind	خلف
- in	في	- into	داخل	- under	تحت
- through	عبر / خلال	- for	لمدة	- on	على

Examples:

- I'm always tired **after a concert.**
- I'm always a bit nervous when I'm **on stage**.
- I try to breathe slowly **before a concert** to help me relax.
- **At your last concert**, you looked very confident.
- I looked **under all the chairs**.
- **On a sunny day**, I play football outside with my friends.

Help your child identify prepositional phrases.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على شبه الجملة.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I always have breakfast .... school.
   a) after b) before c) under d) over
2. I have a party .... my birthday.
   a) in b) after c) at d) on
3. I was practicing .... my room.
   a) in b) over c) on d) for
4. There are a lot of books .... my school bag.
   a) through b) before c) after d) in
5. The guitar was .... the door.
   a) before b) up c) behind d) into
6. The books are .... the shelf.
   a) on b) in c) over d) across
7. The pencils are .... my bag.
   a) over b) up c) in d) since

2 Read and complete with the correct form.

1. What do you do .... (at) Friday
2. .... (In) your last concert, you looked very confident
3. He played the guitar .... (since) over an hour
4. When I opened the door, a cat came .... (up) the room
5. There's a mouse .... (between) my bed

 Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Mazen's concert was .... !
   a) bad b) nice c) amazing d) good
2. Mazen is always .... after the concert.
   a) happy b) tired c) sad d) excited
3. He played the ....
   a) guitar b) piano c) cello d) flute
4. He had a problem .... the concert.
   a) after b) under c) before d) while

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

radio - concert - songs - magazine - talented

Mazen is talking to the school 1) .... interviewer. There is going to be a 2) .... next week. Mazen is 3) .... ! He writes his own 4) .... He owns many books about musicians.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A .... is the part of a theater where actors act.
   a) school b) stage c) cello d) stay
2. I came first in the competition and got a/an ....
   a) party b) price c) award d) word
3. Mazen .... his own songs.
   a) writes b) plays c) acts d) breaks
4. .... means a person with a special ability to do something.
   a) Excited b) Interested c) Talented d) Bored
5. I'm always a bit .... when I'm on stage.
   a) tiring b) nervous c) late d) exciting

6. They are ....for the concert.
   a) sleeping   b) writing   c) practicing   d) staying

7. They are ....musicians. They play music very well.
   a) bad   b) talented   c) quickly   d) fast

8. I'm always tired ....the concert.
   a) up   b) after   c) under   d) on

9. My dad gets up very early ....the morning
   a) at   b) on   c) in   d) by

10. I looked for my guitar everywhere, even ....the chairs
   a) at   b) over   c) next   d) under

11. ....your last concert, you looked very confident
   a) At   b) By   c) In   d) For

12. He played football ....two hours
   a) to   b) for   c) since   d) after

13. I always have a shower ....school
   a) at   b) after   c) during   d) when

14. There is going to be a concert ....week
   a) next   b) under   c) by   d) at

15. We watched actors performing ....stage
   a) under   b) in   c) on   d) by

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. try - slowly - before - I - to breathe - a concert - .

....

2. go to - On - Fridays - the park - we - .

....

3. do - What - one day - you - to do - hope - ?

....

Lesson (6) WRITING A REPORT



Key vocabulary

pottery	صناعة الأواني الفخارية	clay	صلصال	kiln	فرن
pottery wheel	عجلة الفخار	craft	حرفة	hoopoe	هدهد
lump	كتلة صغيرة	apron	مريلة	decorate	يزين
glue	صمغ				



Extra vocabulary

paint	دهان / ألوان	oven	فرن	dry	يجف / يجفف
bowl	سلطانية - وعاء	circles	دوائر	patterns	نقوش
turn	دور	creative	مبدع / إبداعي	wings	أجنحة
hard	صلب	pink	لون وردي / زهري	tail	ذيل



Important expressions and prepositions

work on a project	يعمل على مشروع	put on	يلبس / يرتدي
got messy	أصبحت (فوضويًا / متسخًا)	take out	يُخرج
wait for	ينتظر	make it hard	يجعله صلبًا
a cup of flour	كوب من الدقيق	cover in	يغطي بـ



Conjugation of verbs

Present		Past	P.P
work	يعمل	worked	worked
blow up	ينفخ	blew up	blown up
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
make	يصنع - يجعل	made	made



Definition

lump	a solid object without a clear shape	كتلة صغيرة
wheel	a round flat circle which turns around	عجلة
kiln	a special oven which gets very hot and makes the clay hard and strong	فرن (يجعل الطين صُلبًا وقويًا).
clay	a natural material you can use to make pots, vases, or sculptures	صلصال
apron	you wear this to keep your clothes clean	مريلة

My pottery project by Amal



My class worked on a pottery project at school this week. We started with a lump of clay, and we chose what to make. I wanted to make a bowl.

عمل صفي على مشروع الفخار في المدرسة هذا الأسبوع. بدأنا بقطعة من الصلصال ، واخترنا ما سنصنع. أردت أن أصنع سلطانية / وعاء.



First, the teacher showed us how to use a pottery wheel. Then it was our turn. We put on aprons over our clothes. When I put my clay on the wheel, it went fast. It was difficult, and I got messy.

أولًا ، بيّن لنا المعلم كيفية استخدام عجلة الفخار. ثم كان دورنا. ارتدينا مرايل على ملابسنا. عندما وضعت الصلصال على عجلة الفخار ، دارت بسرعة. كان الأمر صعبًا ، وأصبحت متسخة.

3



When my bowl was finished, the teacher put it in a kiln. This is a special oven which gets very hot. It makes the clay hard and strong.

عندما انتهى وعائي ، وضعه المعلم في فرن. هذا فرن خاص يصبح ساخنًا جدًا. يجعل الطين صلبًا وقويًا.

4



Finally, the bowl was ready and the teacher took it out. We waited for the bowl to be cool, and then I used special paint to decorate my bowl.

أخيرًا ، كان الوعاء جاهزًا وأخرجه المعلم. انتظرنا حتى يبرد الوعاء ، ثم استخدمت طلاء خاصًا لتزيين الوعاء.

5



I painted it pink all over first, and waited for the paint to dry. Then, I used different colors of paint to make circles all over it.

لونته باللون الوردي أولًا ، وانتظرت حتى يجف الطلاء. ثم استخدمت ألوانًا مختلفة من الطلاء لعمل دوائر حوله.

6



I really enjoyed making my bowl! When I finished my bowl, I gave it to my mom for her birthday. She loved it!

لقد استمتعت حقًا بصنع وعائي! عندما انتهيت من وعائي، أعطيته لأمي في عيد ميلادها. وقد أحببته أمي!



Read the report again and match.

1. The children chose
2. Using the pottery wheel was
3. Her bowl went in the kiln
4. Amal painted circles

a. quite messy.
b. to make it hard.
c. on her bowl.
d. what to make.

1- (   )   2- (   )   3- (   )   4- (   )





Writing a report

Parts of a report أجزاء التقرير

title - order - pictures

1. The title: tells readers the topic or subject of the report.

العنوان: يخبر القراء عن موضوع التقرير.

2. The order: the report has a beginning, a middle, and an end. It explains what happened and what order it happened in.

الترتيب: يحتوي التقرير على بداية ووسط ونهاية. وهي تشرح ماذا حدث وما الترتيب الذي حدثت فيه.

3. The pictures make the report look interesting, and help the reader imagine.

صور تجعل التقرير يبدو شيقًا وتساعد القارئ على التخيل.

4. We can use When to talk about the order in which things happen. Both parts are in the same tense.

يمكن استخدام When للحديث عن الترتيب الذي تحدث فيه الأشياء. كلا الجزأين يكونان في نفس الزمن.

e.g. When my bowl was finished, my teacher put it in a kiln.
When the children get a lump of clay, they choose what to make.

What bird did Rami make?

Read the project report.



We did a craft project at school this week. We started by cutting up pieces of old paper and newspaper. We were making Egyptian birds.

لقد قمنا بمشروع حرفي في المدرسة هذا الأسبوع. بدأنا بتقطيع قطع من الورق والصحف القديمة. كنا نصنع الطيور المصرية.



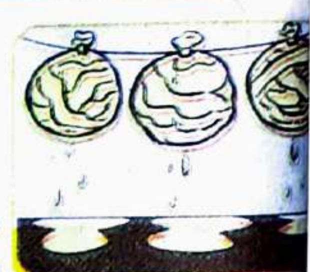
First, the teacher showed us how to make the glue. We put one cup of flour into a big bowl and added two cups of water. Then, we mixed it with our hands! It was very messy, so we all wore an apron.

أولاً، أوضح لنا المعلم كيفية صنع الغراء. وضعنا كوبًا واحدًا من الدقيق في وعاء كبير وأضفنا إليه كوبين من الماء. ثم خلطناها بأيدينا! كان الأمر فوضويًا للغاية، لذلك ارتدينا جميعًا مريلة.



Next, we blew up small balloons. Each balloon was the body of a small bird.

بعد ذلك، قمنا بنفخ بالونات صغيرة. كان كل بالون عبارة عن جسد طائر صغير.



Next, we put the pieces of paper into the glue. When it was very wet, we put the paper onto the balloons. We did that a few times until we covered the balloons in paper and glue.

بعد ذلك، وضعنا قطع الورق في الغراء. عندما كان الجو رطبًا جدًا، قمنا بوضع الورق على البالونات. لقد فعلنا ذلك عدة مرات حتى قمنا بتغطية البالونات بالورق والغراء.



The next day, we painted our "birds" white. When they were dry, we drew the patterns and painted the colors. I used brown, black, and white paint because these are colors of the hoopoe, which is my favorite bird.

في اليوم التالي قمنا بطلاء "طيورنا" باللون الأبيض. وعندما جفت، قمنا برسم النقوش ورسمنا الألوان. لقد استخدمت الطلاء البني والأسود والأبيض لأنها ألوان الهدهد، وهو طائري المفضل.



Then, we used paper, card, and other materials to add wings and tails. Finally, we put all the birds on a long piece of wood from a tree. They looked amazing!

ثم استخدمنا الورق والبطاقات وغيرها من المواد لإضافة الأجنحة والذيول. أخيرًا، وضعنا كل الطيور على قطعة طويلة من الخشب من شجرة. لقد بدوا مذهلين!

Help your child read the project report.

طفلك أن يقرأ تقرير عن المشروع

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The class worked on a .... project.
   a) pottery b) glass c) wood d) candle
2. The children got a .... of clay.
   a) cup b) lump c) bag d) bar
3. The teacher showed us how to use a pottery ....
   a) whale b) bike c) train d) wheel
4. The children put on .... over their clothes.
   a) shirts b) dresses c) aprons d) skirts

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

decorate - hard - wheel - kettle - kiln

I wanted to make a bowl. First the teacher showed us how to use a pottery 1) .... When my bowl was finished, the teacher put it in a 2) .... It makes the clay 3) .... and strong. Finally, I used special paint to 4) .... my bowl.

3 Write a report of SEVENTY (70) words about:

A candle project

Guiding words:

(wax - melt - cups - perfume - wick - pour - hard - light)

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson (7) STORY: BEHIND THE CAMERA





Key vocabulary

costumes	أزياء	exhibition	معرض	choir	كورال / مجموعة مغنين
advertisement	إعلان	play	مسرحية	photography	فن التصوير الفوتوغرافي
edit	يحرر / يعدّل (الصورة)	worried	قلق	props	الديكور المستعمل في المسرحية
show	عرض	acting	التمثيل	show	عرض



Extra vocabulary

audience	الجمهور	shadow	الظل	cupboard	دولاب
shelf	رف	buttons	أزرار	photographer	مصور
furniture	أثاث	instrument	آلة موسيقية	lines	كلمات دور الممثل
website	موقع إلكتروني	chance	فرصة		



Important expressions and prepositions

play the piano	يعزف على البيانو	walk past	يمشي ماراً بـ
make costumes	يصنع الأزياء	on the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
write a play	يكتب مسرحية	at the side of	على جانب
on the way home	في الطريق إلى البيت	Well done.	أحسنت.
look real	يبدو حقيقيًا		



Conjugation of verbs

Present		Past	P.P
act	يمثل	acted	acted
express	يُعبر	expressed	expressed
speak	يتحدث / يتكلم	spoke	spoken

Definitions

choir	a group of people who sing together	كورال
edit	to change photos to make them better	يحرر
play	a story that you watch at the theater	مسرحية
advertisement	this tells people about an event, so they want to see it	إعلان
photography	the activity or job of taking photographs	التصوير الفوتوغرافي
exhibition	a group of artwork in one place for people to see	معرض
costumes	special clothes that people wear at festival or on stage	أزياء
props	the things that actors use in a play like furniture to make it look real	الديكور المستعمل في المسرحية

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (7)

Listen and read.



Behind the camera

خلف الكاميرا

It was two weeks until the school show, and everybody was excited. Everybody except Magdy.
"I'm going to play the piano," said Waleed.
"The choir is going to sing beautiful songs," said Nesma. "And I'm going to make costumes for the choir," said Dalia.
"I've written a funny play!" said Samir.

كان متبقى أسبوعان على عرض المدرسة، و كان الجميع متحمسين. الجميع ما عدا مجدي. قال وليد:"سأعزف على البيانو". وقالت نسمة"سيقوم الكورال بغناء أغاني جميلة"، . قالت داليا "وانا سأقوم بصنع أزياء الكورال"، . قال سمير "لقد كتبت مسرحية مضحكة!".

Magdy was worried. He didn't go to piano lessons, and he didn't like singing. "What am I going to do?" he thought. On the way home, Magdy walked past the museum. There was an advertisement for a photography exhibition. A black-and-white photo showed a man playing the piano on stage, with the audience in the shadow. "That's amazing," thought Magdy. It felt like he was there, listening to the music.

كان مجدي قلقًا. لم يذهب إلى دروس العزف على البيانو ، ولم يكن يحب الغناء. كان يفكر"ماذا سأفعل؟". في طريق العودة إلى المنزل، مر مجدي على المتحف. كان هناك إعلان عن معرض للتصوير الفوتوغرافي. وكان هناك صورة بالأبيض والأسود لرجل يعزف البيانو على خشبة المسرح ، وبها الجمهور في الظل. فكر مجدي "هذا مذهل" . شعر أنه كان هناك، يستمع إلى الموسيقى.

At home, Magdy started looking in cupboards. "What are you doing?" asked Mom. "Dad has a good camera, doesn't he? Do you know where it is?" asked Magdy. "Yes," said Mom, taking a box from a shelf. "He hasn't used it for a long time. Are you studying photography at school?"
"No, but I'll learn!" Magdy said.

في المنزل، بدأ مجدي يبحث في الدواليب. سألته والدته "ماذا تفعل؟". سأل مجدي "أبي لديه كاميرا جيدة، أليس كذلك؟ هل تعرفين أين هي؟". قالت والدته ، وهي تأخذ صندوقًا من الرف. "نعم، لم يستخدمها لفترة طويلة. هل تدرس التصوير في المدرسة؟" قال مجدي "لا ، لكنني سأتعلم!"

Magdy found his dad's photography books. He read about the different buttons on the camera. Then he learned how to edit the photos on the computer to make them lighter or darker.

وجد مجدي كتب التصوير الخاصة بوالده. قرأ عن الأزرار المختلفة على الكاميرا. ثم تعلم كيفية تحرير الصور على الكمبيوتر لجعلها أفتح او أغمق.

Help your child listen and read.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Magdy was excited. On the weekend, his mom and dad took him to a photography exhibition. After the exhibition, they went into the city an Magdy took photos of things he saw.

مجدي متحمسا. في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع ، أخذته والدته ووالده إلى معرض للتصوير الفوتوغرافي. بعد المعرض، ذهبوا إلى المدينة
لتقط مجدي صورًا لأشياء رآها.

Finally, Magdy spoke to his teacher. "Miss Salwa, I'm worried..I don't lik being on stage. I don't like singing or acting, and I can't play an instrumen "Magdy, this is a chance for you to do something you enjoy, to expres yourself. Can you think of something?" said his teacher.

را تحدث مجدي إلى معلمته. وقال: "أستاذة سلوى، أنا قلق. لا أحب أن أكون على خشبة المسرح. لا أحب الغناء أو التمثيل، ولا
نني العزف على آلة موسيقية." قالت المعلمة "مجدي، هذه فرصة لك أن تفعل شيئًا تستمتع به، للتعبير عن نفسك. هل يمكنك
كير في شيء ما؟"

"I know! I could be the photographer! I can be at the side of the stage while the class are performing. Then I can edit the photos for our schoo website," said Magdy. Miss Salwa smiled and said, "Well done, Magdy. That's a great idea!"

مجدي "أنا أعرف! يمكن أن أكون المصور! يمكنني أن أكون في جانب المسرح أثناء أداء الطلاب. ثم يمكنني تحرير الصور لموقع
ستنا" ، . ابتسمت الأستاذة سلوى وقالت: "أحسنت يا مجدي. هذه فكرة رائعة!"

The class practiced their instruments and learned their lines. On t evening of the show, they were happy and ready to perform. When ea person was on stage, Magdy took photos. Magdy's photos were on t school website the next week. "You're going to be a great photograph Magdy," said his dad.

ب الفصل على الآلات الموسيقية وحفظوا كلمات أدوارهم في التمثيل. في مساء يوم العرض ، كانوا سعداء ومستعدين للعرض. عندما
الجميع على خشبة المسرح، التقط مجدي صورًا. كانت صور مجدي على موقع المدرسة في الأسبوع التالي. قال والده:
كون مصورًا رائعًا يا مجدي".





Help your child listen and read.

طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Listen and read.

Who does Samir help in the school show?





It was the day after the school show. Magdy's friend Samir was visiting his grandma.

"Hi, Grandma. I've come to visit you." said Samir.

" Hello, Samir." said Grandma. " How was the school show? Were you in a play?" " It was great, Grandma, but I wasn't in a play. Magdy and I don't like acting. Magdy was the photographer for the school show, but my job was better than that. I helped Mr Ibrahim make the props," said Samir excitedly.

" What are props?" asked Grandma.

"Props are the things that actors need on stage to make the play look real." said Samir. " If the play is about a family at home in the living room, you need some furniture - like a couch, a lamp, or some pictures for the wall. Sometimes we get the things we need from parents. But Sometimes we make them!"

"You make them?" said Grandma, looking surprised.

"Yes, I love making things, Grandma. We use wood, cardboard, colored paper... anything! My teacher Mr Ibrahim is very good at making things and he shows me what to do." explained Samir.

" That sounds exciting, Samir. I'd like to see some of the things you made," said Grandma.

"That easy." sais Samir. " Magdy put his photos on the school website. I'll get my phone and I'll show you.

كان ذلك في اليوم التالي للعرض المدرسي. كان سمير، صديق مجدي، يزور جدته.

قال سمير: "مرحبًا جدتي. لقد جئت لزيارتك."

قالت الجدة: "مرحبًا سمير. كيف كان عرض المدرسة؟ هل كنت في مسرحية؟"

وقال سمير بحماس: "كان الأمر رائعًا يا جدتي، لكنني لم أكن في مسرحية. أنا ومجدي لا نحب التمثيل. كان مجدي هو مصور العرض المدرسي، لكن وظيفتي كانت أفضل من ذلك. لقد ساعدت السيد إبراهيم في صنع الديكور".

سألت الجدة: "ما هو الديكور؟"

قال سمير: "الديكور هو الأشياء التي يحتاجها الممثلون على خشبة المسرح لجعل المسرحية تبدو حقيقية. إذا كانت المسرحية تدور حول عائلة تعيش في المنزل في غرفة المعيشة، فأنت بحاجة إلى بعض الأثاث مثل الأريكة، أو المصباح، أو بعض الصور للحائط. في بعض الأحيان نحصل على الأشياء التي نحتاجها من الوالدين. لكن في بعض الأحيان نصنعها!"

قالت الجدة وهي تبدو مندهشة: "أنتم تصنعوها؟"

أوضح سمير قائلًا : "نعم، أنا أحب صنع الأشياء يا جدتي. نحن نستخدم الخشب والكرتون والورق الملون... أي شيء! أستاذي السيد إبراهيم جيد جدًا في صنع الأشياء ويبين لي ما يجب أن أفعله."

قالت الجدة: "يبدو ذلك مثيرًا يا سمير. أود أن أرى بعض الأشياء التي صنعتها."

قال سمير "هذا سهل. مجدي وضع صوره على موقع المدرسة الإلكتروني. سأحضر هاتفي وسأعرضها عليك!"

Help your child listen and read.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ

General Activities

الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. It was two .... until the school sho
   a) days b) weeks c) months d) years
2. The .... is going to sing beautiful son
   a) teacher b) choir c) musician d) student
3. .... is going to make costum
   a) Magdy b) Waleed c) Dalia d) Nesma
4. Samir has written a funny ....
   a) story b) song c) play d) book

2 Read the following text and answer the questions.

On the way home, Magdy walked past the museum. There was a advertisement for a photography exhibition. A black-and-white ph showed a man playing the piano on stage, with the audience in the shad "That's amazing," thought Magdy. It felt like he was there, listening to music. At home, Magdy started looking in cupboards. "What are you doin asked Mom. "Dad has a good camera, doesn't he? Do you know wher is?" asked Magdy. "Yes," said Mom, taking a box from a shelf. "He has used it for a long time. Are you studying photography at school?" "No, I'll learn!" Magdy said. Magdy found his dad's photography books. He re about the different buttons on the camera. Then he learned how to edit photos on the computer to make them lighter or darker. Magdy was exci

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Magdy saw an .... for a photograph exhibi
   a) movie b) choir c) advertisement d) photo
2. The underlined word "edit" means to .... a photo to make it be
   a) change b) paint c) color d) draw
3. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the ....
   a) exhibition b) camera c) photo d) box

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What did the photo show?

....

5. How did he learn about photography?

....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. To .... is to change photos to make them better.
   a) play b) edit c) cut d) advertise
2. We go to the theater to watch a ....
   a) movie b) cartoon c) play d) match
3. The .... is a group of people who sing together.
   a) musician b) choir c) team d) staff
4. Magdy was .... about the show. He doesn't like being on stage.
   a) happy b) excited c) worried d) bad
5. I like taking photos. I'd like to be a ....
   a) doctor b) singer c) artist d) photographer
6. He visited a photography .... with his mom.
   a) court b) concert c) pool d) exhibition
7. The class learned their .... of the play.
   a) words b) lines c) sentences d) pages
8. Dalia will make .... for the choir to wear.
   a) braces b) wheels c) customs d) costumes

4 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Photography

Guiding words:

(camera - edit - books - exhibition - photographer)

....

....

....

Writing Corner

Creative activities

There are so many different ideas for creative activities. Here are some ideas. Junk modeling: if you have a cardboard box, plastic bottles and lids, you can use your creative and design skills to build a rocket, a ship, a car or a house. Another idea is pottery. You can use clay to make a bowl, a cup, or a vase. Another example is computer animation. If you prefer using technology, you could use your computer skills to make an animation.

Tall Tree and the Eye

Tall Tree and the Eye is a famous sculpture by Anish Kapoor. It stands outside the Guggenheim Museum in Bilbao, Spain. This sculptur is about 13 meters tall. It is made of 73 stainless steel balls, or sphere Stainless steel is very shiny, so when you look at Tall Tree and the Ey you can see your own face many times. The spheres are arranged in a irregular pattern. This makes them look like bubbles which are floating!

My pottery project

My class worked on a pottery project at school this week. We start with a lump of clay, and we chose what to make. I wanted to make a bo First, the teacher showed us how to use a pottery wheel. Then it was turn. We put on aprons over our clothes. When I put my clay on the whe it went fast. It was difficult, and I got messy. When my bowl was finish the teacher put it in a kiln. This is a special oven which gets very hot. It makes the clay hard and strong. Finally, the bowl was ready and the teacher took it out. We waited for the bowl to be cool, and then I used special paint to decorate my bowl.

Review on Unit (1)

Creative activities

junk modeling	صناعة مجسمات من الأشياء القديمة	making jewelry	صناعة المجوهرات
outdoor art	الفن الخارجي	pottery	صناعة الأواني الفخارية
computer animation	رسوم متحركة بالكمبيوتر	sculpture	فن النحت
clay	طين - صلصال	designing clothes	تصميم الملابس
making collage	فن تصميم الملصقات (الكولاج)		

Music

award	جائزة	cello	آلة التشيللو
choir	كورال / مجموعة مغنيين	musician	موسيقار
stage	خشبة المسرح	talented	موهوب

Art

apron	مريلة	advertisement	إعلان
kiln	فرن	lump	كتلة صغيرة
materials	مواد خام	photography	تصوير فوتوغرافي
bubbles	فقاعات	costumes	أزياء
edit	يحرر (صورة)	irregular	غير منتظم

Language

(If) Zero Conditional

If / When + present simple , present simple or (can + inf.)

e.g. If you paint, you get paint on your hands.

If / When + present simple , imperative (جملة أمر)

e.g. If it starts to rain, use an umbrella.

Prepositional Phrases

شبه الجملة هي مجموعة من الكلمات تبدأ بحرف جر، وتنتهي باسم، أو ضمير يشير إليه حرف الجر، وأحيانا تنتهي بصفة

e.g. I'm always a bit nervous when I'm on stage.

I try to breathe slowly before a concert to help me relax.

At your last concert, you looked very confident.

Dictation on Unit (1)

Lesson (1)

صناعة مجسمات من الأشياء القديمة ....

الفن الخارجي ....

رسوم متحركة بالكمبيوتر ....

Lesson (2)

غير مريح ....

يختفي ....

يخلط ....

Lesson (3)

قصيدة ....

صوت ....

غابة ....

Lesson (4)

نحات ....

فولاذ مقاوم للصدأ ....

ساطع / لامع ....

Lesson (5)

موسيقار ....

مسرح ....

خشبة المسرح ....

Lesson (6)

مريلة ....

كتلة صغيرة ....

سلطانية / وعاء ....

Lesson (7)

أزياء ....

معرض ....

التصوير الفوتوغرافي ....

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Activities on Unit (1)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. You can .... your own clothes.
   a) buy b) design c) paint d) recycle
2. You can use .... cloth to save money and help the planet.
   a) new b) modern c) recycled d) made
3. You can make an .... on a computer.
   a) movie b) animation c) actor d) play
4. Moving pictures can tell a great ....
   a) story b) match c) tale d) film

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

What - competition - When - painting - creative

Noha : Have you heard about this 1).........................., Hesham? It's for any kind of creative project. I'd like to enter.

Hesham : Oh wow, that looks good. 2).......................... are you going to make?

Noha : I don't know. My favorite activity is 3).......................... . I always feel happy when I'm painting. If I'm sad, I paint. Then I feel better.

Hesham : Hmm. If I paint, I don't feel happy. I'm not very good at it!

Noha : Yes, you are! Anyway, no one is bad at a 4).......................... project. You can do or make anything you like. There's no right or wrong!

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Anish Kapoor is a sculptor. He was born in India in 1954, and moved to London, UK, to study art in 1973. He likes to use new and interesting shapes as well as different materials. Kapoor makes very large pieces of art for public places, and people can see his art all over the world. Tall Tree and the Eye is a famous sculpture by Anish Kapoor. It stands outside the Guggenheim Museum in Bilbao, Spain. This sculpture is about 13 meters tall. It is made of 73 stainless steel balls, or spheres.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Anish Kapoor was born in ....
   a) Egypt b) USA c) India d) China
2. Tall Tree and the Eye is in ....
   a) Spain b) London c) Paris d) France
3. A .... is a round object like a ball
   a) tool b) sphere c) steel d) sculpture

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What is Anish's job? ....
5. What is the sculpture made of? ....

4 The Reader

A Read and write (YES) or (NO).

1. Asser put his pens and pencils away neatly. ( )
2. Mayar's teacher, Mrs Azza, didn't come to talk to Grandma. ( )
3. Mayar has a new book. ( )
4. The children stayed at Uncle's house. ( )

B Read and answer the questions.

1. What did Asser do when he saw Grandma? ....
2. Why didn't mom come to pick them up? ....

 Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. If you .... blue and yellow, you can get green.
   a) mix b) mixed c) mixes d) will mix
2. I go to the park .... a sunny day.
   a) at b) in c) on d) by
3. .... the bowl was dry, Amal painted it.
   a) When b) What c) Before d) While
4. If I'm sad, I ....
   a) painted b) is painting c) paint d) paints
5. If he .... tired, he sleeps.
   a) am b) is c) are d) was
6. If it starts to rain, ... an umbrella.
   a) use b) used c) uses d) can use

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. like - messy - getting - Do - you - your hands - ?

....

2. a person - A musician - who - is - music - plays - .

....

3. was - Magdy - the show - about - excited - .

....

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Making a collage

Guiding words:

(project - material - paint - paper - beautiful)

....

....

....

....

Unit 2 Home is where the heart is

Relaxing at home

In this unit, the students will ...

- understand and use words for free-time activities.
- understand and use the first conditional.
- listen and understand people explaining their opinions.
- read and understand a science-fiction story.
- understand and use phrasal verbs.
- write an instructional guide.
- use definitions to explain new words.
- read and understand a mystery story.

Lesson (1) MY NEW R...

Key vocabulary



do push-ups
يقوم بعمل تمارين الضغط



swap comic books
يتبادل الكتب المصورة



play chess
يلعب شطرنج



watch cartoons
يشاهد أفلام الكرتون



play the violin
يعزف على الكمان

Extra vocabulary

bedroom	حجرة النوم	hobby	هواية
living room	حجرة المعيشة	musical instrument	آلة موسيقية
fantastic	رائع	online	على الإنترنت
light	مضيء	quite	تماما / إلى حد ما
comfortable	مريح	luckily	لحسن الحظ
building game	لعبة البناء	size	حجم / مقاس
board games	ألعاب لوحية	especially	خاصة
sporty	رياضي	space	مساحة فارغة
awesome = amazing	مذهل / مدهش	stick	عصا

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present	Past	P.P
move	ينتقل moved	moved
share	يشارك shared	shared
watch	يشاهد watched	watched
swap	يتبادل swapped	swapped
chat	يدردش chatted	chatted

Irregular verbs

Present	Past	P.P
read	يقرأ read	read
learn	يتعلم learnt (learned)	learnt (learne
have	يملك had	had
come	يأتي came	come
win	يفوز - يكسب won	won



Important expressions and prepositions

move into	ينتقل إلى	difficult for	
share with	يتشارك مع	do homework	جب المدرسي
talk about	يتحدث عن	play computer games	ب الكمبيوتر
at the moment	في الوقت الحالي	get bored	لل
in the evening	في المساء		

Did you know ?

Egyptian families are getting smaller! Today, an average family has three or four people in one family home. In 2000, it was seven!

د الأسر المصرية! اليوم، تضم الأسرة المتوسطة ثلاثة أو أربعة أشخاص في منزل عائلي واحد. في عام ٢٠٠٠، كان العدد سبعة!

One of the first cartoons was made in the early 1900s in France. It fea a simple stick person moving!

أول أفلام الكارتون في أوائل القرن العشرين في فرنسا. ويُظهر شخص على شكل عصا بسيطة تتحرك!

Lesson (1)

Listen and read.





We moved into a new apartment a month ago, and I'm so happy because I have a new bedroom!

انتقلنا إلى شقة جديدة منذ شهر، وأنا سعيد جدًا لأن لدي غرفة نوم جديدة!

I love my new room. It's a very light and comfortable room. I share it with my brother, Maged, and we're good friends.

أنا أحب غرفتي الجديدة. إنها مضيئة و مريحة جدًا. أتشاركها مع أخي ماجد، ونحن أصدقاء جيدون.

We have a long desk for our PCs so we can do our homework in our bedroom. That's much better than doing it in the living room! There's too much noise there from our little sister and the TV!

لدينا مكتب طويل لأجهزة الكمبيوتر حتى نتمكن من أداء واجباتنا المدرسية في غرفة نومنا. هذا أفضل بكثير من القيام بذلك في غرفة المعيشة! هناك الكثير من الضوضاء الصادرة من أختنا الصغيرة والتلفاز!

When we finish our homework, we can play computer games with our friends – that's a lot of fun! My favorite game is a building game. We watch **cartoons** with our friends, too.

عندما ننتهي من واجباتنا المدرسية، يمكننا أن نلعب ألعاب الكمبيوتر مع أصدقائنا - وهذا أمر ممتع للغاية! لعبتي المفضلة هي لعبة البناء. نحن نشاهد أفلام الكرتون مع أصدقائنا أيضًا.

I also love **swapping comic books**, and like reading them in bed. My friends and I swap them once a week and talk about them.

أنا أيضا أحب تبادل الكتب المصورة وأحب قراءتها في السرير. أنا وأصدقائي نتبادلهم مرة واحدة في الأسبوع ونتحدث عنهم.

I'm learning to play the **violin** at the moment, and I practice a lot. I'm not very good yet, so sometimes my brother gets bored with my music, especially when he's tired! He's very **sporty** and plays a lot of volleyball, so he **does push-ups** in our room – he often does 30 in the evening!

أنا أتعلم العزف على الكمان في الوقت الحالي، وأتدرب كثيرًا. أنا لست جيدًا جدًا بعد، لذلك أحيانًا يشعر أخي بالملل من الموسيقى خاصتي، خاصة عندما يكون متعبًا! إنه رياضي للغاية ويلعب الكرة الطائرة كثيرًا، لذا فهو يقوم بتمارين الضغط في غرفتنا - وغالبًا يقوم بـ ٣٠ مرة من التمرين في المساء!

Maged and I have many of the same friends. They're all awesome. Before
we moved, we only chatted to them online, but it's better now that we have a
bigger bedroom.

أنا وماجد لدينا العديد من نفس الأصدقاء. إنهم جميعًا رائعون. قبل أن ننتقل ، كنا ندردش معهم على الإنترنت فقط ، ولكن
الآن أفضل لأن لدينا غرفة نوم أكبر.

They come to our house to talk in our room. One of our friends, Sherif, is an
amazing **chess** player. We both play chess at the school chess club. Chess
is quite difficult for me, but, luckily, Sherif is helping me.

يأتون إلى منزلنا للتحدث في غرفتنا. أحد أصدقائنا ، شريف ، هو لاعب شطرنج رائع. كلانا يلعب الشطرنج في نادي الشطرنج
المدرسي. الشطرنج صعب إلى حدٍ ما بالنسبة لي ، لكن لحسن الحظ ، شريف يساعدني.

Maged and I like board games. We play them with our friends in our bedroom
and with our family in the living room!

أنا وماجد نحب الألعاب اللوحية. نلعبهم مع أصدقائنا في غرفة نومنا ومع أسرتنا في غرفة المعيشة!

Mom and Dad's bedroom is next to ours. Their bedroom is the same size a
ours, but they have their own bathroom. I prefer our bedroom – my favorit
thing about it is that we have space for our hobbies and for our friends!

غرفة نوم أمي وأبي بجوار غرفتنا. غرفة نومهم هي نفس حجم غرفة نومنا، ولكن لديهم حمام خاص بهم. أنا أفضل غرفة
نومنا - الشيء المفضل لدي هو أن لدينا مساحة لهواياتنا ولأصدقائنا!

A) Read again and put (✓) or (✗).

1. Seleem shares his room with his brother Maged. ( )
2. Seleem and Maged do their homework in the living room with their sister. ( )
3. Seleem and Maged like to play computer games with their friends. ( )
4. Seleem sometimes plays the piano in his room. ( )

B) Read again and write Seleem, Maged, or Both.

1. .... like(s) board gam
2. .... play(s) the vio
3. .... play(s) volleyb
4. .... love(s) comic bo
5. .... watch(es) carto
6. .... do(es) push-

General Activities

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We moved into a new .... a month ago.
   a) villa b) beach c) apartment d) cottage
2. I'm so .... because I have a new bedroom.
   a) sad b) angry c) happy d) miserable
3. I .... my new room.
   a) love b) hate c) dislike d) don't like
4. Maged and I are .... friends.
   a) bad b) terrible c) sad d) good

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

does - makes - violin - sporty - bored

I'm learning to play the 1) .... at the moment, and I practice a lot. I'm not very good yet, so sometimes my brother gets 2) .... with my music, especially when he's tired! He's very 3) .... and plays a lot of volleyball so he 4) .... push-ups in our room - he often does 30 in the evening.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I usually .... cartoons on TV. They're funny!
   a) play b) listen c) watch d) do
2. I often .... comic books with my friends.
   a) swap b) play c) listen d) do
3. I play the .... because my mom says it's good to learn a musical instrument.
   a) tennis b) push-ups c) cartoons d) violin
4. I do .... in my room because I want to get stronger!
   a) chess b) cartoons c) homework d) push-ups
5. I play .... with my friend Sherif. He's very good and always wins!
   a) cartoons b) push-ups c) comic books d) chess
6. I .... a room with my brother.
   a) share b) give c) do d) watch

.... my homework in my bedroom.

a) make b) do c) give d) play

I have my dinner .... the evening.

a) at b) on c) with d) in

My friends are .... They are amazing

a) awesome b) bad c) terrible d) horrible

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

We moved into a new apartment a month ago, and I'm so happy because I have a new bedroom! I love my new room. It's a very light and comfortable room. I share it with my brother, Maged, and we're goo friends. We have a long desk for our PCs so we can do our homework i our bedroom. That's much better than doing it in the living room! There too much noise there from our little sister and the TV! When we finish o homework, we can play computer games with our friends – that's a l of fun! My favorite game is a building game. We watch cartoons with o friends, too.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The main idea of the text is ....
   a) a new apartment b) an old house
   c) a new village d) a new city
2. They watch .... with their frien
   a) comedies b) cartoons c) science fiction d) horror film
3. The word "PCs" means ....
   a) cameras b) laptops c) computers d) games

B) Answer the following questions.

4. When did they move into a new apartment? ....
5. Where do they do their homework? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. books - I - comic - swap - friends - my - with - . ...
2. do - in - What - bedroom - do - you - your - ? ....
3. ... - the - play - violin - Can - ?

Lesson (2) LANGUAGE



Key vocabulary



games console
وحدة ألعاب إلكترونية



hairdryer
مجفف الشعر



refrigerator
ثلاجة



blender
خلاط

toaster
محمصة خبز



laptop
كمبيوتر محمول



Extra vocabulary

appliance	جهاز منزلي	sharp	حاد
milkshake	مخفوق الحليب	medicine	دواء
blade	شفرة - نصل	scientist	عالم
motor	موتور - محرك	sick	مريض
invention	اختراع	metal	معدن
vaccine	لقاح - مصل	smoothie	عصير فواكه
useful	مفيد	strawberries	فراولة
soup	حساء - شوربة	glass	زجاج
juicer	عصارة	kettle	غلاية
machine	آلة	decorations	الزينة



Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present		Past	P.P
heat	يسخن	heated	heated
change	يغير - يتغير	changed	changed
invent	يخترع	invented	invented
chop	يقطع	chopped	chopped
add	يضيف	added	added
blend	يخلط - يمزج	blended	blended

Irregular verbs

Present		Past	P.P
hide	يختبئ	hid	hidden
know	يعرف	knew	known
drive	يقود	drove	driven
put	يضع	put	put



Definitions

milkshake a drink that is often chocolate or vanilla الحليب

motor a part of a machine that makes something move محرك

invention something that someone has made for the first time

smoothie a drink made of blended fruits or sometimes vegetables الفاكهة - سموثي

appliance an object that is useful

vaccine a type of medicine that stops you getting ill

Important expressions and prepositions

over the years	على مر السنين	different from
in the bottom of	في الجزء السفلي من	chop the food

Lesson (2)

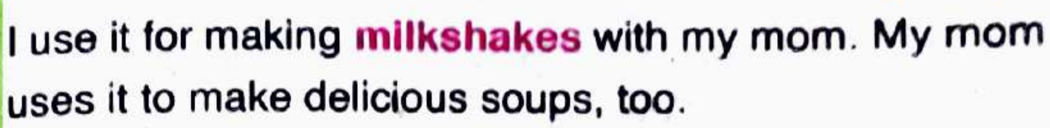
Listen and read.

Amazing appliances أجهزة منزلية مدهشة

I think the blender is the best kitchen appliance! If it's hot tomorrow, I'll make a smoothie with fruit and ice!

أعتقد أن الخلاط هو أفضل جهاز مطبخ! إذا كان الجو حارًا غدًا ، فسوف أصنع عصيرًا بالفواكه والثلج!

Karim



I use it for making **milkshakes** with my mom. My mom uses it to make delicious soups, too.

أنا استخدمه لصنع الحليب المخفوق مع أمي. تستخدمه أمي لصنع الحساء اللذيذ أيضًا.

Did you know a Polish-American man called Stephen Poplawski invented the blender in 1922? He put a sharp blade in the bottom of a tall glass. When the **blade** turns, it chops the food. He added a small **motor**. The motor turned the blade, which blended the food together. He used his new **invention** to make milkshakes.



blender

هل تعلم أن رجلًا أمريكيًا من أصل بولندي يدعى ستيفن بوبلاوسكي اخترع الخلاط في ١٩٢٢؟ وضع شفرة حادة في قاع كوب طويل. عندما تدور الشفرة ، تقطع الطعام. وأضاف محركًا صغيرًا. أدار المحرك الشفرة التي مزجت الطعام معًا. استخدم اختراعه الجديد لصنع الحليب المخفوق.

Blenders are also useful in medicine. For example, Dr Jonas Salk was a famous scientist. In 1953, he used a blender to make a **vaccine**. His vaccine has saved millions of lives. People won't get sick if they have a vaccine.

الخلاطات مفيدة أيضًا في الطب. على سبيل المثال ، كان الدكتور جوناس سالك عالمًا مشهورًا. في عام ١٩٥٣ ، استخدم الخلاط لصنع لقاح. لقد أنقذ لقاحه ملايين الأرواح. لن يمرض الناس إذا كان لديهم لقاح.

Nowadays, the blender is a little different from the 1920s. There are blenders made of plastic, glass, and metal. Some blenders can **heat** food, too!

في الوقت الحاضر ، يختلف الخلاط قليلًا عن خلاط العشرينيات من القرن الماضي. هناك خلاطات مصنوعة من البلاستيك والزجاج والمعدن. يمكن لبعض الخلاطات تسخين الطعام أيضًا!

Do you have a blender at home? Do you use your blender a lot, or a little? What would you do without your blender in the kitchen?

هل لديك خلاط في المنزل؟ هل تستخدم الخلاط كثيرًا ، أو قليلًا؟ ماذا ستفعل بدون الخلاط في المطبخ؟



(If) First Conditional
"إذا / لو" الحالة الشرطية الأولى

Usage الاستخدام

1) **We use the first conditional to talk about future situations.**

نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للتحدث عن مواقف مستقبلية.

If + subject + present simple , subject + (will / can / may + inf.)

e.g. If it is hot tomorrow, I'll make a smoothie.

Subject + (will / can / may + inf.) + if + subject + present simple

e.g. People won't get sick if they have a vaccine.

2) **We use can to express ability.**

نستخدم (can + inf.) للتعبير عن القدرة.

e.g. If you arrive early, you can get a good seat.

3) **We use may when we aren't sure.**

نستخدم (may + inf.) عندما نكون غير متأكدين من شيء.

e.g. If she hurries, she may catch the train; I'm not sure.

Note:

When the "if" clause is second, we don't use a comma.

عندما تكون جملة الشرط هي الثانية لا نستخدم فاصلة بين الجملتين.

e.g. Dad can take you to school if you ask him now.

Lesson (2)



Practice

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. If my hair .... wet, I'll use a hairdryer.
   a) gets b) got c) will get d) was getting
2. If I put food in the refrigerator, it .... cold.
   a) is b) was c) had d) will be
3. We'll play with a games console if my friends .... to my house.
   a) come b) comes c) came d) was coming
4. If I .... bread in the toaster, the bread will be hot.
   a) put b) to put c) puts d) had put
5. She .... use a laptop if she does her homework. I'm not sure.
   a) may b) will c) would d) can
6. If you need help, you .... ask me.
   a) could b) can c) might d) would

2 Read and complete with the correct form.

1. If I .... (had) milk and strawberries, I'll make a milkshake.
2. I .... (would) make a smoothie if it is hot tomorrow.
3. If I .... (wants) to play games, I'll use a games console.
4. If I want to make soup, I .... (would) use a blender.

General Activities

الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Stephen Poplawski is a .... -American m
   a) Polish   b) Scottish   c) British   d) German
2. Stephen Poplawski invented the .... in 19
   a) blender   b) toaster   c) laptop   d) speakers
3. He put a .... blade in the bottom of a tall gla
   a) small   b) narrow   c) sharp   d) short
4. He used his new invention to make ....
   a) milkshakes   b) tea   c) coffee   d) ice

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

delicious - appliance - tool - making - smoothie

I think the blender is the best kitchen 1) .... ! If it's hot tomorro
I'll make a 2) .... with fruit and ice! I use it for 3) ....
milkshakes with my mom. My mom uses it to make 4) .... soups, to

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. If it is hot tomorrow, I .... a smooth
   a) make   b) will make   c) would make   d) makes
2. A/An .... is a type of medicine that stops you getting
   a) motor   b) invention   c) appliance   d) vaccine
3. If you .... early, you can get a good sea
   a) arrives   b) arrived   c) arrive   d) arriving
4. A .... is a part of a machine that makes something mov
   a) motor   b) vaccine   c) milkshake   d) stone
5. People won't get sick if they .... a vaccine
   a) had   b) have   c) were having   d) has

6. A .... is a drink made of blended fruits or sometimes vegetables.
   a) vaccine b) toaster c) laptop d) smoothie
7. If it is hot tomorrow, I .... swimming.
   a) go b) will go c) went d) going
8. A/An .... is something that someone has made for the first time.
   a) milkshake b) invention c) vaccine d) appliance

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Blenders are also useful in medicine. For example, Dr Jonas Salk was a famous scientist. In 1953, he used a blender to make a vaccine. His vaccine has saved millions of lives. People won't get sick if they have a vaccine. Nowadays, the blender is a little different from the 1920s. There are blenders made of plastic, glass, and metal. Some blenders can heat food, too! Do you have a blender at home? Do you use your blender a lot, or a little? What would you do without your blender in the kitchen?

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about ....
   a) blenders b) medicines c) washing machines d) coffee machines
2. Nowadays the blender is a little .... from the 1920s.
   a) same b) similar c) different d) like
3. We can use some blenders to .... food.
   a) heat b) cool c) freeze d) serve

B) Answer the following questions.

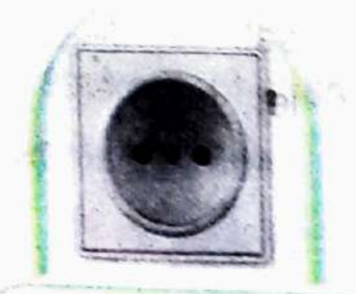
4. How has the vaccine helped people? ....
5. What are blenders made of?? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. heat - can - Some - food - blenders - .
....
2. for - What - your - use - do - you - blender - ?
....
3. organizing - next - We're - a special - week - party - .
....

Lesson (3) EXPLAINING YOUR OPINION

Key vocabulary



power socket
مقبس الكهرباء



interactive whiteboard
سبورة تفاعلية



extension cable
سلك / كابل تمديد

Extra vocabulary

electricity	كهرباء	free time	ت فراغ
information	معلومات	lighting	اءة
power outage / cut	انقطاع الكهرباء	the dark	لام
strange	غريب	electric kettle	ية كهربائية
actually	في الواقع - بالفعل	transportation	واصلات
idea	فكرة	bus station	طة أتوبيس
interesting	شيق - مثير للاهتمام	airport	ار
discussion	مناقشة	travelling	فر
useful	مفيد	activities	طة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present		Past	P.P
explain	يشرح	explained	explained
disappear	يختفي	disappeared	disappeared
try	يحاول	tried	tried
plan	يخطط	planned	planned
guess	يخمن	guessed	guessed
happen	يحدث	happene[illegible]	

Irregular verbs

Present		Past	P.P
get	يحصل على	got	got
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
let	يسمح - يدع	let	let
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
say	يقول	said	said
mean	يعني - يقصد	meant	meant

Important expressions and prepositions

sit in a circle	يجلس في دائرة	agree with	يتفق مع
talk about	يتكلم عن	in my opinion	في رأيي
electric car	سيارة كهربائية	important for	مهم لـ



Expressing opinions

التعبير عن الرأي

In my opinion, ... في رأيي، ... I think ...

I believe ... أعتقد

Agreeing with opinions الاتفاق في الرأي

I agree with you. أتفق معك I think so.

Disagreeing with opinions عدم الاتفاق في الرأي

I don't agree with you. لا أتفق معك I don't think so. أعتقد ذلك.

Example

A: In my opinion, **electricity is most useful in our free time.**

B: I don't agree. I think **electricity is most important for lighting.**



Listen and read.

Mariam's day at school

Mom : Hi Mariam, how was your day?

مرحبًا مريم, كيف كان يومك؟

Mariam : Oh, hi Mom! It was a strange day, actually. We had a power outage! My class and I were looking at the interactive whiteboard when suddenly all the information disappeared.

أوه، مرحبًا أمي! كان يومًا غريبًا ، بالفعل. كان لدينا انقطاع في الكهرباء! كنت أنا وزملائي ننظر إلى السبورة التفاعلية، عندما اختفت جميع المعلومات فجأة.

Mom : Really? That is strange! What did Miss Amira do?

حقاً؟ هذا غريب! ماذا فعلت الأستاذة أميرة؟

Mariam : Well, first she got an extension cable and tried a different power socket, but that wasn't working either.

حسنًا ، أولًا أحضرت كابل تمديد وجربت مقبس كهرباء مختلف ، لكن هذا لم يعمل أيضًا.

Mom : Oh no! So, there was no electricity! What happened?

أوه لا! إذن ، لم يكن هناك كهرباء! ماذا حدث؟

Mariam : We couldn't do the lesson Miss Amira planned. So she asked us all to sit in a circle and talk about why electricity is important in our lives.

لم نتمكن من القيام بالدرس الذي خططت له الأستاذة أميرة. لذلك طلبت منا جميعًا الجلوس في دائرة والتحدث عن سبب أهمية الكهرباء في حياتنا.

Mom : Let me guess – everyone thought it was important for computer games!

دعيني أخمن - اعتقد الجميع أنها مهمة لألعاب الكمبيوتر!



Mariam : Ha ha! Actually, no. We all had lots of different ideas. It was a really interesting discussion.

ها ها! في الواقع ، لا. كان لدينا جميعًا الكثير من الأفكار المختلفة. لقد كانت مناقشة مثيرة للاهتمام حقًا.

Lesson (3)

Listen and read.

Children's opinions about electricity

آراء الأطفال عن الكهرباء

In my opinion, electricity is most useful in our free time. I love my laptop! I do my homework on it, then I play video games with my brother. I love to watch television with my grandma in the evening, too.

في رأيي، الكهرباء هي الأكثر فائدة في أوقات فراغنا. أنا أحب جهاز اللاب توب الخاص بي! أقوم بواجبي المدرسي عليه، ثم ألعب ألعاب الفيديو مع أخي. أحب مشاهدة التلفاز مع جدتي في المساء أيضًا.

Doha



Khaled



I know what you mean, but I think electricity is most important for lighting. I don't like the dark, and we need lights in the evening.

أعرف ما تقصدينه، لكني أعتقد أن الكهرباء أكثر أهمية للإضاءة. أنا لا أحب الظلام، ونحتاج إلى الأضواء في المساء.

Salma



I don't agree. I think it's more important in the kitchen. We can't use our electric kettle without electricity, or our blender – or our refrigerator!

أنا لا أوافق. أعتقد أنها أكثر أهمية في المطبخ. فلا يمكن استخدام غلايتنا الكهربائية بدون كهرباء ، أو خلاطنا – أو ثلاجتنا!

Tameem



What about transportation? Some people have electric cars. And bus stations and airports all need electricity, too.

وماذا عن المواصلات؟ بعض الناس لديهم سيارات كهربائية. ومحطات الحافلات والمطارات كلها بحاجة إلى الكهرباء أيضًا.

General Activities

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. It was a .... da
   a) happy b) normal c) easy d) strange
2. They had a .... outag
   a) power b) music c) video d) audio
3. They were looking at the .... whiteboar
   a) black b) interactive c) lazy d) normal
4. Suddenly all the information ....
   a) appeared b) arrived c) disappeared d) cleared

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

games - laptop - think - opinion - watch

In my 1) ...., electricity is most useful in our free time. I lo
my 2) ....! I do my homework on it, then I play video 3) ....
with my brother. I love to 4) .... television with my grandma in t
evening, too.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. It was a/an .... day. We had a power outa
   a) strange b) happy c) easy d) interesting
2. The class were looking at the .... whiteboa
   a) interact b) act c) interactive d) lazy
3. When they had a power ...., all the information disappear
   a) coming b) cut c) age d) putting
4. She got an extension cable and tried a different power ....
   a) pocket b) bucket c) socket d) socks

5. .... my opinion, electricity is most important in the kitchen.

a) In b) At c) On d) Up

6. Some people have .... cars.

a) power b) electric c) light d) electricity

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. what - mean - I - know - you - .

....

2. is - important - Why - electricity - ?

....

3. was - day - your - How - ?

....

4. looking - whiteboard - They - at - the interactive - were - .

....

5 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Why is electricity important?

Guiding words:

(opinion - free time - laptop - kitchen - electric kettle)

....

....

....

....

....

....

Key vocabulary

terrible	فظيع - سيء جدا	iron	يكوي
break down	يتعطل	shocked	مصدوم
program	يبرمج / برنامج	battery	بطارية

Adverbs

slowly	ببطء	quickly	بسرعة
suddenly	فجأة	luckily	بحسن الحظ
quietly	بهدوء	sadly	للأسف
noisily	بإزعاج	lazily	بكسل
normally	بصورة طبيعية	busily	بانهماك

Extra vocabulary

life - lives	حياة - حيوات	understand	يفهم
robot	إنسان آلي	complicated	معقد
humans	البشر - الإنسان	engineer	مهندس
chores	أعمال منزلية	solve	يحل
pants	بنطلون	fill	يملأ
awful	فظيع - سيء جدًا	microwave	ميكرويف
uniform	زي موحد	ready for	جاهز - مستعد ل

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present		Past	P.P
work	يعمل	worked	worked
start	يبدأ	started	started
fix	يصلح	fixed	fixed
cry	يبكي	cried	cried

Irregular verbs

Present		Past	P.P
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
fall	يقع - يسقط	fell	fallen
wake	يوقظ	woke	woken
put away	يضع الشيء في مكانه	put away	put away

Important expressions and prepositions

all over the world	في جميع أنحاء العالم	go out	ينطفئ
lie on	يستلقي على	wake... up	يوقظ
wait for	ينتظر لـ	look worried	يبدوا قلقًا
do chores	يقوم بأعمال منزلية	find out	يكتشف
do well	يؤدي جيدًا	tried to learn how	حاول أن يتعلم كيفية
fill ..... with	يملأ بـ	change the battery	يغير البطارية

Listen and read.

THE DAY THE BILLS BROKE DOWN!

اليوم الذي تعطلت فيه الروبوتات بيل!

It's the Year 2089, and life on Earth is sweet! Humans have easy lives because every family has a Bill robot which works 24 hours a day for them. The Bill robots do all their chores. However, on this day, a year ago, something terrible happened.

إنه العام ٢٠٨٩ ، والحياة على الأرض جميلة! البشر لديهم حياة سهلة لأن كل عائلة لديها روبوت بيل الذي يعمل ٢٤ ساعة في اليوم من أجلهم. تقوم الروبوتات بيل بجميع الأعمال المنزلية. ومع ذلك ، في هذا اليوم ، قبل عام ، حدث شيء فظيع.

The day started normally. In Australia, some Bills were ironing clothes for their humans to wear to work. In Italy, other Bills were quietly making milkshakes, and others were fixing cars. In Egypt, the Bills were making koshari for the next day's lunch. But then, all over the world, the noise of the robots suddenly stopped.

بدأ اليوم بشكل طبيعي. في أستراليا ، كانت بعض الروبوتات بيل تقوم بكي الملابس ليرتديها البشر للعمل. في إيطاليا ، كانت الروبوتات بيل الأخرى تصنع الحليب المخفوق بهدوء ، وكان آخرون يصلحون السيارات. في مصر ، كانت الروبوتات بيل تعمل الكشري لغذاء اليوم التالي. ولكن عندئذ في جميع أنحاء العالم ، توقف ضجيج الروبوتات فجأة.

Help your child listen and read

...denly **broke down**. They fell to the ground, and their li
ent out.

...جميع الروبوتات بيل فجاة. سقطوا على الأرض ، وانطفأت أنوارهم.

One family in Alexandria was shocked when they saw their Bill l
n the kitchen floor. They tried to wake him up. "Bill!" said Mom, "W
appened? We're waiting for our koshari!" Bill said nothing. Hesham,
oung son, started crying, "I need a clean uniform tomorrow," he said, "
ho is going to iron my school pants?" "This is awful! I programmed Bi
k my car and change the battery in it. What am I going to do?" Dad sa

...ت عائلة في الإسكندرية عندما رأوا بيل ملقى على أرضية المطبخ. حاولوا إيقاظه. قالت الأم "بيل!، ماذا حدث؟ نحـ
...تظار وجبة الكشري! "بيل لم يقل شيئًا. بدأ هشام، الابن الصغير، يبكي،" أحتاج إلى زي نظيف غدًا، ومن سيكو
...ون المدرسة؟" قال الأب"هذا أمر فظيع!"! لقد برمجت بيل لإصلاح سيارتي وتغيير البطارية فيها. ماذا سأفعل؟".

Everyone looked very worried, but the daughter, Fareeda, sa
We'll just do some chores ourselves, like people did in the past. We'l
n the internet and find out how to do things. That's what Granddad t
ne people used to do."

...لجميع قلقين للغاية ، لكن الابنة فريدة قالت: "سنقوم ببعض الأعمال المنزلية بأنفسنا ، كما كان الناس يفعلون في
...نبي. سندخل على شبكة الإنترنت ونعرف كيفية القيام بالأشياء. هذا ما أخبرني به الجد عما اعتاد الناس على فعله."

The family started trying to learn things from videos. They learne
how to use a blender and had milkshakes. Mom learned how to use t
microwave so they could heat some food. They didn't really like th
because Bill normally made the meals for the family. Dad tried to lea
how to fix his car, but it was too difficult. And he certainly didn't understa
how to change the car battery – that was very complicated. Hesham d
well! He quickly learned how to iron his own clothes for school!

...ت العائلة في محاولة تعلم الأشياء من مقاطع الفيديو. لقد تعلموا كيفية استخدام الخلاط وتناولوا الحليب المخفوق.
...لمت الأم كيفية استخدام الميكرويف حتى يتمكنوا من تسخين بعض الطعام. لم يعجبهم ذلك حقًا لأن بيل عادة ما
...نع وجبات الطعام للعائلة. حاول الأب تعلم كيفية إصلاح سيارته ، لكن الأمر كان صعبًا للغاية. وبالتأكيد لم يفهم كيفية
...ير بطارية السيارة – كان ذلك معقدًا للغاية. قام هشام بعمل جيد! سرعان ما تعلم كيفية كي ملابسه الخاصة للمدرسة!

Luckily, a computer engineer solved the problem the next day, and all th
Bills started working again. The Bills in Egypt were busily cleaning cars,
ready for work on Sunday. Life was normal again. However, the huma
are now ready – in case the Bills break down again one day...

...سن الحظ ، حل مهندس كمبيوتر المشكلة في اليوم التالي ، وبدأت جميع الروبوتات بيل العمل مرة أخرى. كانت
...روبوتات بيل في مصر مشغولة بتنظيف السيارات ، جاهزة للعمل يوم الأحد. كانت الحياة طبيعية مرة أخرى. ومع ذلك ،
...ل البشر جاهزون الآن - في حال ما إذا تعطل الروبوتات بيل مرة أخرى يومًا ما ...

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. It's the Year 2089, and life on Earth is ....
   a) salty b) hard c) sweet d) spicy
2. Every family has a Bill ....
   a) robot b) motor c) ring d) door
3. The Bill robot works 24 hours a ....
   a) week b) month c) year d) day
4. The Bill robots do all family's ....
   a) exercises b) chores c) clothes d) milkshake

2 Read the following text and answer the questions.

It's the Year 2089, and life on Earth is sweet! Humans have easy lives because every family has a Bill robot which works 24 hours a day for them. The Bill robots do all their chores. However, on this day, a year ago, something terrible happened. The day started normally. In Australia, some Bills were ironing clothes for their humans to wear to work. In Italy, other Bills were quietly making milkshakes, and others were fixing cars. In Egypt, the Bills were making koshari for the next day's lunch. But then, all over the world, the noise of the robots suddenly stopped. All the Bills suddenly broke down. They fell to the ground, and their lights went out.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The main idea of the text is ....
   a) televisions b) computers c) the internet d) Bill robots
2. In Egypt, the Bills were making ....
   a) milkshakes b) koshari c) meat d) rice
3. The word "chores" means ....
   a) games b) jobs c) plays d) sports

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What were Bills doing in Australia? ....
5. Why do humans have easy lives? ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The word " .... " means very
   a) wonderful b) terrible c) fantastic d) interestin
2. Bills were .... clothes for people to w
   a) ironing b) cooking c) watching d) eating
3. Bill robots were ....
   a) cooking b) ironing c) eating d) fixing
4. The family was .... when their Bill broke d
   a) happy b) pleased c) shocked d) glad
5. Bills can .... the car with
   a) fail b) fill c) feel d) fall
6. ...., a computer engineer fixed the prob
   a) Sadly b) Angrily c) Luckily d) Unluckily
7. ...., all the robots broke d
   a) Suddenly b) Lazily c) Luckily d) Happily

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. a computer - Luckily, - solved - engineer - problem - the - .

....

2. ironing - were - Bills - clothes - busily - .

....

3. to - They - fell - ground - the - broke down - and - .

....

5 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Robots

Guiding words:

(iron - fix - make - heat - change - fill)

....

....

....

Lesson (5) LANGUAGE

Key vocabulary

Chores أعمال منزلية


put out the garbage
يُخرج القمامة


tidy up my room
أرتب غرفتي


pick up the books
يلتقط الكُتب


hang up the clothes
يعلق الملابس


mop up the water
يجفف / يمسح الماء


clean up the kitchen
ينظف المطبخ


put away the dishes
يضع الأطباق في مكانها

Help your child identify these chores.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الأعمال المنزلية.

Extra vocabulary

shelf	رف	full	
movie	فيلم	dirty	/ قذر
cupboard	دولاب	toys	أطفال
garbage can	سلة القمامة	messy	- غير مرتب
dining table	سفرة الطعام	heavy	

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present		Past	P.P
need	يحتاج	needed	needed
clean	ينظف	cleaned	cleaned
mop	يمسح	mopped	mopped
pick up	يلتقط	picked up	picked up
tidy	يرتب	tidied	tidied

Irregular verbs

Present		Past	P.P
put	يضع	put	put
hang	يعلق	hung	hung

Important expressions and prepositions

on the shelf	على الرف	look better	
on the floor	على الأرضية	do chores	أعمال منزلية

Lesson (5)

Listen and read.

Granddad:	Rasha, let's tidy up the house before your mom gets home.
	رشا، دعينا نرتب المنزل قبل أن تعود والدتك إلى المنزل.
Rasha:	Ok, Granddad. I'll put away the dishes, and then I'll clean up the kitchen.
	حسنًا يا جدي. سأضع الأطباق في مكانها، ثم سأنظف المطبخ.
Granddad:	Good. I'll put out the garbage. It's too heavy for you to carry.
	حسنًا. سأخرج القمامة. إنها ثقيلة جدًا بالنسبة لك أن تحمليها.
Rasha:	Thanks, Grandad. Would you like me to pick up Hesham's toys and put them in his room?
	شكرًا يا جدي. هل تريد مني أن ألتقط ألعاب هشام وأضعها في غرفته؟
Granddad:	Yes, please. Could you hang up your dad's jacket in the hall cupboard?
	نعم من فضلك. هل يمكنك تعليق سترة والدك في خزانة الصالة؟
Rasha:	Ok. When we've finished this, I'll mop up the orange juice from the table.
	حسنًا. عندما ننتهي من هذا، سأمسح عصير البرتقال من الطاولة.
Granddad:	Thanks, Rasha.
	شكرًا لك يا رشا.





Phrasal Verbs الأفعال الاصطلاحية

A phrasal verb: is a verb followed by a preposition.
الفعل الاصطلاحي هو فعل متبوع بحرف جر.

verb + preposition

e.g. I always **tidy up** my room on weekends.

clean up	ينظف	put out	يُخرج	tidy up	يرتب	mop up	
put away	يضع الشيء في مكانه	pick up	يلتقط	hang up	يعلق		

Offering help عرض المساعدة

- **Would you like me to + inf. ....?**
- **Shall I + inf. ....?**
- **I'll + inf. .....**

Accepting قبول	Refusing رفض
- Yes, please.	- No, thanks.

1) **A)** Would you like me to mop up the juice? **B)** Yes, please.
2) **A)** Shall I put away the toys? **B)** No, thanks.
3) **A)** There are books all over your bedroom floor.
B) I'll pick them up.

Asking for help طلب المساعدة

Could you + inf. ....?

Accepting قبول	Refusing رفض
- Yes, of course.	- Sorry, I can't.

A) The kitchen is messy. Could you clean up the kitchen?
B) Yes, of course.

Help your child identify and use these language notes

Lesson (5)



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I think we need to clean .... the kitchen.
   a) down b) up c) away d) off
2. Let's mop .... the water on the floor.
   a) up b) out c) in d) at
3. Can you put .... the dishes?
   a) off b) away c) out d) in
4. Can you pick .... the books and put them on the shelf, please?
   a) down b) over c) in d) up
5. We have to put .... the garbage tonight.
   a) in b) up c) out d) off
6. If you hang .... your clothes, your bedroom will look better.
   a) up b) down c) off d) in
7. She will tidy .... her room.
   a) down b) on c) in d) up
8. Please, put .... the books.
   a) on b) away c) over d) up

2 Read and complete with the correct form.

1. If you tidy .... (at) your room, you may watch a movie.
2. I'll hang .... (down) my clothes.
3. I'll put .... (on) my books.
4. She will put .... (off) the garbage.

الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

General Activities

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The family are .... doing their chor
   a) happy b) sad c) bad d) angry
2. It is early on ....
   a) Monday b) Sunday c) Tuesday d) Friday
3. Dalia is .... up the cloth
   a) making b) putting c) hanging d) mopping
4. Dina is putting .... the garba
   a) in b) at c) on d) out

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

put - living room - tidy - hang - make

Ali: Your new clothes are still in the 1) ....

Omar: I'll 2) .... them up n

Ali: There are books all over your bedroom floor.

Omar: I'll 3) .... them aw

Ali: Our dining table is really messy.

Omar: I'll 4) .... it

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. She will put .... the garba
   a) in b) out c) of d) up
2. I'll .... up the kitchen flo
   a) put b) make c) pick d) mop
3. The toys are .... the flo
   a) under b) up

4. Mom is .... up the clothes.

a) making b) hanging c) putting d) mopping

5. Would you like me to mop .... the juice?

a) down b) on c) up d) off

6. Can you pick .... the books?

a) up b) off c) on d) in

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. messy - Our - is - table - dining - .

....

2. mopping - the - She - is - water - up - .

....

3. is - Dina - the - cleaning - kitchen - up - .

....

4. toys - floor - There - on - are - the - .

....

5 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Chores

Guiding words:

(mop up - hang up - clean up - put out - tidy up)

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson (6)

WRITING AN INSTRUCTIONAL GUIDE

Key vocabulary

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
stroke	يلمس برفق / يلاطف	sharpen	يحد (يجعله حادًا)
attention	اهتمام	claws	مخالب
collar	طوق	vaccinations	تطعيمات

Extra vocabulary

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
instructional guide	دليل إرشادي	furry	وفرو
warm	دافئ	back	ظهر
comfortable	مريح	chin	ذقن
couch	أريكة (كنبة)	safe	آمن
scratch post	عمود خدش	heat lamp	مصباح تدفئة
wooden pole	عمود خشبي	soil	تربة زراعية
address	عنوان	hard	صلب
space	مساحة	temperature	درجة الحرارة
owner	مالك	indoor	خلي
florist	بائع الزهور	dirt	ارة
garden center	مركز حدائق	spray	
assistant	بائع / مساعد	gently	
fertilizer	سماد	dust	- غبار
tiny	ضئيل - صغير جدًا	equipment	ت - أدوات

Lesson (6)

Important expressions and prepositions

care for	يهتم بـ	bad for	ضار لـ
feel at home	يشعر كأنه في بيته	get lost	يتوه / يضل الطريق
lots of	كثير من	get sick	يمرض
wake ... up	يُوقظ	interested in	مهتم بـ
at different times	في أوقات مختلفة	look after	يعتني بـ / يرعى
give advice	يقدم النصح	keep healthy	يحافظ على الصحة
remove bugs	يزيل الحشرات		

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present		Past	P.P
stroke	يلمس برفق	stroked	stroked
move	يتحرك	moved	moved
sharpen	يشحذ / يُحِد	sharpened	sharpened

Irregular verbs

Present		Past	P.P
bring	يحضر	brought	brought
dig	يحفر	dug	dug
keep	يحتفظ بـ	kept	kept

Read the guide.

Caring for your cat

How can I make my cat feel at home?

كيف يمكنني أن أجعل قطتي تشعر وكأنها في بيتها؟

Give your cat lots of **attention** so it feels safe. You should **stroke** it. This means that you should move your hand over its back, or under its chin – cats love this!

ع قطتك الكثير من الاهتمام حتى تشعر بالأمان. يجب عليك أن تلمسها برفق. هذا يعني أنه يجب عليك تحريك يدك على

رها أو تحت ذقنها - القطط تحب هذا!

Where do cats like sleeping?

تحب القطط أن تنام؟

They like a warm, comfortable bed, but sometimes they just sleep on th couch! Don't wake it up – cats need to sleep for about 15 hours every da

يحبون سريرًا دافئًا ومريحًا ، لكن في بعض الأحيان ينامون فقط على الأريكة! لا توقظها - تحتاج القطط إلى النوم لحوالي

كل يوم!

تأكل القطط ؟

What do cats eat?

They like small meals at different times in the day. Cats shouldn't ha much milk to drink. Milk is bad for them. Water is better.

الوجبات الصغيرة في أوقات مختلفة من اليوم. لا ينبغي أن تتناول القطط الكثير من الحليب. الحليب ضار بهم. الماء أفضل.

عدات التي تحتاجها القطة؟

What equipment does a cat need?



A cat needs a scratch post. This is a strong wooden pole which the cat can **sharpen** its **claws** on. Cats also like toys to play with. A **collar** with the cat's name and address on it is a good idea. If your cat gets lost, somebody can bring it home to you.

القطة إلى عمود خدش. هذا عمود خشبي قوي يمكن للقطة أن تحد مخالبها عليه. تحب القطط أيضًا الألعاب للعب بها.

اسم القطة وعنوانه هو فكرة جيدة. إذا ضاعت قطتك ، يمكن لشخص ما إحضارها إلى المنزل لك.

Help your child read the guide.

How often should cats go to the vet?

كم مرة ينبغي أن تذهب القطط إلى الطبيب البيطري؟

Cats should go to the vet once a year for vaccinations. These stop them from getting sick. If you look after your cat well, you'll have a new furry friend in your life!

ينبغي أن تذهب القطط إلى الطبيب البيطري مرة واحدة في السنة للتطعيمات. هذه تمنعهم من المرض. إذا كنت تعتني بقطتك جيدًا ، سيكون لديك صديق جديد ذو فرو في حياتك!

Read the guide again. Write T (True) or F (False)

1. Cats like sleeping on a cold, hard floor. (....................)
2. Cats like eating one big meal a day. (....................)
3. Cats should go to the vet every year. (....................)

Tip!

Definitions explain what you mean.

التعريفات تفسر ما تعنيه.

When we are writing, we can use "This is, or This means that" to explain words to the reader.

عندما نكتب ، يمكننا استخدام "هذا هو ، أو هذا يعني أن" لشرح الكلمات للقارئ.

- Use "**This is**" before a noun phrase.

استخدم "هذا" قبل عبارة اسمية.

e.g. A cat needs a scratch post. This is a strong wooden pole which the cat can sharpen its claws on.

القط يحتاج إلى عمود الخدش. هذا عمود خشبي قوي يمكن للقط أن يُحد مخالبه عليه.

- Use "**This means that**" before a full sentence with a subject and a verb.

استخدم "هذا يعني أن" قبل جملة كاملة بها فاعل وفعل.

(فاعل) (فعل)

e.g. Stroke it. This means that you should move your hand over its back or under its chin – cats love this!

المسها برفق. هذا يعني أنه ينبغي عليك تحريك يدك فوق ظهرها أو تحت ذقنها ، القطط تحب هذا!



Complete with This is or This means that.

1. Your cat needs a vaccination. .... a treatment from the vet to stop it getting sick.
2. Cats are very furry. .... they have a lot of soft hair.
3. Cats need attention. .... they need their owners to be interested in them.
4. You should buy your cat a collar. .... a long thin piece of leather to wear around its neck.
5. Feed you plants with fertilizer. .... special food for plants.
6. You can sometimes buy indoor plants at a florist. .... a shop which sells flowers for the home.
7. You have to water your plants gently. .... you add the water slowly.
8. Remove bugs from your indoor plants. .... you look closely at the leaves for small insects and take them off.
9. Use a cotton cloth on your plant's leaves to remove dust. .... dry dirt which collects on the leaves.
10. If plants have thick leaves, you can spray them with water. .... you use a special water bottle to blow tiny drops of water onto the leaves.

Look and read the guide.

Caring for your turtle

How can I make my turtle feel at home?

كيف يمكنني أن أجعل سلحفاتي تشعر وكأنها في بيتها؟

Turtles need a very large space for their home. A bigger turtle needs a bigger space! They need clean soil to dig in, too.

تحتاج السلاحف إلى مساحة كبيرة جدًا لمنزلها. السلحفاة الأكبر تحتاج إلى مساحة أكبر! إنهم بحاجة إلى تربة نظيفة للحفر فيها أيضا.

أين تنام السلاحف؟

Where do turtles sleep?

Turtles like sleeping in a safe, dark place where the temperature doesn't change.

تحب السلاحف النوم في مكان آمن ومظلم حيث لا تتغير درجة الحرارة.

ماذا تأكل السلاحف؟

What do turtles eat?

These animals like to eat flowers and plants. You can also buy special turtle food.

هذه الحيوانات تحب أكل الزهور والنباتات. يمكنك أيضا شراء طعام خاص بالسلاحف.

ما المعدات التي تحتاجها السلاحف؟

What equipment do turtles need?

They sometimes need a heat lamp. This is a special light to keep the turtle nice and warm.

يحتاجون أحيانًا إلى مصباح حراري. هذا ضوء خاص للحفاظ على جمال ودفء السلحفاة .



Help your child look and read the guide.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويقرأ الدليل الإرشادي.

Read the guide.

Caring for your indoor plants

رعاية النباتات الداخلية الخاصة بك

Where can I buy an indoor plant?

You can buy indoor plants from supermarkets, **florists**, and **garden centers**. These are stores that sell many different plants. It might be best to buy from a garden center as the assistants know how to look after the plants and they can give you some useful advice. Make sure you know what your plant is called so you can find out more about it.

أين يمكنني أن أشتري نبات داخلي؟

يمكنك شراء النباتات الداخلية من السوبر ماركت وبائعي الزهور ومراكز الحدائق. هذه محلات تبيع العديد من النباتات. قد يكون من الأفضل أن تشتري من أحد مراكز الحدائق لأن البائعين هناك يعرفون كيفية الاعتناء بالنباتات ويمكنهم تقديم بعض النصائح المفيدة لك. تأكد أنك تعرف اسم نباتك حتى تتمكن من معرفة المزيد عنه.

Where should I put my indoor plant?

Some plants need to be in a warm, sunny place with a lot of light, while others prefer a cool place that isn't sunny. Look on the internet to find the best place for your plant. Most plants don't like you to move them. So, find the perfect place and leave it there.

أين ينبغي أن أضع النبات الداخلي؟

تحتاج بعض النباتات أن تكون في مكان دافئ ومشمس به الكثير من الضوء بينما تفضل نباتات أخرى مكانًا باردًا قليلًا ليس مشمسًا.
ابحث على الإنترنت لتعرف أفضل مكان لنباتك. معظم النباتات لا تحب أن تحركها. لذلك ابحث عن المكان المثالي واتركها هنا.

Do plants need food?

Yes! The best time to feed your plant is spring and summer. Feed them with fertilizer. This is special plant food. Read the instructions carefully because too much fertilizer can be bad for plants.

هل تحتاج النباتات للغذاء؟

نعم! أفضل وقت لتغذيه نباتك هو فصل الربيع والصيف.
قم بإطعامها بالأسمدة. السماد هو طعام خاص للنباتات. اقرأ التعليمات بعناية لأن الإفراط في استخدام الأسمدة يمكن أن يكون ضارًا بالنبات.

Lesson (6)

How often should I water the plant?

Some plants don't need much water and others need more. You can check the internet for more information. If you don't know, it's better to give them too little water than too much.

- كم مرة يجب أن أسقي النبات؟

بعض النباتات لا تحتاج الكثير من الماء والبعض الآخر يحتاج إلى المزيد من الماء. يمكنك البحث على الإنترنت للحصول على المزيد من المعلومات إذا كنت لا تعرف. من الأفضل أن تعطي النبات القليل جدًا من الماء بدلًا من الكثير.

How should I clean my indoor plant?

Use a soft brush or cotton cloth to dust the leaves. This means that you clean dry dirt from the leaves. For plants with thicker leaves, spray them with water and this will keep them healthy.

- كم يجب أن أنظف النباتات الداخلية؟

استخدم فرشاة ناعمة أو قطعة قماش قطنية لتزيل الغبار عن أوراق النبات. هذا يعني أنك تنظف الأوساخ الجافة من الأوراق. قم برش النباتات ذات الأوراق السميكة بالمياه فذلك سيحافظ على صحتها.

Did you know?

If you keep your plants happy and healthy, they will live for many years.

- هل تعلم؟

إذا حافظت على نباتاتك سعيدة وبصحة جيدة، سوف تعيش لسنوات عديدة.

Read the sentences and choose the correct answers, a, b, or c:

1) Garden centers are good places to buy indoor plants because they ...
a) have lots of plants. b) can give you advice. c) sell flowers, too.

2) The perfect place for every plant is ...
a) cool and not sunny. b) sunny and light. c) different.

3) Give your plants some fertilizer ...
a) once a year. b) in spring and summer. c) every six months.

4) Plants need to have ... of water.
a) different amounts b) a lot c) the same amount

5) Dust and clean the leaves with water ...
a) to help them grow. b) to keep them healthy. c) so they can eat.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A cat needs a scratch ....
   a) paper b) post c) letter d) envelop
2. The cat sharpens its .... on a wooden po
   a) teeth b) claws c) eyes d) legs
3. Cats like .... to play wi
   a) boys b) dogs c) toys d) pens
4. We write the cat's name and address on a ....
   a) book b) table c) bag d) collar

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

vaccinations - furry - go - sick - healthy

If you have a pet cat, you should care for it. Cats should 1) .... to the vet once a year for 2) .... These stop them from gettin 3) .... If you look after your cat well, you'll have a ne 4) .... friend in your li

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A .... lamp is a special light to keep the turtle nice and warm
   a) heat b) hot c) cool d) cold
2. .... are stores that sell many different plant
   a) Bookshops b) Garden centers c) Schools d) Pet shops
3. Cats are very furry. .... they have a lot of soft ha
   a) This means that b) That means that
   c) This is d) That is
4. Cats need attention. .... they need their owners to be interested in ther
   a) This is b) This means that
   c) That is d) That means that

... questions.



Read the following text and answer the questions.

Turtles need a very large space for their home. A bigger turtle needs a bigger space! They need clean soil to dig in, too. Turtles like sleeping in a safe, dark place where the temperature doesn't change. These animals like to eat flowers and plants. You can also buy special turtle food. They sometimes need a heat lamp. This is a special light to keep the turtle nice and warm.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

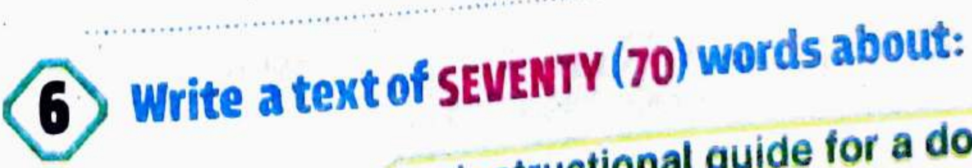
1. Turtles like .... in a safe, dark place.
   a) eating   b) playing   c) sleeping   d) reading
2. Turtles like to eat flowers and ....
   a) burger   b) cakes   c) chocolate   d) plants
3. The main idea of the text is about ....
   a) turtles   b) cats   c) space   d) temperature

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What do turtles need for their home? ....
5. Why do turtles need a heat lamp? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. cat - vaccination - Your - a - needs - .
   ....
2. equipment - need - do - What - turtles - ?
   ....
3. plants - much - Some - need - don't - water - .
   ....



6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

An instructional guide for a dog

Guiding words:

(attention - stroke - warm - meat - sleep - vet)

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (7)

STOR… HOUSE

Vocabulary

kitten	قطة صغيرة	attic	سقيفة (غرفة أعلى المنزل)
special	خاص - مميز	underneath	تحت
dangerous	خطير	memories	ذكريات
vacation	إجازة	childhood	طفولة
hole	ثقب - فتحة	glad	سعيد
message	رسالة	downstairs	الطابق السفلي

Important expressions and prepositions

on school vacation	في إجازة مدرسية	at home	بالبيت
jump off	يقفز من	run through	يجري (عبر - خلال)
in a child's writing	بخط طفل	feel bored	يشعر بالملل
was built from	بُني من	grow up	يكبر
go up	يصعد	I don't believe it!	لا أصدق ذلك !
go into	يدخل	at the end of	في نهاية

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present		Past	P.P
jump	يقفز	jumped	jumped
pull	يسحب	pulled	pulled
rain	تمطر	rained	rained
call	ينادي	called	called
believe	يصدق	believed	believed
guess	يخمن	guessed	guessed

Present	Past	P.P
ell	told	told
ouild	built	built
grow up	grew up	grown up
hide	hid	hidden

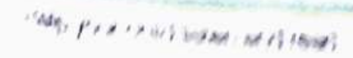
Definitions

curious	interested, feeling you want to know more
brick	a small block for building
shocked	very surprised
great-grandmother	the mother of your grandparent
spare room	a room that is used for visitors or to put things in

Listen and read.

The special house.

Sameh and Nadine were on school vacation at home with their parents. One morning, Sameh was in the living room, playing with his new kitten. Suddenly, the kitten jumped off the chair and ran through a small hole in the wall! Sameh put his hand through the hole to get her, but all he could feel was some paper.



He pulled the paper – it was very old. On it, there was a message in a child's writing: Hello, I'm Monira! I live here. Sameh felt very curious.

سحب الورقة - كانت قديمة جدًا. وكان مكتوبًا عليها رسالة بخط طفلة: مرحبًا: أنا منيرة! أنا أعيش هنا. شعر سامح بالفضول الشديد.

The next day, it was raining. Sameh and his sister, Nadine, were feeling bored.

في اليوم التالي ، كانت السماء تمطر. كان سامح وشقيقته نادين يشعران بالملل.

"Let's go up and look in the spare room," Sameh said.

قال سامح: " لنصعد وننظر في الغرفة الاحتياطية".

In the spare room, they found some old boxes. Sameh looked in one of the boxes and found a little house and a doll. The doll was beautiful, and underneath, there was a birthday card: *To Monira on your birthday, much love, Grandma.*

في الغرفة الاحتياطية ، وجدوا بعض الصناديق القديمة. نظر سامح في أحد الصناديق ووجد منزلًا صغيرًا ودمية. كانت الدمية جميلة ، وتحتها، بطاقة عيد ميلاد: إلى منيرة في عيد ميلادك مع كل الحب ، جدتك

Just then, their Dad called them downstairs.

وعندئذ، استدعاهم والدهم إلى الطابق السفلي.

"Dad!" said Sameh "Who is Monira?" Dad looked shocked.

قال سامح "أبي! من هي منيرة؟" بدا أبي مصدومًا.

"Why are you asking that?" he said.

قال "لماذا تسأل عن ذلك؟".

"Look at this doll and this card!" replied Sameh.

أجاب سامح "انظر إلى هذه الدمية وهذه البطاقة!".

"I don't believe it!" said Dad, looking at the things. "Let me tell you about the history of this house. It was built from bricks and stone in the 1950s. My grandma – your great-grandmother – lived here with her mom, dad, and five brothers and sisters."

قال أبي، وهو ينظر إلى الأشياء "لا أصدق ذلك!" "دعني أخبرك عن تاريخ هذا المنزل. تم بناؤه من الطوب والحجر في خمسينات القرن التاسع عشر . جدتي - جدتك الكبرى – عاشت هنا مع والدتها وأبيها وخمسة إخوة وأخوات."

"Wow! Do you think the house was very small for them?" said Nadine.

"Yes," said Dad. "There were eight people and only three bedrooms!"

قالت نادين"واو! هل تعتقد أن المنزل كان صغيرًا جدًا بالنسبة لهم؟"، قال أبي" نعم ، كان هناك ثمانية أشخاص وثلاث غرف نوم فقط!"

"Do you think they were happy?" asked Sameh.

سأل سامح "هل تعتقد أنهم كانوا سعداء؟".

"I think they were very happy, just like we are" said Dad.

قال أبي: "أعتقد أنهم كانوا سعداء للغاية ، تمامًا مثلنا".

"But is the house different now?" asked Nadine.

سألت نادين " لكن هل المنزل مختلف الآن؟".

"Well," said Dad, "not really. The walls are a different color, but I think that's all. I'm glad it hasn't changed because I have such great memories of growing up here too."

قال أبي:" حسنًا ، ليس حقًا. الجدران لونها مختلف ، ولكن أعتقد أن هذا كل شيء. أنا سعيد لأنه لم يتغير لأن لدي ذكريات رائعة عن نشأتي هنا أيضًا."

"But you still haven't told us who Monira is!" said Sameh.

قال سامح "لكنك ما زلت لم تخبرنا من هي منيرة!".

"Well, you already know her," said Dad.

قال أبي:" حسنًا ، أنت تعرفها بالفعل".

"Monira was your great-grandmother – Granddad's mom! I guess you have never heard her first name before.

"منيرة كانت جدتك الكبرى! - والدة جدك! أعتقد أنك لم تسمع اسمها الأول من قبل.

The things that you found are from her childhood. I'm so happy we have them! Thank you two!"

الأشياء التي وجدتها هي من طفولتها. أنا سعيد جدًا أنها لدينا! شكرًا لكما!"

Answer the following questions.

1. What is the message of the story?
a) Old houses are better than new houses. ( )
b) Old houses can have interesting histories. ( )
c) Old houses are dangerous to live in. ( )
2. How did Sameh feel when he found Monira's message? Why?
....
3. Why did Sameh and Nadine go into the spare room?
....
4. Why was the children's dad happy at the end of the story?
....

Help your child listen and read. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. In the spare ...., they found old boxes.
   a) house b) room c) balcony d) garage
2. Sameh found a .... in one of the boxes.
   a) rubber b) bag c) doll d) pen
3. There was a birthday .... underneath the doll.
   a) car b) balloon c) bike d) card
4. .... wrote "To Monira on your birthday, much love".
   a) Uncle b) Grandma c) Aunt d) Grandpa

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

bricks / history / great-grandmother / happy / paper

"I don't believe it!" said Dad, looking at the things.
"Let me tell you about the 1) .... of this house. It was built from 2) .... and stone in the1950s. My grandma – your 3) .... – lived here with her mom, dad, and five brothers and sisters. They were 4) ...."

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The .... room is used for visitors or to put things in.
   a) stir b) spare c) pair d) tyre
2. Houses are built from ....
   a) rocks b) bricks c) plastic d) hills
3. Your father's grandma is your ....-grandmother.
   a) large b) young c) old d) great
4. The kitten jumped .... the chair.
   a) on b) off c) of d) at
5. " .... " means very surprised.
   a) Shocked b) Spare c) Brick d) Curious
6. To be interested, or you feel you want to know more means ....
   a) curious b) surprised c) message d) shocked

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Sameh and Nadine were on school vacation at home with their parents. One morning, Sameh was in the living room, playing with his new kitten. Suddenly, the kitten jumped off the chair and ran through a small hole in the wall! Sameh put his hand through the hole to get her, but all he could feel was some paper. He pulled the paper – it was very old. On it, there was a message in a child's writing: Hello, I'm Monira! I live here. Sameh felt very curious. The next day, it was raining. Sameh and his sister, Nadine, were feeling bored. "Let's go up and look in the spare room," Sameh said.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Sameh and Nadine were on school ....
   a) trip   b) journey   c) vacation   d) party
2. Sameh was playing with his new ....
   a) kitten   b) puppy   c) cat   d) dog
3. The opposite of "bored" is ....
   a) sad   b) boring   c) interesting   d) interested

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What did the kitten do? ....
5. Who wrote the message? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. found - wall - Sameh - a - the - in - hole - .
....
2. think - Do - happy - were - they - you - ?
....
3. and - up - go - the - Let's - in - attic - look - .
....

6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Your family home

Guiding questions:

- How old is your home?
- How has your home changed?
- Who has lived there?
- What was it built from?

My fantastic bedroom

We moved into a new apartment a month ago, and I'm so happy because I have a new bedroom! I love my new room. It's a very light and comfortable room. I share it with my brother, Maged, and we're good friends. We have a long desk for our PCs so we can do our homework in our bedroom. That's much better than doing it in the living room!

Caring for your cat

If you have a pet cat, you should look after it. Give your cat lots of attention so it feels safe. You should stroke it. This means that you should move your hand over its back, or under its chin – cats love this! They like a warm, comfortable bed, but sometimes they just sleep on the couch! Don't wake it up – cats need to sleep for about 15 hours every day! They like small meals at different times in the day. Cats shouldn't have much milk to drink. Milk is bad for them. Water is better.

Caring for your turtle

Turtles need a very large space for their home. A bigger turtle needs a bigger space! They need clean soil to dig in, too. Turtles like sleeping in a safe, dark place where the temperature doesn't change. These animals like to eat flowers and plants. You can also buy special turtle food. They sometimes need a heat lamp. This is a special light to keep the turtle nice and warm.

Review on Unit (2)

Activities

do push-ups	يقوم بعمل تمارين الضغط	play chess	يلعب شطرنج
play the violin	يعزف على الكمان	swap comic books	يتبادل الكتب المصورة
watch cartoons	يشاهد أفلام الكرتون		

Appliances and electricity

appliance	جهاز منزلي	juicer	عصارة
blade	شفرة	smoothie	عصير فواكه
blender	خلاط	candle	شمعة
electricity	كهرباء	stove	بوتجاز
electric car	سيارة كهربية	games console	وحدة ألعاب إلكترونية
hairdryer	مجفف الشعر	invention	اختراع
interactive whiteboard	سبورة تفاعلية	toaster	محمصة خبز
laptop	لاب توب	lighting	الإضاءة
microwave oven	فرن - ميكروويف	refrigerator	ثلاجة
motor	موتور - محرك	milkshake	مخفوق الحليب

Phrasal verbs

tidy up	يرتب	clean up	ينظف
hang up	يعلق	mop up	يمسح
pick up	يلتقط	put away	يضع الأشياء في مكانها
put out	يُخرج		

Caring for animals

attention	اهتمام	collar	وق
claws	مخالب	furry	و فرو
stroke	يلمس برفق - يلاطف	vaccinations	طعيمات
sharpen	يُحدّ (يجعله حادًا)		

Other words

brick	قالب طوب	vaccine	اح - مصل
break down	يتعطل	change	ير
fix the car	يصلح السيارة	great-grandmother	دة الكبرى
heat food	يسخن الطعام	iron the clothes	وي الملابس
garden center	مركز حدائق	program	مج / برنامج
shocked	مصدوم	curious	ضولى

Language

(If) First Conditional

If + subject + present simple , subject + (will + inf). ...

e.g. If it is hot tomorrow, I'll make a smoothie.

If + subject + present simple , subject + (can + inf.)

e.g. If you arrive early, you can get a good seat.

If + subject + present simple , subject + may + inf.

e.g. If she hurries, she may catch the train; I'm not sure.

Phrasal Verbs

verb + preposition

e.g. I always tidy up my room on weekends.

Dictation on Unit (2)

Lesson (1)

يتبادل الكتب المصورة	يقوم بعمل تمارين الضغط
يشاهد أفلام الكارتون	يعزف على الكمان
ينتقل إلى	يلعب شطرنج

Lesson (2)

مجفف الشعر	وحدة الألعاب الإلكترونية
محمصة خبز	ثلاجة
خلاط	لاب توب

Lesson (3)

سبورة تفاعلية	مقبس كهرباء
يشرح	كابل / سلك تمديد
في رأيي	يجلس في دائرة

Lesson (4)

فظيع	يتعطل
بطارية	يكوي الملابس
مصدوم	ببطء

Lesson (5)

أرتب حجرتي	يخرج القمامة
يمسح الماء	يلتقط الكتب
يعلق الملابس	ينظف المطبخ

Lesson (6)

دافئ	اهتمام
ذو فرو	تطعيمات
يوقظ	يهتم بـ

Lesson (7)

ذكريات	خاص
في المنزل	خطير
قالب طوب	فضولي

Help your child dictate these words.
ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Mom and Dad's bedroom is .... ours.
   a) over   b) on   c) next to   d) behind
2. Their bedroom is the same .... as ours.
   a) color   b) height   c) size   d) sight
3. They have their own ....
   a) kitchen   b) bathroom   c) cupboard   d) drawer
4. Our bedroom has .... for our hobbies.
   a) pace   b) place   c) peace   d) space

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

invention - motor - blade - blender - toaster

Did you know that a Polish-American man called Stephen Poplawski invented the 1) .... in 1922? He put a sharp 2) .... in the bottom of a tall glass. When the blade turns, it chops the food. He added a small 3) .... The motor turned the blade, which blended the food together. He used his new 4) .... to make milkshakes.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

I love my new room. It's a very light and comfortable room. I share it with my brother, Maged, and we're good friends. We have a long desk for our PCs so we can do our homework in our bedroom. That's much better than doing it in the living room! There's too much noise there from our little sister and the TV!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I love my new ....

a) house   b) toy   c) room   d) doll

2. I share the new room with my ...., Maged.

a) friend   b) brother   c) cousin   d) uncle

3. "PCs" means ....

a) cameras   b) laptops   c) computers   d) TVs

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why do you have a long desk?

....

5. What causes much noise?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write (YES) or (NO).

1. Mom and dad were happy to see Mayar's new book.
2. Mom and Dad have been to a farm.
3. Mayar has pottery classes at lunchtime.
4. On the weekend, the parents were busy again.

B Read and answer the questions:

1. What did Asser see outside the garage?

....

2. Where did Asser put the school bags?

....

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. If it's hot tomorrow, I'll .... a smoothie
   a) makes b) made c) make d) making
2. I think we need to clean .... the kitchen
   a) off b) out c) down d) up
3. If my hair .... wet, I'll use a hairdryer
   a) get b) gets c) got d) getting
4. We have to put .... the garbage tonight
   a) in b) down c) out d) up
5. If she .... , she may catch the train
   a) hurry b) hurried c) hurries d) will hurry
6. I always tidy .... my room
   a) on b) up c) at d) off

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. floor - The - is - kitchen - dirty - .

   ....

2. do - sleep - Where - turtles - ?

   ....

3. broke - the - all - Suddenly, - robots - down - .

   ....

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Caring for your turtle

Guiding words:

(large space - eat plants - special food - special light)

....

....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I love watching .... after school.
   a) movies b) plays c) cartoons d) matches
2. Cartoons are really ....
   a) funny b) boring c) amazing d) interesting
3. There are stories about the .... , too.
   a) camel b) horse c) dog d) cat
4. I sometimes swap comic books with my ....
   a) family b) friends c) neighbors d) teachers

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

difficult - chess - board - club - living room

One of our friends, Sherif, is an amazing 1) .... player. We both play chess at the school chess 2) .... Chess is quite 3) .... for me, but, luckily, Sherif is helping me. Maged and I like 4) .... games. We play them with our friends in our bedroom and with our family in the living room!

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Yesterday it was raining, so we all stayed at home and cleaned the house. Mom and Dad gave us some chores as a challenge. We all had one hour to do our chores – Mom and Dad, too! My brother and I had to tidy up our bedrooms. I had to hang up my clothes, because I sometimes leave them on the chair. My brother had to put away his books and put them back on the shelf. Dad put out the trash. Mom cleaned up the

kitchen and put away the dishes. But then, my little sister tried to mop up the juice from the floor. She split her drink, so the floor was very wet! We all helped to clean it up – just in time!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We all had one .... to do chores
   a) night   b) day   c) minute   d) hour
2. Mom cleaned up the ....
   a) living room   b) bedroom   c) kitchen   d) bathroom
3. The word "trash" means ....
   a) plastic   b) paper   c) rubbish   d) books

B) Answer the following questions.

4. How was the weather yesterday?

....

5. Why did you have to hang up your clothes?

....



4 The Reader



A Read and write (YES) or (NO).

1. The family all got on the bus to go home. (   )
2. Mom is very busy this week. (   )
3. Mayar listened to an audiobook. (   )
4. Asser decided to take his basketball. (   )

B Read and answer the questions:

1. What classes does Mayar have?

....

2. What did Asser see outside the garage?

....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I can mop .... the juice on the floor.
   a) out b) up c) away d) into
2. If my sister .... , I talk to her.
   a) cry b) crying c) cries d) cried
3. I'll hang my new clothes ....
   a) out b) about c) up d) down
4. If I tidy up my room, I may .... a movie.
   a) watch b) watches c) watched d) watching
5. .... you like me to put away the dishes?
   a) Could b) Can c) Would d) Should
6. I have my dinner .... the evening.
   a) on b) in c) at d) for

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. watch - TV - usually - I - cartoons - on - .
   ....
2. was - vacation - school - Sameh - on - .
   ....
3. usually - my - visit - weekend, - On - the - I - uncle - .
   ....

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Your pet

Guiding words:

(dog - place - food - equipment)

....



PROJECT 1

What does Sarah want her robot to do, and why?

1 look and read .

Design Your Own Robot Competition

Would you like a robot to help you around the house? Or maybe to help with your schoolwork? Enter our competition, and share your ideas. Write about your robot and send it in, with a picture!

ل ترغب في روبوت لمساعدتك في جميع أنحاء المنزل؟ أو ربما للمساعدة في واجباتك المدرسية؟ أدخل مسابقاتنا وشارك
كارك. اكتب عن الروبوت الخاص بك وأرسله لنا، مع صورة!

My Robot by Sarah

What it looks like ما شكله	It has two round blue eyes. It has a friendly face. It has two arms and a blue body. له عينان زرقاوان مستديرتان. له وجه ودود. له ذراعان وجسم أزرق.
How big it is ما حجمه	It's small. It's about the same size as my cat! له صغير. تقريبًا نفس حجم قطتي!
What it is made from مم يصنع	It's made from plastic and metal. له مصنوع من البلاستيك والمعدن.
How it moves كيف يتحرك	It has two wheels, and it can travel quickly. له عجلتان، ويمكنه التحرك بسرعة.
What it can do and why ماذا يمكن أن يفعل ولماذا	It has two arms so it can pick up books. It can tidy up my room! I'm not very good at keeping my bedroom tidy, so I need some help! ذراعان حتى يتمكن من التقاط الكتب. يمكن أن يرتب غرفتي! أنا لست يدة في الحفاظ على غرفة نومي مرتبة ، لذلك أحتاج إلى بعض المساعدة!



2 Write your fact file for your robot. Then draw a picture in your notebo

What it looks like

How big it is

What it is made from

How it moves

What it can do and why

Help your child write about his / her robot.

ان يكتب عن الروبوت الخاص به.

Listen and read.

HASSAN FATHY: A BIOGRAPHY

حسن فتحي: سيرة ذاتية


The famous workplace

1) Hassan Fathy's childhood and early life:

Hassan Fathy was a famous Egyptian architect. He was born in Alexandria in 1900. When he was eight, Hassan and his family moved to Cairo. His father was a police officer, but later changed jobs to become a teacher. As a child, Hassan was creative, and his family encouraged him to do different things. He loved drawing and painting, and he was very good at math.

طفولة حسن فتحي وبداية حياته: كان حسن فتحي مهندسًا معماريًا مصريًا مشهورًا. ولد في الإسكندرية عام ١٩٠٠. عندما كان في الثامنة من عمره ، انتقل حسن وعائلته إلى القاهرة. كان والده ضابط شرطة ، لكنه غير وظيفته لاحقًا ليصبح مدرسًا. عندما كان طفلًا ، كان حسن مبدعًا ، وشجعته عائلته على القيام بأشياء مختلفة. كان يحب الرسم والتلوين ، وكان جيدًا جدًا في الرياضيات.

2) Hassan Fathy's career:


A domed roof at New Gourna

When he was an adult, Hassan studied architecture at Cairo University, and he taught the subject in Cairo in the 1920s and 1930s. Later, he worked as an architect. As he got older, Fathy became famous for building comfortable, attractive houses using low-cost materials. He wanted his houses to have Egyptian character. His new buildings had features from traditional Egyptian homes, for example, domed roofs and mud bricks. They kept the houses cool in the hot weather.

حياة حسن فتحي المهنية: عندما كان بالغًا ، درس حسن الهندسة المعمارية في جامعة القاهرة ، وقام بتدريس هذه المادة في القاهرة في عشرينيات وثلاثينات القرن الماضي. في وقت لاحق ، عمل كمهندس معماري. مع تقدمه في السن ، اشتهر فتحي ببناء منازل مريحة وجذابة باستخدام مواد منخفضة التكلفة. أراد أن يكون لمنازله صبغه مصرية. كانت مبانيه الجديدة لها خصائص البيوت المصرية التقليدية ، على سبيل المثال ، أسقف مقببة وطوب طيني. حافظت على برودة المنازل في الطقس الحار.

3) Famous projects and awards:

Fathy's first big project began in the 1940s. It was New Gourna, which is a very interesting village. The village is near Luxor. The people there needed to move because their homes were too close to the Valley of the Kings. Fathy built new homes for the people in the traditional style, at low cost.

المشاريع والجوائز الشهيرة: بدأ أول مشروع كبير لفتحي في أربعينات القرن الماضي. كانت نيو جورنا ، وهي قرية مثيرة للاهتمام للغاية. تقع القرية بالقرب من الأقصر. كان الناس هناك بحاجة إلى الانتقال لأن منازلهم كانت قريبة جدًا من وادي الملوك. بنى فتحي منازل جديدة للناس على الطراز التقليدي بتكلفة منخفضة.

In the 1950s, Fathy built other public buildings, for example, schools, for Egypt's Ministry of Education. You can find his buildings all over Egypt and around the world, for example, in New Mexico in the USA. Fathy received the **Aga Khan Chairman's Award** for Architecture and an international **award** for his designs, both in 1980. He lived in Cairo until 1989, when he died at the age of 89.



Hassan Fathy, Egyptian architect

في الخمسينات ، بنى فتحي مبان عامة أخرى ، مثل المدارس ، لوزارة التربية والتعليم المصرية. يمكنك أن تجد مبانيه في جميع أنحاء مصر وحول العالم ، على سبيل المثال ، في نيو مكسيكو بالولايات المتحدة الأمريكية. حصل فتحي على جائزة رئيس الآغا خان للهندسة المعمارية وجائزة دولية لتصميماته، وكلاهما في عام ١٩٨٠ . عاش في القاهرة حتى عام ١٩٨٩ ، عندما توفي عن عمر يناهز ٨٩ عاما.

4) Why Hassan Fathy is an important person:

Today, we can see that Hassan Fathy's work is important for three reasons. Firstly, he understood that traditional architecture was great for his country. Secondly, he respected the people who lived in his buildings. The houses he built are very comfortable, and they work well for the people who live in them. Thirdly, he knew it is important to build for the local climate. His houses have high domed roofs and thick mud walls to keep them cool.

لماذا يعتبر حسن فتحي شخصية هامة: اليوم ، يمكننا أن نرى أن عمل حسن فتحي مهم لثلاثة أسباب. أولًا ، لقد فهم أن الهندسة المعمارية التقليدية كانت رائعة لبلده. ثانيًا ، كان يحترم الناس الذين يعيشون في مبانيه. المنازل التي بناها كانت مريحة للغاية ، وهي مناسبة جدًا للأشخاص الذين يعيشون فيها. ثالثًا ، كان يعلم أنه من المهم البناء من أجل المناخ المحلي. تحتوي منازله على أسقف مقببة عالية وجدران طينية سميكة لإبقائها باردة.

Word	Definition
public عام	sometimes that everybody in the community can see or use.
feature خاصية - ميزة	an important part of something, that you notice because it seems important or interesting.
domed مقبب	something which has a round shape.
architecture الهندسة المعمارية	designing and making buildings.
mud brick طوب لبن - طيني	a type of building material made of earth.
attractive جذاب	nice and pleasant to look at.
courtyard فناء البيت	An open space where people can sit, that is surrounded by walls or building.
shade ظل	An area that is dark and cool, because it isn't in the sun.
suk سوق	A market.
well بئر	A deep hole in the ground where there is fresh water.
windcatcher ملقف الرياح	A tall building that holds hot air and cools it.

Listen and read.

New Baris مدينة باريس الجديدة

Planning a new village:

In the 1960s, an organization (called the ODD) asked Hassan Fathy to design a village in the desert at Kharga for the farmers. There were two challenges. Firstly, it was important to keep the village cool for the people there. Sometimes, the temperature rose to 50 degrees in the desert at Kharga. Secondly, the farmers needed water for their crops and families. They needed to find water before building the new houses.

التخطيط لقرية جديدة: في الستينيات من القرن العشرين ، طلبت منظمة (تسمى ODD) من حسن فتحي تصميم قرية في الصحراء في واحة الخارجة للمزارعين. كان هناك تحديان. أولًا ، كان من المهم الحفاظ على برودة القرية للناس هناك. في بعض الأحيان ، ترتفع درجة الحرارة إلى ٥٠ درجة في الصحراء في واحة الخارجة. ثانيًا ، يحتاج المزارعون إلى المياه لمحاصيلهم وعائلاتهم. كانوا بحاجة إلى العثور على المياه قبل بناء المنازل الجديدة.

Building in the desert:

The ODD had a team of builders. Luckily, the builders found a well and they were very happy. Hassan Fathy could start building. He began work in 1963. To keep the village houses cool, they were made of mud bricks. The village also had windcatchers – they are tall buildings which hold hot air and cool it down.

البناء في الصحراء: كان لدى منظمة (ODD) فريق من عمال البناء. لحسن الحظ ، وجد عمال البناء بئرًا وكانوا سعداء جدًا. يمكن أن يبدأ حسن فتحي البناء. بدأ العمل في عام ١٩٦٣. للحفاظ على برودة منازل القرية ، كانت مصنوعة من الطوب اللبن. كان للقرية أيضًا مصدات للرياح وهي مباني شاهقة تحبس الهواء الساخن وتبرده.



A well at New Baris



A windcatcher

Fathy carefully studied the position of the sun and designed the area so that the buildings gave shade to people in the streets.

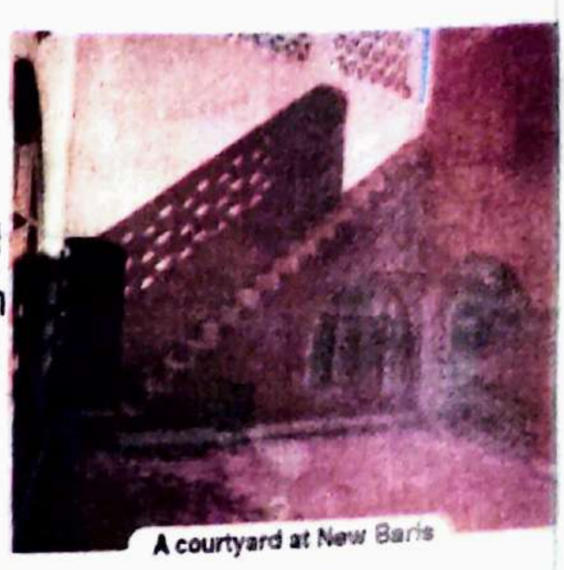
درس فتحي موقع الشمس بعناية وصمم المنطقة بحيث توفر المباني الظل للناس في الشوارع.

He started with his domed roofs for the houses. Then, he added a taktabosh courtyard, which provided a shaded seating area outside. Hassan Fathy added the suk and other buildings for the people. He believed it was important to create communities, not just houses.

وبدأ بالأسقف المقببة للمنازل. ثم أضاف فناء تكتابوش ، الذي وفر منطقة جلوس مظللة بالخارج. أضاف حسن فتحي السوق والمباني الأخرى للناس. كان يعتقد أنه من المهم إنشاء مجتمعات ، وليس فقط منازل.

New Baris now:

Sadly, New Baris is unfinished. Work on it stopped in 1967, but today you can still see the suk, the main town hall, the beginning of the museum and social center, and some villas. You can see and respect Hassan Fathy's designs. Hassan Fathy wanted to create a community of farmers in the middle of the desert. He wanted to give the farmers a fantastic place to live.



A courtyard at New Baris

باريس الجديدة الآن: للأسف، باريس الجديد لم تكتمل. توقف العمل فيها في عام ١٩٦٧ ، ولكن اليوم لا يزال بإمكانك رؤية السوق ، قاعة المدينة الرئيسية ، وبداية المتحف والمركز الاجتماعي ، وبعض الفيلات. يمكنك أن ترى وتحترم تصاميم حسن فتحي. أراد حسن فتحي إنشاء مجتمع من المزارعين في وسط الصحراء. أراد أن يمنح المزارعين مكانًا رائعًا للعيش فيه.

Read again and circle

1. Hassan Fathy needed to build a village in the (courtyard - desert).
2. There wasn't enough (sun - water) for the people at Kharga.
3. Hassan used mud bricks and (wells - windcatchers) to make the houses cool.
4. Fathy researched how to give the streets (water - shade).
5. Fathy designed a whole community, not just (roofs - houses).

Unit 3

School time!

Learning about science in a laboratory

In this unit, the students will:

- read and understand an article about different kinds of classrooms.
- understand and use words for schools and education.
- understand and use adverbs of frequency.
- listen to and understand descriptions of school clubs.
- use make me + adjective to describe his / her feelings.
- understand and use reported speech.
- read and understand a brochure.
- give reasons for his / her opinion in writing.
- read and understand a story.

Lesson (1) DIFFERENT CLASSROOMS

Key vocabulary

green roofs	أسطح خضراء	subject	مادة دراسية
nomadic	بدو رحل (يحب التنقل) / بدوي	timetable	جدول الحصص
sleds	زلاجات	flexible	مرن
reindeer	حيوان الرنة (الأيل)	mobile	متنقل / متحرك
boarding school	مدرسة داخلية	tents	خيام

Extra vocabulary

classrooms	فصول دراسية	traditional skills	مهارات تقليدية
roof garden	حديقة السطح	culture's language	لغة الثقافة
space	حيز / مكان	math	رياضيات
outdoor places	أماكن خارجية	science	علوم
calm	هادئ	computing	الحوسبة / الكمبيوتر
healthy	صحي	chores	أعمال / مهام منزلية
frozen	متجمد	outside	بالخارج

Definitions

mobile	can move	متنقل / متحرك
flexible	can change easily	مرن
timetable	a schedule with times of all your school classes on it	جدول الحصص
boarding school	a school where children live and only go home at vacation times	مدرسة داخلية
subject	a topic that you study at school for example , math , English, history, science	مادة دراسية

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present		Past	P.P
clean	ينظف	cleaned	cleaned
cool	يبرد	cooled	cooled

Irregular verbs

Present		Past	P.P
bring	يجلب / يُحضر	brought	brought
mean	يعني / يقصد	meant	meant
teach	يُعلِم	taught	taught
build	يبني	built	built
say	يقول	said	said
grow	يزرع / ينمو	grew	grown
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten

Important expressions and prepositions

The Shagara at School project			مشروع تشجير المدارس
not the same	ليست نفس الشيء	on the roof	على السطح
a little different	مختلف قليلًا	on the move	دائم الترحال / متنقل
the hot dry weather	الطقس الحار الجاف	on ice and snow	على الثلج والجليد
snowy land	أرض جليدية	on wheels	على عجلات
get an education	يتلقى تعليم	bring ... into ...	يجلب ... ل ...
grow well	ينمو بشكل جيد	in the shade	في الظل
stay with	يقيم مع	good for	مفيد ل

Notes:

A green roof is a garden on the top of a building.
Green roofs are good for the environment because they bring nature into the city. They also clean and cool the air.
Nomadic people don't live in one place. They travel in sleds across the frozen land and sleep in tents.
Nomadic school is a school which travels with the families. The classrooms are tents on the ice, or mobile rooms on wheels.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Classrooms of the world

Classrooms are not the same in every school. Here are two places where classrooms are a little different.

الفصول الدراسية ليست نفس الشيء في كل مدرسة. هذان مكانان حيث الفصول الدراسية مختلفة قليلا.

A roof garden in a city

Classrooms on the roof!

الفصول الدراسية على السطح!

In Egypt, some classes have their lessons in a garden on the roof of the school!

في مصر، بعض الصفوف الدراسية تتلقى دروسها في حديقة على سطح المدرسة!

The Shagara at School project designs gardens and green roofs for schools in Egypt. Green roofs are gardens on the top of a building. They bring nature into the city. They also clean and cool the air. That means that they are great for the environment.

يقوم مشروع تشجير المدارس بتصميم الحدائق والأسطح الخضراء للمدارس في مصر. الأسطح الخضراء هي حدائق على قمة المبنى. يجلبون الطبيعة إلى المدينة. كما أنها تنظف وتبرد الهواء. هذا يعني أنها رائعة للبيئة.

The project teaches students and teachers how to plant a roof garden. They learn about which plants grow well in the hot, dry weather. In 2017, classes at one school started going to their green roofs for lessons. People at the project thought this was an amazing idea!

يعلم المشروع الطلاب والمعلمين كيفية زراعة حديقة على السطح. يتعلمون عن النباتات التي تنمو بشكل جيد في الطقس الحار والجاف. في عام ٢٠١٧ ، بدأت الصفوف الدراسية في إحدى المدارس بالذهاب إلى أسطحها الخضراء للدروس. اعتقد الناس في المشروع أن هذه كانت فكرة رائعة!

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

In 2019, they built their first classroom on the roof. The desks are in the shade, but there are no walls. Students and teachers have space and can see the flowers and plants.

في عام ٢٠١٩ ، قاموا ببناء أول فصل دراسي لهم على السطح. المقاعد في الظل ، لكن لا توجد جدران. الطلاب والمعلمون لديهم مكان ويمكنهم رؤية الزهور والنباتات.

The Shagara at School Project says roof gardens can help students in many city schools. Green outdoor places make us calm and healthy – and that is great for learning.

يقول مشروع تشجير المدارس إن حدائق الأسطح يمكن أن تساعد الطلاب في العديد من مدارس المدينة. الأماكن الخارجية الخضراء تجعلنا هادئين وبصحة جيدة - وهذا أمر رائع للتعلم.

Classrooms on the move!

الفصول الدراسية المتنقلة!



Nomadic children help to look after reindeer

In Northern Siberia, some students have their lessons in tents on the ice and snow! Many people in the North of Siberia are **nomadic**. This means that they don't live in one place. They travel in **sleds** across the frozen land and sleep in tents. They look after **reindeer** and take them to where there is food.

في شمال سيبيريا ، يتلقى بعض الطلاب دروسهم في الخيام على الجليد والثلج! كثير من الناس في شمال سيبيريا هم من البدو الرحل. هذا يعني أنهم لا يعيشون في مكان واحد. يسافرون في زلاجات عبر الأرض المتجمدة وينامون في الخيام. إنهم يعتنون بحيوان "الرنة" ويأخذونها إلى حيث يوجد طعام.

So, how do their children get an education? There are two ways. First, some children go away to **boarding school**. These children are away from their families for many months every year. They can't learn traditional skills from their parents, and they often forget their culture's language.

وبالتالي، كيف يحصل أطفالهم على التعليم؟ هناك طريقتان. أولًا، يذهب بعض الأطفال إلى المدرسة الداخلية. هؤلاء الأطفال بعيدون عن عائلاتهم لعدة أشهر كل عام. لا يمكنهم تعلم المهارات التقليدية من والديهم، وغالبا ما ينسون لغة ثقافتهم.

The second way is nomadic school. This is a school which travels with the families. The classrooms are tents on the ice, or **mobile** rooms on wheels. The children study school **subjects** like math, science, and computing. However, they also study their own language and traditional skills. The **timetable** is **flexible**, so they can help their families with the chores.

الطريقة الثانية هي المدرسة البدوية. هذه مدرسة تسافر مع العائلات. الفصول الدراسية عبارة عن خيام على الجليد ، أو غرف متنقلة على عجلات. يدرس الأطفال المواد الدراسية مثل الرياضيات والعلوم والحوسبة. ومع ذلك ، فإنهم يدرسون أيضا لغتهم ومهاراتهم التقليدية. جدول الحصص مرن ، حتى يتمكنوا من مساعدة أسرهم في الأعمال المنزلية.

At nomadic school, the children are happy because they can stay with their families and get a good education. They learn everything about how to live in their snowy land!

في مدرسة البدو الرحل ، يكون الأطفال سعداء لأنهم يستطيعون البقاء مع عائلاتهم والحصول على تعليم جيد. يتعلمون كل شيء عن

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. In Egypt, some classes have their lessons in a .... on the roaf.
   a) club b) garden c) shop d) station
2. The Shagara at School project designs gardens and .... roofs.
   a) white b) blue c) green d) yellow
3. Green roofs are gardens on the .... of a building.
   a) top b) side c) bottom d) front
4. They bring nature into the ....
   a) house b) country c) village d) city

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

shade - space - amazing - roofs - amazed

In 2017, classes at one school started going to their green 1).................... for lessons. People at the project thought this was an 2).................... idea! In 2019, they built their first classroom on the roof. The desks are in the 3).................... , but there are no walls. Students and teachers have 4).................... and can see the flowers and plants.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. " .... " means it can move.
   a) Mobile b) Flexible c) Amazing d) Boarding
2. " .... " means it can change easily.
   a) Frozen b) Nomadic c) Mobile d) Flexible
3. .... people don't live in one place.
   a) Creative b) Scientific c) Nomadic d) Athletic

In Northern Siberia, people travel in ....

a) cars b) buses c) trains d) sleds

Nomadic people look after .... and take them to where there is food

a) reindeer b) donkeys c) camels d) horses

6. Some children go away to .... school

a) broad b) boarding c) breeding d) city

7. Some classrooms are tents on the ice, or .... rooms on wheels

a) mobile b) still c) fixed d) stable

8. The children study school .... like math, science, and computing

a) objects b) magazines c) subjects d) stories

9. The .... is flexible, so the students can help their families

a) timetable b) time c) table d) tablet

10. The children can help their families with the ....

a) cars b) tables c) subjects d) chores

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. aren't - in every - school - same - Classrooms - the - .

....

2. a building - the top of - on - Green - gardens - are - roofs - .

....

3. help - look after - Nomadic - to - reindeer - children - .

....

4. favorite - at - Adel's - subject - ICT - is - school - .

....

Lesson (1)

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

In Northern Siberia, some students have their lessons in tents on the ice and snow. So, how do their children get an education? There are two ways. First, some children go away to a boarding school. These children are away from their families for many months every year. They can't learn traditional skills from their parents, and they often forget their culture's language. The second way is nomadic school. This is a school which travels with the families. The classrooms are tents on the ice, or mobile rooms on wheels. The children study school subjects like math, science, and computing. However, they also study their own language and traditional skills. The timetable is flexible, so they can help their families with the chores.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. At .... school, children are away from their families.
   a) nomadic b) boarding c) broading d) city
2. The classrooms in nomadic schools are .... on the ice.
   a) shops b) rooms c) tents d) laboratories
3. The word "mobile" means it can ....
   a) run b) play c) move d) stand

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why can't students at boarding school learn traditional skills?

....

5. What subjects can students study in nomadic school?

....

6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Classrooms on the move

Guiding words:

(nomadic - sleds - boarding school - nomadic school)

....

....

Lesson (2) LANGUAGE

Key vocabulary

uniform	زي موحد	neat	أنيق / مرتب
cafeteria	كافيتريا	ICT	تكنولوجيا المعلومات والاتصالات

Extra Vocabulary

Bangladesh	دولة بنجلاديش	summer	الصيف
middle school	مدرسة متوسطة	dirty	قذر - متسخ
kindergarten	روضة الأطفال	cycle	يركب دراجة
toy	لعبة	school trip	رحلة مدرسية
dry	جاف	have sandwiches	يتناول ساندوتشات
sunny	مشمس	rainy	ممطر
grade	صف دراسي	routines	أعمال روتينية
school rules	قوانين المدرسة	bookcase	مكتبة / خزانة كتب

Definitions

cafeteria	a place where students eat lunch	كافيتريا
ICT	a subject where you study and use computers	مادة تكنولوجيا المعلومات والاتصالات
middle school	a school for children aged between 9 and 13	مدرسة متوسطة
neat	clean and tidy, not messy or dirty	أنيق
school uniform	clothes that are the same for every student	زي مدرسي

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
have - has	يملك - يتناول	had	had
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten
keep	يحفظ - يحافظ	kept	kept

Lesson (2)

Listen and read.

Hi, my name's Lilly, and I go to middle school in San Francisco, USA. I started school in Kindergarten when I was six. Now I'm eleven, and I'm in Grade 6. I like my school. In Kindergarten, we played a lot, and there were always lots of toys in the classroom. We do more writing now in Grade 6, and we do more interesting subjects, like ICT. I like using computers!


Lilly, USA

We go to school from Monday to Friday. I don't have to wear a school uniform, but my clothes and shoes have to be neat. School starts at 8 am and finishes at 3 pm. I often walk to school when it's dry and sunny. I sometimes get the bus with my friends. We have an hour for lunch, and I usually bring lunch from home. I eat in the cafeteria, or outside in summer.

مرحبا، اسمي ليلي ؛ وأنا أذهب إلى المدرسة المتوسطة في سان فرانسيسكو، الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية. بدأت الدراسة في روضة الأطفال عندما كنت في السادسة من عمري. الآن أنا في الحادية عشرة من عمري، وأنا في الصف السادس. أنا أحب مدرستي. في روضة الأطفال، لعبنا كثيرًا، وكان هناك دائمًا الكثير من الألعاب في الفصل. نحن نقوم بالكتابة أكثر الآن في الصف السادس، ونحن ندرس مواد أكثر إثارة للاهتمام، مثل تكنولوجيا المعلومات والاتصالات. أحب استخدام أجهزة الكمبيوتر!

نذهب إلى المدرسة من الاثنين إلى الجمعة. لست مضطرة لارتداء الزي المدرسي، لكن يجب أن تكون ملابسي وأحذيتي أنيقة. تبدأ المدرسة في الثامنة صباحًا وتنتهي في الثالثة مساءً. غالبًا ما أمشي إلى المدرسة عندما يكون الجو جافًا ومشمسًا. في بعض الأحيان أركب الحافلة مع أصدقائي. لدينا ساعة لتناول طعام الغداء، وعادة ما أحضر الغداء من المنزل. أنا آكل في الكافتيريا، أو في الخارج في الصيف.

Listen and read.

Aban lives in Bangladesh. His school is on a boat because sometimes in his country there are floods . There are 20 children in his class. There are solar panels on the roof of the boat to make electricity. They need electricity for the computers in their ICT classes. Aban's favorite subjects are science and art. There's a small library at school with lots of interesting books. Aban often plays football with his friends at the end of the day.

يعيش أبان في بنغلاديش. مدرسته على متن قارب لأنه في بعض الأحيان تحدث فيضانات في بلاده. هناك ٢٠ طفلًا في فصله. توجد ألواح شمسية على سطح القارب لتوليد الكهرباء. إنهم بحاجة إلى الكهرباء لأجهزة الكمبيوتر في فصول تكنولوجيا المعلومات والاتصالات الخاصة بهم. المواد المفضلة لدى أبان هي العلوم والفنون. توجد مكتبة صغيرة في المدرسة تحتوي على الكثير من الكتب المثيرة للاهتمام. غالبًا ما يلعب أبان كرة القدم مع أصدقائه في نهاية اليوم.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Adverbs of Frequency ظروف التكرار

- We can use adverbs of frequency with the present simple to say how often something happens.

ن أن نستخدم ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن عدد مرات حدوث الفعل.

- They are used to describe habits or routines.

دم في وصف العادات أو الأعمال الروتينية.

always	●	●	●	●
usually	●	●	●	○
often	●	●	○	○
sometimes	●	○	○	○
never	○	○	○	○

- Adverbs of frequency come before the main verb, but after the verb to be

ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسي ولكن بعد الفعل "be".

e.g. She often walks to school.

e.g. I am never late for school.

- We use How often...? to ask about adverbs of frequency.

تعلم (كم مرة ...؟) للسؤال عن ظروف التكرار.

e.g. How often do you go to the cinema?
I never go to the cinema.

يمكن استخدام هذه الكلمات في الإجابة أيضًا.

once	مرة	three times	ثلاث مرات
twice	مرتان	every (day)	كل (يوم)

e.g. How often does she visit her aunt?
She visits h

Remem...

زمن المضارع البسيط

Form التكوين

I / We / You / They / plural noun + inf.

e.g. We study English at school.

He / She / It / singular noun + (v + s, es, ies)

e.g. She gets the bus with her friends.

Negative النفي

I / We / You / They / plural noun + don't + inf.

e.g. They don't drink coffee.

He / She / It / singular noun + doesn't + inf.

e.g. He doesn't walk to school.

Question السؤال

Yes/No question

Do + (I / they / you / we / plural noun) + inf. ...?

e.g. Do you like English?

Yes, I do. No, I don't.

Does + (he / she / it / singular noun) + inf. ...?

e.g. Does Omar have apples?

Yes, he does. No, he doesn't.

Wh- question

Q.W + (do / does) + subject + inf. ...?

e.g. Where do you live?

Wh...



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I .... to middle school in San Francisco.
   a) go b) goes c) going d) to go
2. She .... her school.
   a) like b) likes c) liking d) to like
3. How .... Ali go to school?
   a) do b) does c) is d) was
4. He .... to school.
   a) always walk b) walks often c) walks never d) always walks
5. How many days .... Omar study every week?
   a) do b) does c) is d) was
6. We .... to school on Friday
   a) go never b) go always c) never go d) never goes
7. She .... to schoo
   a) often walk b) often walks c) walk often d) walks often

2 Read and complete with the correct form.

1. I .... (get sometimes) the bus with my frien
2. She always .... (eat) in the cafete
3. I usually .... (brings) lunch from ho
4. My clothes .... (always are) n
5. School always .... (start) at 8

Help your child deal with such questions.

ك ان يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. .... goes to primary school.
   a) Amr b) Omar c) Lilly d) Leila
2. Omar's school is in ....
   a) Giza b) Aswan c) Luxor d) Cairo
3. Omar is .... years old now.
   a) nine b) ten c) eleven d) twelve
4. Omar would like to be a ....
   a) teacher b) doctor c) pilot d) vet

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

football - boat - solar - floods - ICT

Aban lives in Bangladesh. His school is on a 1).......................... because sometimes in his country there are 2).......................... . There are 20 children in his class. There are 3).......................... panels on the roof of the boat to make electricity. Aban often plays 4).......................... with his friends at the end of the day.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I like .... I like using computers.
   a) ICT b) TIC c) CIT d) ITC
2. I don't have to wear a school ....
   a) socks b) uniform c) galabeya d) shorts
3. My clothes and shoes have to be ....
   a) messy b) dirty c) neat d) net
4. I eat my lunch in the ....
   a) table b) desk c) wall d) cafeteria
5. I don't have a bike. I .... cycle to school.
   a) always b) often c) usually d) never

6. It's a school rule to wear a uniform, so I .... wear it.
   a) never b) usually c) always d) often
7. We go to the museum once or twice a year. We .... there.
   a) always go b) sometimes go c) never go d) often go
8. My lunch .... a sandwich in the cafeteria.
   a) always is b) often is c) never is d) is often
9. My desk .... neat.
   a) is sometimes b) sometimes is
   c) never is d) often is
10. Lilly .... to school.
   a) never walk b) never walks c) walk never d) walks always
11. Lilly .... lunch from home.
   a) sometimes bring b) sometime brings
   c) brings never d) brings always

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. gets - with - the bus - Lilly - her friends - always - .
....
2. floods - Bangladesh - in - There - always - are - .
....
3. to - does - go - How - school - Aban - ?
....



Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Hi, my name's Lilly, and I go to middle school in San Francisco, USA. I started school in Kindergarten when I was six. Now I'm eleven, and I'm in Grade 6. I like my school. In Kindergarten, we played a lot, and there were always lots of toys in the classroom. We do more writing now in Grade 6, and we do more interesting subjects, like ICT. I like using computers!

We go to school from Monday to Friday. I don't have to wear a school uniform, but my clothes and shoes have to be neat. School starts at 8 am and finishes at 3 pm. I often walk to school when it's dry and sunny. I sometimes get the bus with my friends. We have an hour for lunch, and I usually bring lunch from home. I eat in the cafeteria, or outside in summer.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Lilly started school in .... when she was six.
   - a) middle school
   - b) kindergarten
   - c) High school
   - d) boarding school
2. Lilly is in Grade ....
   - a) three
   - b) four
   - c) five
   - d) six
3. The word "neat" means ....
   - a) clean and tidy
   - b) bad
   - c) dirty
   - d) messy

B) Answer the following questions.

4. When does Lilly go to school?

....

5. Where does Lilly have her lunch?

....

6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Your daily routine

Guiding words:

(wake up - breakfast - go to school - lunch - homework)

....

....

....

....

Lesson (3) SCHOOL CLUBS

Key vocabulary



swimming club
نادي السباحة



cooking club
نادي الطهي



music club
نادي الموسيقى



football club
نادي كرة القدم



science club



نادي العلوم



photography club
نادي التصوير



art club
نادي التربية الفنية



drama club
نادي التمثيل / المسرح

Extra Vocabulary

chess	شطرنج	bored	شاعر بالملل
art club	نادي الفنون / الرسم	excited	متحمس
happy	سعيد	healthy	صحي
unhappy	حزين	relaxed	مرتاح - مسترخي
hungry	جوعان	terrific	رائع
proud	فخور	tired	مرهق - مُتعب
join	ينضم إلى	friendly	ودود
mind	عقل	paint (ed)	يلون
tournament	دوري ألعاب	instruments	آلات موسيقية
subject	موضوع	concert	حفل موسيقي
competition	مسابقة	recipe	وصفة طعام
costumes	أزياء	rope	حبل

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (3)

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

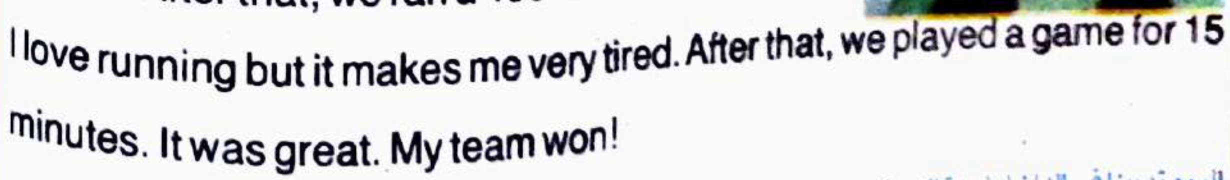
Present		Past	P.P
practice	يتمرن	practiced	practiced
point	يشير	pointed	pointed
compare	يقارن	compared	compared
act	يمثل	acted	acted

Important expressions and prepositions

shoot goals	يسدد أهداف	join in friendly matches	يشارك في مباريات ودية
watch videos	يشاهد فيديوهات	play chess	يلعب شطرنج
enter competitions	يدخل مسابقات	play music	يعزف موسيقى
make things	يصنع أشياء	sad plays	مسرحيات حزينة
watch cartoons	يشاهد أفلام كرتون	run up and down	يجري ذهابًا وعودة
400-meter race	سباق ٤٠٠ متر	go for a walk	يذهب للتمشية
recipe book	كتاب وصفات (الطبخ)	climb a rope	يتسلق الحبل

Listen and read.

Today we practiced inside for the first half hour. First, we had to run up and down the playground 20 times. Then we climbed a rope. That was really difficult. After that, we ran a 400-meter race outside. I love running but it makes me very tired. After that, we played a game for 15 minutes. It was great. My team won!



اليوم تدربنا في الداخل لمدة النصف ساعة الأولى. في البداية، كان علينا أن نركض ذهابًا وإيابًا في الملعب ٢٠ مرة. ثم تسلقنا الحبل. كان ذلك صعبًا حقًا. بعد ذلك، قمنا بإجراء سباق ٤٠٠ متر في الخارج. أحب الركض ولكنه يجعلني متعبة جدًا. بعد ذلك لعبنا مباراة لمدة ١٥ دقيقة. كانت رائعة. فاز فريقي!

Help your child listen and read. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Listen and read.



Last week, our club went for a walk in the park. When our teacher pointed to an object, we took a photograph of it but we could only take one photo! So, we had to look carefully and decide where to stand. It was fun and it made me excited about the subject. When we compared our photos later, they were really different!

في الأسبوع الماضي، ذهب نادينا للنزهة في الحديقة. عندما أشار معلمنا إلى شيء ما، قمنا بالتقاط صورة له ولكن لم نتمكن من التقاط سوى صورة واحدة! لذلك، كان علينا أن ننظر بعناية ونقرر أين نقف. كان ذلك ممتعًا وجعلني متحمسًا للموضوع. وعندما قارنّا صورنا لاحقًا، كانت مختلفة حقًّا!

Nadia goes to music club where they sing songs and play instruments. They learn songs from all over the world. At the end of term, they have a concert for their parents.

Samer goes to cooking club. Every week, they make a meal from a different country. They take photos of their meals for a special recipe book. They can take the food home to eat with their families.

Malek goes to swimming club three times a week. It makes him healthy and strong. He sometimes does competitions, too.

Nader enjoys going to drama club. They learn plays and they act them for their parents. Sometimes they make special costumes for the actors to wear.

تذهب نادية إلى نادي الموسيقى حيث يغنون الأغاني ويعزفون على الآلات الموسيقية. يتعلمون الأغاني من جميع أنحاء العالم. وفي نهاية الفصل الدراسي، يقيمون حفلًا موسيقيًا لوالديهم.

يذهب سامر إلى نادي الطبخ. كل أسبوع يصنعون وجبة من بلد مختلف. يلتقطون صورًا لوجباتهم من أجل كتاب وصفات خاص. يمكنهم أخذ الطعام إلى المنزل لتناوله مع عائلاتهم.

يذهب مالك إلى نادي السباحة ثلاث مرات في الأسبوع. ويجعله بصحة جيدة وقويًا. وفي بعض الأحيان يقوم بالمسابقات أيضًا.

يستمتع نادر بالذهاب إلى نادي الدراما. يتعلمون المسرحيات ويمثلونها لوالديهم. في بعض الأحيان يصنعون أزياء خاصة ليرتديها الممثلون.



- Use (make / makes me) to talk about how you feel because of something or someone.

استخدم الفعل (make me) بمعنى (يجعلني) للحديث عن شعورك بسبب شخص أو شيء ما.

Subject فاعل **+ make(s) me + adjective** صفة

e.g. I have some friends. ⟶ I am happy.

My friends make me happy.

- You can also use make me with a verb to talk about how you feel because of an activity.
- Use the (verb + ing) as the subject.

يمكنك استخدام (make me) مع فعل للحديث عن شعورك بسبب نشاط ما.

ويكون (verb + ing) كفاعل للجملة

Subject فاعل **(v +ing) + make(s) me (feel) + adjective** صفة

e.g. I play tennis. ⟶ I get healthy.

Playing tennis makes me feel healthy.

Running makes me feel healthy.

Books make me feel relaxed.

- Art makes me feel relaxed.

Read the posters.

Art Club!

Everyone knows that art is good for your mind. It makes you relaxed and happy. Come to the art room at 1 pm on Tuesdays to learn to draw and paint.



يعلم الجميع أن الفن جيد لعقلك. يجعلك مسترخيًا وسعيدًا. تعال إلى غرفة الرسم في الواحدة مساء يوم الثلاثاء لكي تتعلم الرسم والتلوين.

Tennis is terrific!

Tennis is a great sport. It makes you healthy and happy! We have classes every Wednesday at 4 pm. Join our club to learn a new skill and meet new people!



التنس رياضة رائعة. تجعلك بصحة جيدة وسعيدًا! لدينا حصص كل أربعاء الساعة الرابعة مساء. انضم لنادينا لكي تتعلم مهارة جديد وتقابل أناسًا جددًا!

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Our club went for a walk in the ....
   a) school b) park c) forest d) desert
2. We took a .... of the object our teacher pointed to.
   a) painting b) camera c) photograph d) subject
3. It made me .... about the subject.
   a) excited b) sad c) happy d) angry
4. Our photos were really ....
   a) the same b) similar c) nice d) different

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

music- drama - costumes - swimming - healthy

Malek goes to 1).................... club three times a week. It makes him 2).................... and strong. Nader enjoys going to 3).................... club. They learn plays. Sometimes they make special 4).................... for the actors to wear.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Playing music for my parents .... me feel proud.
   a) make b) makes c) making d) to make
2. Cooking club always makes .... hungry
   a) me b) I c) his d) they
3. .... makes me healthy and strong
   a) Swimming b) Swim c) To swim d) Swim
4. Sad plays .... me unhapp
   a) make b) makes c) making d) to make
5. Running .... me healt
   a) make b) making c) makes d) to make

6. Reading books makes me .... relaxed.

a) felt b) feel c) feels d) will feel

7. .... cartoons makes us feel relaxed.

a) Watch b) Watches c) Watched d) Watching

8. Playing chess makes me feel ....

a) excited b) excitedly c) happily d) sadly

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. good - your - for - Art - mind - is - .

....

2. me - happy - Swimming - feel - makes - .

....

3. can - goals - shoot - Children - football - at - club - .

....

4. matches - The children - friendly - in - join - .

....

5 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Art club

Guiding words:

(good - mind - relaxed - paint - learn)

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson (4) GREEN CITY SCHOOL



Key vocabulary

Open Day	اليوم المفتوح	solar panels	ألواح شمسية
passionate	متحمس - شغوف	recycling	إعادة التدوير
green	نظيفة - صديقة للبيئة	demonstration	عرض توضيحي
principal	مدير المدرسة	eco-playground	ملعب صديق للبيئة



Extra vocabulary

environment	بيئة	nature trail	مسار طبيعي
schedule	جدول	chance	فرصة
presentation	عرض تقديمي	car park	موقف السيارات
tour	جولة	give advice	يقدم النصح
electricity	كهرباء	in charge of	مسئول عن
waste	نفايات	bike shed	سقيفة دراجات
climbing frame	إطار التسلق	renewable energy	طاقة متجددة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
find out	يكتشف	found out	found out
head to	يتجه إلى	headed to	headed to
sort	يفرز - يصنف	sorted	sorted
harm	يضر - يؤذي	harmed	harmed
persuade	يقنع	persuaded	persuaded
encourage	يشجع	encouraged	encouraged



Definitions

environmentally friendly	It doesn't harm the environment.	صديقة للبيئة
passionate	having strong feelings	متحمس / شغوف

Help your child identify these words. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (4)

principal — the person in charge of a school
مدير المدرسة

demonstration — when you show other people how to do or make something
عرض توضيحي

encourage — persuade someone to do something by giving them advice or support
يشجع

Eco-playground — a playground that does not harm the environment
ملعب صديق للبيئة

Listen and read.

Green City School Open Day

At Green City School, we are passionate about helping the environment. Come and find out why we are the greenest school in the city!

في مدرسة جرين سيتي ، نحن متحمسون لمساعدة البيئة. تعال واكتشف لماذا نحن أكثر مدرسة صديقة للبيئة في المدينة!

New students and their families are welcome to join us for our Open Day on 25th May.

الطلاب الجدد وأسرهم مدعوون للانضمام إلينا في يومنا المفتوح في ٢٥ مايو.

Our Green Library

Open Day schedule:

جدول اليوم المفتوح:

9 am — New students and families arrive at the school
Presentation by the principal

٩ صباحا: يصل الطلاب الجدد والعائلات إلى المدرسة
عرض يقدمه المدير

10 am — Tour of the school buildings
First, see our new Green Library. Why is it green? Because all its electricity comes from solar panels on the roof

Then, we head to the Recycling Room. This is where we can recycle paper, plastic, and other materials.
Watch a demonstration about how we sort the waste from our classrooms

١٠ صباحا: جولة في مباني المدرسة
أولا ، رؤية مكتبتنا الجديدة الصديقة للبيئة. لماذا هي صديقة للبيئة؟ لأن كل الكهرباء تأتي من الألواح الشمسية
السطح ثم نتوجه إلى غرفة إعادة التدوير. هذا هو المكان الذي يمكننا فيه إعادة تدوير الورق والبلاستيك والمواد الأخرى.
شاهد عرض توضيحي حول كيفية فرز النفايات من الفصول الدراسية

Help your child listen and read.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

After that, come and see our Eco-playground.
The climbing frame is made mostly with recycled materials. There is also a nature trail around the playground, where we can learn about plants, animals, and insects.



Our Eco-playground

بعد ذلك ، تعال وشاهد ملعبنا البيئي. يتكون إطار التسلق في الغالب من مواد معاد تدويرها. يوجد أيضا مسار طبيعي حول الملعب ، حيث يمكننا التعرف على النباتات والحيوانات والحشرات.

12 pm Enjoy a delicious lunch in our School Garden, where we grow our own flowers, fruit, and vegetables

١٢ ظهرًا استمتع بوجبة غداء لذيذة في حديقة مدرستنا ، حيث نزرع الزهور والفواكه والخضروات الخاصة بنا

1 pm Any questions? This is your chance to ask the Green School students and teachers! There is a small car park, but we encourage you to walk, cycle, or come by bus!

١ ظهرًا . أي أسئلة؟ هذه هي فرصتك لسؤال طلاب المدرسة الصديقة للبيئة والمعلمين! يوجد موقف سيارات صغير، لكننا نشجعك على المشي أو ركوب الدراجة أو القدوم بالحافلة!

Read the text. What is special about Green City School?

1. It has new school buildings. ( )
2. It is very environmentally friendly. ( )
3. It has a lot of green space. ( )

Answer the following questions.

1. What's happening on 25th May?

....

2. What's the Recycling Room?

....

3. What does "green" mean?

....

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Open Day is on 25th ....
   a) April b) May c) June d) November
2. New students and their families arrive at ....
   a) 11 am b) 1 pm c) 9 am d) 9 pm
3. Who gives the presentation? ....
   a) Students b) Teachers c) The principal d) The director
4. All the school electricity comes from ....
   a) lunar panels b) solar panels c) High Dam d) station

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. " .... " means environmentally friendly.
   a) Red b) Blue c) Green d) Black
2. The .... is in charge of a school.
   a) director b) principal c) chef d) teacher
3. We are .... about helping the environment.
   a) passionate b) tired c) bored d) interested
4. We can recycle ....
   a) water b) clothes c) plastic d) trees
5. We can learn about plants, animals, and insects at a ....
   a) theater b) zoo c) nature trail d) library
6. We can get electricity from .... on the roof.
   a) trees b) solar panels c) wood d) poles
7. You can watch a .... about how we sort the waste.
   a) hill b) demonstration c) store d) shop

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. are - the city - We - the greenest - in - school
....
2. encourage - We - to walk - you - cycle - or
....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

New students and their families are welcome to join us for our Open Day on 25th May.

Open Day schedule:

9 am New students and families arrive at the school
Presentation by the principal

10 am Tour of the school buildings
First, see our new Green Library.
Why is it green? Because all its electricity comes from solar panels on the roof
Then, we head to the Recycling Room. This is where we can recycle paper, plastic, and other materials. Watch a demonstration about how we sort the waste from our classrooms. After that, come and see our Eco-playground.
The climbing frame is made mostly with recycled materials.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The principal gives a ....
   - a) speech b) demonstration
   - c) presentation d) presents
2. "Eco-playground" doesn't harm the ....
   - a) school b) environment c) students d) library
3. The main idea of the text is about ....
   - a) open day b) library c) recycling d) principal

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Where does the school tour start? ....
5. What's the demonstration about? ....

5 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

How to make our school greener

Guiding words:

(solar panels - trees - recycle - bike shed - walk- sort waste)

Lesson (5) LANGUAGE

Key vocabulary

bridge	جسر - كوبري	repair	يصلح
collapse	ينهار	journey	رحلة
steep	شديد الانحدار	metal bridge	جسر معدني

Extra vocabulary

awake	مستيقظ	mountains	جبال
crash	تصادم - تحطم	sports center	مركز رياضي
eventually	في النهاية	way	طريق
square	ميدان	builders	عمال بناء
traffic	المرور	storm	عاصفة
sleepy	نعسان	surprise	دهشة / مفاجأة

Important expressions and prepositions

over the river	فوق النهر	arrive at + مكان	يصل إلى
get to the town	يصل المدينة	all over the country	في كل أنحاء البلد
stay at home	يبقى في البيت	smile at	يبتسم لـ
do work online	يقوم بالعمل على الإنترنت	a man in a yellow coat	رجل يرتدي معطف أصفر
get on the bus	يركب الحافلة	on the other side	على الجانب الآخر
walk up the hill	يصعد التل	yours faithfully	وتفضلوا بقبول فائق الاحترام

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
last	يدوم / يستمر	lasted	lasted
point	يشير	pointed	pointed
pick up	يلتقط	picked up	picked up
come up	تطلع / تشرق	came up	come up
drive	يقود	drove	driven
hear	يسمع	heard	heard

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Definitions

steep	something which is difficult to climb	شديد الانحدار
journey	when you travel to get to a place	رحلة
repair	to fix something	يصلح
collapse	to fall down suddenly	ينهار

Listen and read.

The bridge to school



The bridge after the storm

Lina lay awake, listening to the wind and rain. The storm lasted all night. Then, as the sun came up, she heard a crash. She ran to the window.

كانت لينا متيقظة وتستمع إلى الريح والمطر. استمرت العاصفة طوال الليل. ثم ، عندما طلعت الشمس، سمعت شيئًا يتحطم. ركضت إلى النافذة.

"What was that?" asked her sister, Sarah. Lina looked at the river near their house. "Oh no! she said. "The bridge has collapsed!" The village where Lina and Sarah lived was small, and had steep mountains all around it. The bridge over the river was the quickest way to get to the town, with the school, stores, doctors, and sports center.

سألت أختها سارة "ماذا كان ذلك؟". نظرت لينا إلى النهر بالقرب من منزلهم. قالت"أوه لا! . "لقد انهار الجسر!" كانت القرية التي تعيش فيها لينا وسارة صغيرة، وكانت الجبال شديدة الانحدار في كل مكان حولها. كان الجسر فوق النهر أسرع طريقة للوصول إلى المدينة ، التي بها المدرسة والمتاجر والأطباء، والمركز الرياضي.

They ran to the kitchen to see their parents. "I've just listened to the radio," said Mom. "They said that the storm would stop soon. Then we can see what has happened." Eventually, the rain stopped, and Lina and her family walked to the river. Other people were there too.

ركضوا إلى المطبخ لرؤية والديهم. قالت الأم:" لقد استمعت للتو إلى الراديو. لقد قالوا إن العاصفة ستتوقف قريبًا. وبعد ذلك يمكن أن نرى ما حدث." في النهاية، توقف المطر ، مشت لينا وأسرتها نحو النهر. وكان هناك ناس آخرون أيضًا.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Lesson (5)

Lina's dad pointed to the broken bridge. He said that they couldn't go to town, or the school. "What are we going to do?" asked Lina. They had to stay at home that day, and their teacher sent work for them to do online. The next morning, a school bus drove into the village square.

أشار والد لينا إلى الجسر المحطم، وقال إنهم لا يستطيعون الذهاب إلى المدينة أو المدرسة. سألت لينا "ماذا سنفعل؟" كان عليهم البقاء في المنزل في ذلك اليوم، وأرسلت لهم معلمتهم عملًا للقيام به عبر الإنترنت. في صباح اليوم التالي ، سارت حافلة مدرسية في ساحة القرية.

"Look, Lina," said Sarah. "The bus is here!" "The bus?" said Lina. "But it's such a long way by road!" "I know, but it's the only thing we can do," said Sarah, picking up her bag and running to the door.

قالت سارة: " انظري، يا لينا. الحافلة هنا!" قالت لينا "الحافلة؟ لكن هذا طريق طويل عن طريق البرا" قالت سارة "أنا أعلم، ولكن هذا هو الشيء الوحيد الذي يمكننا القيام به"، والتقطت حقيبتها وجرت نحو الباب.

As Lina got on the bus, she looked at the bridge. Seeing it broken made her sad. Their life would be different until someone repaired it. She enjoyed going across it in the mornings, and walking up the hill on the other side. She was often the first to arrive at school. Now she would be late!

عندما ركبت لينا الحافلة ، نظرت إلى الجسر. رؤيتها للجسر وهو محطم جعلها حزينة . سوف تكون حياتهم مختلفة حتى يقوم شخص ما بإصلاحه. كانت تستمتع بالذهاب عبر الجسر في الصباح، وصعود التل على الجانب الآخر. كانت في كثير من الأحيان أول من يصل إلى المدرسة. الآن سوف تتأخر!

The bus journey took two hours. It was hot, and the traffic moved slowly. Lina was sleepy and sad.

استغرقت رحلة الحافلة ساعتين. كن الجو حارًا ، وكانت حركة المرور بطيئة. كانت لينا تشعر بالنعاس وحزينة.

At school, Lina asked to use the computer. She wrote a letter about the storm and the broken bridge. When she got home, she took photos. Her teacher said that writing a letter for everyone to see was a great idea, because everybody should know about the bridge and try to help. She helped Lina send the letter and photos to newspapers and websites all over the country. The next day, Lina and her friends took the bus to school. To their surprise, when they came home, they saw engineers and builders at the river. They smiled at the children.

في المدرسة، طلبت لينا استخدام الكمبيوتر. كتبت رسالة عن العاصفة وتحطم الجسر. عندما وصلت إلى المنزل ، التقطت الصور. وقالت معلمتها إن كتابة رسالة للجميع ليشاهدوا كانت فكرة عظيمة ، لأن الجميع يجب أن يعرفوا عن الجسر ويحاولوا المساعدة. ساعدت المعلمة لينا في إرسال الرسالة والصور إلى الصحف والمواقع في جميع أنحاء البلاد. في اليوم التالي ، استقلت لينا وصديقاتها الحافلة إلى المدرسة. ومما أثار دهشتهم، عندما عادوا إلى المنزل، رأوا المهندسين وعمال البناء عند النهر. وابتسموا للأطفال.

"We heard about your letter!" said a man in a yellow coat. "We're building a new bridge, so you can get to school quickly." After a week, there was a new metal bridge. "Well done, Lina," said Sarah. "Your letter helped everybody!"

قال رجل يرتدي معطف أصفر: "سمعنا عن رسالتك! "نحن نبني جسرًا جديدًا ، لكي تتمكني من الوصول إلى المدرسة بسرعة." بعد أسبوع ، كان هناك جسر معدني جديد. قالت سارة: " أحسنتي يا لينا". "رسالتك ساعدت الجميع!"

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.



Reported Speech الكلام غير المباشر

Usage الاستخدام

- We use reported speech to report what someone said.

نستخدم الكلام المنقول (غير المباشر) لنقل ما قاله شخص ما.

Mom said , " I have just listened to the radio."

Mom said that she had just listened to the radio.

خطوات التحويل إلى غير المباشر:

1. We use the verb said to report someone's speech.

١- نستخدم الفعل (said) لنقل كلام الشخص. (إذا كان فعل القول said to يتحول إلى told).

2. We omit quotation marks, instead we use "that".

٢- نحذف علامات التنصيص " " ونستخدم (that) بدلًا منها، ويمكن عدم استخدامها.

3. We change the pronouns according to the speaker and the addressee.

٣- نغير الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمخاطب.

I → he / she		my → his / her	
me → him / her		we → they	

4. We change the verb tense from present to past.

٤- نغير زمن الفعل من المضارع إلى الماضي.

Examples:

Laila said, "The bridge has collapsed."
→ Laila said that the bridge had collapsed.

He said, "We heard about your letter."
→ He said that they had heard about my letter.

 Help your child learn reported speech. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم الكلام غير المباشر.

Study the examples.

Direct speech	Reported speech
Present Simple	Past Simple
He said, "I walk with my friends."	He said that he walked with his friends.
Present Continuous	Past Continuous
She said, "I'm going to school."	She said that she was going to school.
Present Perfect	Past Perfect
He said, "I have eaten pizza."	He said that he had eaten pizza.
(Modals) will - can - may	would - could - might
Ola said, "I can swim."	Ola said that she could swim.



Practice

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Lina said that the bus .... here!
   a) is b) was c) were d) are
2. Sara .... that my letter helped everybody.
   a) say b) ask c) said d) told
3. She said it was the only thing they .... do.
   a) can b) could c) will d) has
4. He said .... was going to school.
   a) he b) them c) us d) me

2 Read and complete with the correct form.

1. Lina said she .... (hear) a crash.
2. They said they .... (are) building a new bridge.
3. He .... (say) that he watched the match on TV.
4. Mona said that she .... (can) help.

نص الاستماع في نهاية

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Lina got on a ....
   a) train b) bus c) car d) plane
2. The bridge was .... and that made her sad.
   a) broken b) new c) metal d) high
3. Their life would be .... until someone repaired the bridge.
   a) happy b) same c) different d) difficult
4. She was often the .... to arrive at school.
   a) late b) second c) first d) early

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Something that is difficult to climb is ....
   a) high b) steep c) deep d) long
2. If you fix something, you .... it.
   a) break b) paint c) recycle d) repair
3. The old building .... It fell down suddenly.
   a) collapsed b) crossed c) jumped d) clapped
4. When you travel, you go on a ....
   a) river b) journey c) lake d) picnic
5. My camera is broken. I need someone to .... it.
   a) make b) do c) repair d) paint
6. We couldn't climb the mountain because it was ....
   a) long b) short c) steep d) stair
7. There was a bridge .... the river.
   a) over b) under c) on d) in
8. Lina got .... the bus and went to school.
   a) at b) on c) of d) over
9. We can do our work ....
   a) online b) in line c) at line d) by line
10. Lina .... that she heard a crash.
    a) say b) tell c) asked d) said
11. She said the bridge .... collapsed.
    a) has b) had c) have d) is

12. Mom said she .... just listened to the radio.
a) has   b) have   c) had   d) are

13. The teacher said he .... on a journey.
a) go   b) goes   c) is going   d) was going

14. Lina said she .... late for school.
a) is   b) would be   c) will be   d) were

15. Omar said that he was walking with .... friends.
a) I   b) he   c) him   d) his

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Lina lay awake, listening to the wind and rain. The storm lasted all night. Then, as the sun came up, she heard a crash. She ran to the window. "What was that?" asked her sister, Sarah. Lina looked at the river near their house. "Oh no! she said. "The bridge has collapsed!" The village where Lina and Sarah lived was small, and had steep mountains all around it. The bridge over the river was the quickest way to get to the town, with the school, stores, doctors, and sports center. They ran to the kitchen to see their parents. "I've just listened to the radio," said Mom. "They said that the storm would stop soon. Then we can see what has happened." Eventually, the rain stopped, and Lina and her family walked to the river. Other people were there too. Lina's dad pointed to the broken bridge. He said that they couldn't go to town, or the school.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The underlined word "collapsed" means ....
a) built   b) fell down   c) flew up   d) broke down

2. Mom was listening to the ....
a) TV   b) radio   c) computer   d) cell phone

3. The underlined pronoun "He" refers to ....
a) Lina   b) Mom   c) Lina's dad   d) bridge

B) Answer the following questions.

4. How long did the storm last? ....

5. What was the effect of the broken bridge? ....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (6) WRITING AN OPINION

Vocabulary

opinion	رأي	education	تعليم
aged	يبلغ من العمر	title	عنوان
experiences	خبرات حياتية	introduction	مقدمة
real life	الحياة الواقعية	main ideas	الأفكار الرئيسية
important	هام - مهم	conclusion	خاتمة



Important expressions and prepositions

learn about	يتعلم عن	do a project	يقوم بمشروع
(be) back	يعود	on a trip	في رحلة

Look and read.

Title → **Are school trips important?** *by Nesma, aged 12*



Schoolchildren at the Egyptian Museum, Cairo

introduction → In my opinion, school trips are exciting learning experiences.

Main ideas → First of all, we can learn a lot by visiting new places. When we learn about something in a classroom and then see it in real life, we understand it better.

In addition, school trips are often more interesting than only reading about things in books or watching videos.

Finally, we can continue learning when we are back in the classroom after the school trip. We can do a project about what we saw on the trip.

Conclusion → To sum up, school trips are a very important part of our education. I think we should try to go on one school trip every year.

Lesson (6)

Listen and read the opinion text.

Is studying the past important?

I believe that studying the past helps us understand the present. **In my opinion**, it is important that we understand how past events have created the present.

First of all, we can learn a lot by studying the past. History helps us understand our society and other cultures because we learn about life in the past, important artists, scientists, and politicians. **In addition**, we learn about how and why life has changed over the years.

أعتقد أن دراسة الماضي تساعدنا على فهم الحاضر. في رأيي، من المهم أن نفهم كيف أن أحداث الماضي أوجدت الحاضر.
بداية، يمكننا أن نتعلم الكثير من خلال دراسة الماضي. يساعدنا التاريخ على فهم مجتمعنا والثقافات الأخرى لأننا نتعلم عن الحياة في الماضي، وعن الفنانين والعلماء والسياسيين المهمين. بالإضافة إلى ذلك، نتعلم كيف ولماذا تغيرت الحياة على مر السنين.

Some people say that the present is more interesting that the past, but I don't agree. History is interesting and exciting because it is full of great stories and interesting people. **Finally**, history helps us learn from past mistakes so that we don't repeat the same mistakes in the future.

يقول بعض الناس أن الحاضر أكثر إثارة للاهتمام من الماضي، لكنني لا أتفق مع ذلك. التاريخ مثير للاهتمام وشيق لأنه مليء بالقصص العظيمة والأشخاص المثيرين للاهتمام. وأخيرًا، يساعدنا التاريخ على التعلم من أخطاء الماضي حتى لا نكرر نفس الأخطاء في المستقبل.

In conclusion, I think that studding history is an important part of our education. History helps us learn from the past and it helps us understand why and how things change.

وفي الختام، أعتقد أن دراسة التاريخ جزء مهم من تعليمنا. يساعدنا التاريخ على التعلم من الماضي ويساعدنا على فهم لماذا وكيف تتغير الأشياء.

Help your child listen and read the opinion text.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ نص الرأي.

How to write about your opinion.

كيف تكتب عن رأيك.

To give an opinion

لكي تقدم رأيًا

❶ Start the introduction with: ابدأ المقدمة بـ :

- In my opinion, ... في رأيي،....
- I believe that .... أعتقد أن ....

❷ You need to give reasons. أنت بحاجة لتقديم أسباب.

- In the main ideas paragraphs, give different reasons. في فقرات الأفكار الرئيسية قدم أسبابًا مختلفة.
- Use these phrases: استخدم هذه العبارات:

First of all, أولًا،
In addition, بالإضافة إلى ذلك،
Finally, وأخيرًا،

- Use commas after these adverb phrases. استخدم فاصلة بعد العبارات الظرفية السابقة.

❸ Start the conclusion with.... ابدأ الخاتمة ......

- To sum up, ... وفي الختام
- In conclusion .....

Read and learn.

Is learning music important?

In my opinion, all children should learn music at school. First of all, I think playing music is a good way to relax. In addition, learning music is a good way to be creative and use different parts of your brain. Finally, learning an instrument teaches us good habits. We learn that we have to practice to get great results!

To sum up, I think that we should learn more music in school.

 Help your child write about his / her opinion. ساعد طفلك أن يكتب...

Lesson (6)

Write an opinion text of (60 - 90) words about:

ICT is the most useful subject

- Use the opinion phrases.

In my opinion, ...

....

....

First of all ....

....

....

In addition, ...

....

....

Finally, ...

....

....

To sum up, ...

....

....

Lesson (7)

STORY: THE DOCTOR COMES TO SCHOOL



Key vocabulary

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
palace	قصر	papyrus	ورق البردي
scribe	كاتب	scripts	مخطوطات
court	بلاط (ملكي)	sore	متورم
confused	مرتبك / متحير	poisonous	سام
tablet	لوح (للكتابة)	herbs	أعشاب
amazed	مندهش	rolls	لفافات

Important expressions and prepositions

Expression	Meaning	Expression	Meaning
get up	ينهض	go into	يدخل
the pharaoh's court	بلاط الفرعون	jump up	يقفز
push away	يدفع بعيدًا	pick up	يلتقط
take out of	يُخرج من	put into	يضع داخل
pour onto	يصب على	pack up	يحزم (الأشياء)

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

Present		Past	P.P
walk	يمشي	walked	walked
happen	يحدث	happened	happened
listen	يستمع	listened	listened
jump	يقفز	jumped	jumped
shout	يصيح	shouted	shouted
try	يحاول	tried	tried
push	يدفع	pushed	pushed
scream	يصرخ	screamed	screamed

Help your child identify these words. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Irregular verbs

Present	Past	P.P
get up	ينهض got up	got up
leave	يغادر left	left
spend	يقضي spent	spent
know	يعرف knew	known
bite	يعض bit	bitten
take	يأخذ took	taken
shake	يهز shook	shaken
hurt	يؤلم hurt	hurt

Definitions

tablet	in schools in Ancient Egypt, young children wrote on this.	لوح (لكتابة)
papyrus	a type of paper made from plants called reeds	ورق البردي
scribe	a person who wrote about everything that happened in the pharaoh's court	كاتب
court	a place where the pharaoh made important decisions	بلاط (ملك)
herbs	plants that people used in food or medicine	أعشاب
script	a piece of paper with information written on it	مخطوطة

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

Nebsin didn't want to get up. The sun was bright, but his bed was comfortable. "Nebsin!" Dad called. "Time for school!" Nebsin went into the kitchen. His mom was making breakfast, and his brother was playing.

لم يرغب نيبسين في النهوض. كانت الشمس مشرقة ، لكن سريره كان مريحا. نادى عليه أبوه. "حان وقت المدرسة!" ذهب نيبسين إلى المطبخ. كانت والدته تحضر الإفطار ، وكان شقيقه يلعب.

"Why do I have to go to school?" he said. "Babu plays all day. His life is easy!" "Babu will start school next year, when he is seven," said his mom. "I'm going to the palace, Nebsin," said Dad. "Let's walk together." They left the house. His father was a scribe, who spent all day writing about everything that happened in the pharaoh's court. "Did you like school, Dad?" asked Nebsin. "Of course! I wanted to learn to read and write, like you are doing." "Why did you want to be a scribe?" "My father was a scribe, and his father was a scribe. It's an important job. You will know what you want to be one day."

قال نيبسين "لماذا يجب أن أذهب إلى المدرسة؟ بابو يلعب طوال اليوم. حياته سهلةً! قالت والدته: " سيبدأ بابو الدراسة العام المقبل ، عندما يكون في السابعة من عمره". قال أبي: " أنا ذاهب إلى القصر ، يا نيبسين دعنا نسير معًا. غادروا المنزل. كان والده كاتبًا ، يقضي طوال اليوم يكتب كل ما حدث في بلاط الفرعون. سأل نيبسين "هل تحبّ المدرسة، يا أبي؟". "بالطبع! أردت أن أتعلم القراءة والكتابة ، كما تفعل". سأله نيبسين "لماذا أردت أن تكون كاتبًا؟" قال الأب "كان والدي كاتبًا ، وكان والده كاتبًا. إنها وظيفة مهمة. سوف تعرف ما تريد أن تكون يومًا ما."

Nebsin was confused. He didn't know yet what job he wanted to do in the future. Later that morning, Nebsin was sitting on the floor, listening to the teacher and writing on his wooden tablet. Suddenly, a boy jumped up and started shouting. The teacher was shocked. "Sit down!" he said. "There's a snake!" somebody shouted.

كان نيبسين متحيرًا. لم يكن يعرف بعد الوظيفة التي يريد القيام بها في المستقبل. في وقت لاحق من ذلك الصباح ، كان نيبسين جالسًا على الأرض، يستمع إلى المعلم ويكتب على لوحه الخشبي. فجأة ، قفز صبي وبدأ في الصياح. صُدِم المعلم، وقال "اجلس!". صرخ أحدهم "هناك ثعبان!".

Everyone looked. A small, brown snake was moving across the classroom floor. The boy tried to push the snake away, but it bit his hand and he screamed. "Quick, Nebsin!" the teacher said. "Get the doctor. She'll know what to do." Nebsin and another boy ran to the doctor's building. She was sitting at a desk with rolls of papyrus on it. When they ran in, she was reading and writing notes. "Help, please! A snake bit our friend!" shouted Nebsin.

نظر الجميع. كان ثعبان بني صغير يتحرك عبر أرضية الفصل. حاول الصبي دفع الثعبان بعيدًا ، لكنه عض يده وصرخ قال المعلمُ "بسرعة ، يا نيبسين! أحضر الطبيبة. إنها ستعرف ما يجب القيام به" ركض نبسين وصبي آخر إلى مبنى الطبيبة. كانت جالسة على مكتب عليه لفائف من ورق البردي. عندما دخلوا مسرعين، كانت تقرأ وتكتب الملاحظات. صاح نيبسين "ساعدينا، من فضلك! عض ثعبان صديقنا!".

Lesson (7)

The doctor picked up her bag and some papyrus scripts. They ran to the school, where the boy was crying. His hand was red and sore. "Will he be OK, Doctor?" asked the teacher. "What kind of snake was it?" she asked, studying the boy's hand. "It was small, and brown, with dark circles," said Nebsin. The doctor looked at one of her papyrus rolls and said, "Good. That snake isn't poisonous."

التقطت الطبيبة حقيبتها وبعض مخطوطات البردي. ركضوا إلى المدرسة، حيث كان الصبي يبكي. كانت يده حمراء ومتورمة. سأل المعلم "هل سيكون على ما يرام، أيتها الطبيبة؟". سألت وهي تفحص يد الصبي "أي نوع من الثعابين كان؟". قال نيبسين: "كان صغيرًا، وبُنيًا، وذو دوائر داكنة". نظرت الطبيبة إلى إحدى لفائف ورق البردي وقالت: "جيد. هذا الثعبان ليس سامًا."

She took some herbs out of her bag, put them into a bottle of oil, and shook it. She poured this onto a cloth. "Keep this on the bite," the doctor said. "It will hurt for a while, but you won't get sick." Nebsin was amazed. He watched as the doctor packed up her papyrus scripts and her bag. "Excuse me. How did you learn to be a doctor?" he asked. "It takes a long time!" said the doctor. "If you want to be a doctor, you should work hard here at school!"

أخرجت بعض الأعشاب من حقيبتها، ووضعتها في زجاجة زيت، ورجتها. سكبت هذا على قطعة قماش. قالت الطبيبة: "احتفظ بهذا على اللدغة إنها سوف تؤلم لفترة من الوقت، لكنك لن تمرض." كان نيبسين مندهشًا. شاهد الطبيبة وهي تحزم مخطوطاتها البردية وحقيبتها سألها نيبسين: "عفوًا، كيف تعلمتي أن تكوني طبيبة؟". قالت الطبيبة "يستغرق ذلك وقتًا طويلًا! إذا كنت تريد أن تصبح طبيبًا، يجب أن تعمل بجد هنا في المدرسة!"



Answer the following questions.

1. What does the snake look like?

....

2. What does the doctor put on the bite?

....

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.**

1. "There's a .... !" somebody shouted.
   a) crocodile b) lizard c) snake d) bear
2. A small .... snake was moving.
   a) yellow b) black c) orange d) brown
3. The boy tried to push the snake ....
   a) down b) away c) up d) across
4. The snake bit the boy's ....
   a) hand b) leg c) finger d) toe

2 **Read and complete the text with the words from the box.**

scribe - school - palace - older - busy

I'm Nebsin's younger brother Babu. When I'm 1)........................, I'd like to be a 2)........................ like my father. He goes to the Pharaoh's 3)........................ every day. It's a very interesting job because the palace is a 4)........................ place and a lot happens there.

3 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.**

1. The pharaoh lives in a ....
   a) home b) house c) palace d) tent
2. A scribe wrote everything that happened in the pharaoh's ....
   a) class b) school c) hospital d) court
3. Children in Ancient Egypt wrote on a wooden ....
   a) tablet b) wall c) brick d) paper
4. Some snakes are ....
   a) good b) safe c) poisonous d) beautiful

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (7)

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. dad - job - Nebsin's - important - has - an - .

....

2. like - snake - What - look - does - the - ?

....

3. worked - the Pharaoh's - A scribe - at - palace - .

....

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Nebsin's father was a scribe who worked at the Pharaoh's palace. A scribe was someone who wrote about everything that happened in the Pharaoh's court. Nebsin's father and his grandfather were scribes, too. Nebsin wasn't sure if he wanted to be a scribe when he grew up. That day, while Nebsin was in class and writing on his tablet, a snake bit a boy's hand. Nebsin quickly ran to the doctor's building. The doctor picked up her bag and some scripts, and they both ran back to the school. The boy was crying. "What kind of snake was it?" the doctor asked. "It was small and brown with dark circles," said Nebsin. "Good," said the doctor. "That snake isn't dangerous." The doctor put some herbs into a bottle of oil. She put the liquid onto the snake bite. "It will hurt for a while," she said. "But the bite won't make you ill."

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A .... worked at the Pharaoh's palace.
   a) teacher b) scribe c) nurse d) pilot
2. Students in the past wrote on ....
   a) paper b) laptops c) tablets d) boards
3. The snake wasn't ....
   a) little b) poisonous c) small d) brown

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What did a scribe do? ....
5. What did the doctor use to help the boy? ....

Writing Corner

Classrooms on the roof

In Egypt, some classes have their lessons in a garden on the roof of the school! The Shagara at School project designs gardens and green roofs for schools in Egypt. Green roofs are gardens on the top of a building. They bring nature into the city. They also clean and cool the air. This means that they are great for the environment. The project teaches students and teachers how to plant a roof garden. They learn about which plants grow well in the hot, dry weather.

The importance of school trips

In my opinion, school trips are exciting learning experiences. First of all, we can learn a lot by visiting new places. When we learn about something in a classroom and then see it in real life, we understand it better.

In addition, school trips are often more interesting than only reading about things in books or watching videos. Finally, we can continue learning when we are back in the classroom after the school trip. We can do a project about what we saw on the trip. To sum up, school trips are a very important part of our education. I think we should try to go on one school trip every year.

The importance of learning music

In my opinion, music is very interesting and relaxing.

First of all, all children should learn music at school. I think playing music is a good way to relax. In addition, learning music is a good way to be creative and use different parts of your brain. Finally, learning an instrument teaches us good habits. We learn that we have to practice to get great results!

To sum up, I think that we should learn more music at school.

Help your child write paragraphs.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب فقرات.

Review on Unit (3)

School

math	رياضيات	boarding school	مدرسة داخلية
break	فسحة	cafeteria	كافيتريا
demonstration	عرض توضيحي	reindeer	حيوان الرنة (الأيل)
flexible	مَرن	green roofs	أسطح خضراء
timetable	جدول	ICT	تكنولوجيا المعلومات والاتصالات
uniform	زي موحد	mobile	متنقل / متحرك
neat	أنيق	nomadic	بدوي / رحال
sleds	زلاجات	subjects	مواد دراسية

Stories

bite	يعض	challenge	تحدي
collapse	ينهار	court	بلاط (ملكي)
herbs	أعشاب	journey	رحلة
palace	قصر	papyrus	ورق البردي
poisonous	سام	scream	يصرخ
scribe	كاتب	scripts	مخطوطات
shook	هز - رج	tablet	لوح كتابة

Language

Adverbs of frequency

always دائمًا	usually عادةً	often غالبًا
sometimes أحيانًا	never أبدًا	

تأتي ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسي.

e.g. She often walks to school.

تأتي ظروف التكرار بعد (Verb to be).

e.g. I am never late for school.

نستخدم (How often) للسؤال عن ظروف التكرار.

e.g. How often do you play tennis?

I sometimes play tennis.

Help your child revise unit (3).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الثالثة.

Reported Speech الكلام غير المباشر

- We use reported speech to report what someone said.

نستخدم الكلام المنقول (غير المباشر) لنقل ما قاله شخص ما.

Mom said , " I have just listened to the radio."

Mom said that she had just listened to the radio.

١) نستخدم الفعل (said) لنقل كلام الشخص.
٢) نحذف علامات التنصيص " " ونستخدم (that) بدلًا منها، ويمكن عدم استخدامها.
٣) نغير الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمخاطب.

I → he / she
me → him / her
my → his / her
we → they

٤) نغير زمن الفعل من المضارع إلى الماضي.

Examples:

Laila said, "The bridge has collapsed."
Laila said that the bridge had collapsed.
He said, "We heard about your letter."
He said that they had heard about my letter.

Direct speech	Reported speech
Present Simple	Past Simple
He said, "I walk with my friends."	He said that he walked with his friends.
Present Continuous	Past Continuous
She said, "I'm going to school."	She said that she was going to school.
Present Perfect	Past Perfect
He said, "I have eaten pizza."	He said that he had eaten pizza.
(Modals) will - can - may	would - could - might
Ola said, "I can swim."	Ola said that she could swim.

Dictation on Unit (3)

Lesson (1)

زلاجات	....	أسطح خضراء	....
مرن	....	بدوي - رُحّل	....
مدرسة داخلية	....	متنقل - متحرك	....

Lesson (2)

أنيق	....	زيّ موحد	....
تكنولوجيا المعلومات والاتصالات	....	كافيتيريا	....
جاف	....	يلتقط	....

Lesson (3)

نادي الطهي	....	نادي السباحة	....
نادي كرة القدم	....	نادي الموسيقى	....
مسرحيات حزينة	....	ينضم إلى	....

Lesson (4)

ألواح شمسية	....	اليوم المفتوح	....
ملعب صديق للبيئة	....	عرض توضيحي	....
متحمس - شغوف	....	مدير المدرسة	....

Lesson (5)

يصلح	....	جسر - كوبري	....
رحلة	....	ينهار	....
جسر معلق	....	شديد الانحدار	....

Lesson (6)

خاتمة	....	رأي	....
خبرات حياتية	....	عنوان	....
الحياة الواقعية	....	مقدمة	....

Lesson (7)

متورم	....	قصر	....
مرتبك - متحير	....	لقافات	....
سام	....	بلاط (ملكي)	....

Help your child dictate these words. ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Activities on Unit (3)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Lilly is from ....
   a) France b) America c) Egypt d) Germany
2. She started school when she was ....
   a) five b) six c) seven d) eight
3. There always lots of .... in the classroom.
   a) birds b) toys c) bags d) books
4. She likes using ....
   a) cameras b) mobiles c) computers d) tablets

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

lunch - neat - cafeteria - dirty - uniform

We go to school from Monday to Friday. I don't have to wear a school 1) ...., but my clothes and shoes have to be 2) .... School starts at 8 am and finishes at 3 pm. I often walk to school when it's dry and sunny. I sometimes get the bus with my friends. We have an hour for lunch, and I usually bring 3) .... from home. I eat in the 4) ...., or outside in summer.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

The Shagara at School project teaches students and teachers how to plant a roof garden. They learn about which plants grow well in the hot, dry weather. In 2017, classes at one school started going to their green roofs for lessons. People at the project thought this was an amazing idea! In 2019, they built their first classroom on the roof. The desks are in the shade, but there are no walls. Students and teachers have space and can see the flowers and plants. The Shagara at School Project says roof gardens can help students in many city schools. Green outdoor places make us calm and healthy – and that is great for learning.

Activities On Unit (3)

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The project teaches students and ....
   a) vets b) teachers c) pilots d) divers
2. They learn about which plants grow well in the ...., dry weather.
   a) cold b) cool c) hot d) cloudy
3. The project aims to plant ....
   a) school gardens b) roof gardens
   c) trees d) flowers

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What makes us calm and healthy?

....

5. Where do students sit?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write (YES) or (NO).

1. Asser and Mayar went to their grandma's house.
2. Asser was angry about the concert.
3. Asser wanted his parents to hear him sing and play football.
4. Asser practiced his song a lot.

B Answer the following questions.

1. Who invited Asser to go to the park?

....

2. How was the shovel?

....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I don't have a bike. I .... cycle to school.
   a) always b) often c) never d) sometimes
2. My friends make me ....
   a) happily b) calmly c) happy d) noisily
3. Running makes me .... healthy.
   a) feel b) feels c) felt d) feeling
4. Lina said .... the bridge had collapsed.
   a) this b) these c) that d) those
5. They said they .... a new bridge.
   a) build b) builds c) were building d) will build
6. .... do you go to school? - Every day.
   a) Where b) How often c) How many d) Who

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Lina - What - did - hear - ?

....

2. plays - unhappy - Sad - make me - .

....

3. learn - We - a lot - can - visiting - by - places - new - .

....

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Tennis

Guiding words:

(sport - great - healthy - classes - club)

....

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Unit 4

We can make a difference!

Learning together!

In this unit, the students will ...

- describe himself and his friends.
- understand and use reported questions.
- listen to and give opinions.
- understand and use noun suffixes.
- understand and use the superlative form of adjectives.
- read and understand a play.
- take part in a play.
- write a detailed personal profile.
- read and understand a story.

Lesson (1) WHY WE'RE ALL SPECIAL

Key vocabulary


braces
دعائم تقويم الأسنان


glasses
نظارات


hearing aid
جهاز تقوية السمع


curly hair
شعر مجعد


wheelchair
كرسي متحرك


straight hair
شعر ناعم

Extra vocabulary

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
special	مميز	mean = unkind	قاس / غير لطيف
different	مختلف	actually	في الواقع
the same	متشابهين / نفس الشيء	boring	ممل
else	آخر	drama	التمثيل
language classes	حصص اللغات	creative	مبدع
sporty	رياضي		

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Meaning	Past	P.P
agree	يوافق	agreed	agreed
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	imagined
wear	يرتدي - يضع	wore	worn
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (1)

Important expressions and prepositions

different to each other	مختلفين عن بعضنا	a bit boring	ممل قليلاً
wear braces	يضع دعائم تقويم الأسنان	look after	يعتني بـ
help with + noun	يساعد في	unkind to	قاسي مع
the best at + noun / v-ing	الأفضل في	the other day	بالأمس

Read and learn

Aid	Used
glasses	because he can't see well
braces	to help her teeth get straight
wheelchair	because she can't walk well
hearing aid	because she has problems with hearing

Listen and read.

Why we're all special by Reem


Mrs Mona teaching our class

Today, our teacher, Mrs Mona, asked us, "How are we different to each other?" That's an easy question to answer! Asser is very tall. He's taller than everyone else in the class. I'm very short. I have green eyes and Asser has brown eyes. Seleem's hair is curly, but Waleed's hair is very straight, and he wears glasses. Injy wears braces to help her teeth get straight. Amal uses a wheelchair because she cannot walk well. Amina has a hearing aid because she has problems hearing.

اليوم، معلمتنا، السيدة منى، سألتنا، " كيف نحن مختلفون عن بعضنا البعض؟ " هذا سؤال سهل الإجابة عنه! آسر طويل جدا. إنه أطول من أي شخص آخر في الفصل. أنا قصيرة جدا. لدي عيون خضراء وآسر لديه عيون بنية. شعر سليم مجعد ، لكن شعر وليد ناعم جدا، وهو يرتدي نظارة. تضع إنجي دعامات لمساعدة أسنانها على الاستقامة. تستخدم أمل كرسيًا متحركًا لأنها لا تستطيع المشي جيدًا. أمينة لديها جهاز السمع لأنها تعاني من مشاكل في السمع.

We have different families, too – I have three sisters, but my best friend Amal has two brothers! My friend Dalia loves sports, but I prefer language classes.

لدينا عائلات مختلفة أيضا . لدي ثلاث أخوات ، لكن أفضل صديقة لي أمل لديها أخوان! صديقتي داليا تحب الرياضة ، لكني أفضل دروس اللغات.

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Then, Mrs Mona asked us to tell our friends about something that makes them special. I told Amal I love her curly hair and the way she helps me with math – she's the best at math in the class! And Amal told me she loves the way I make her laugh when she's feeling a bit sad. Mrs Mona said, "Imagine a world where we're all the same. What would it be like?" "Actually," said Sherif, "I think it would be a bit boring." "Yes," said Sally, "it would be really boring."

ثم طلبت منا السيدة منى أن نخبر أصدقائنا عن شيء يجعلهم مميزين. أخبرت أمل أنني أحب شعرها المجعد والطريقة التي تساعدني بها في الرياضيات - إنها الأفضل في الرياضيات في الفصل! وأخبرتني أمل أنها تحب الطريقة التي أضحكها بها عندما تشعر بالحزن قليلاً. " قالت السيدة منى، " تخيلوا عالمًا حيث نحن جميعًا متشابهون. ماذا سيكون شكله؟" قال شريف: "في الواقع ، أعتقد أنه سيكون مملًا بعض الشيء. قالت سالي: "نعم ، سيكون الأمر مملًا حقًا."

"And imagine if everyone was good at the same things?" said Mrs Mona. "Well, then it wouldn't be very exciting," I said. "It's good that everyone is different," said Mrs Mona. "We don't look the same because our families are different. Some of us are tall, some short, some have curly hair, and some have straight hair. Some of us have two brothers and sisters, and others have three. Some of us are good at music, and others are good at sports." Everyone agreed.

قالت السيدة منى "وتخيلوا لو كان الجميع جيدين في نفس الأشياء؟". قلت:" حسنًا ، لن يكون الأمر مثيرًا للغاية". قالت السيدة منى: "من الجيد أن يكون الجميع مختلفين. نحن لا نبدو متشابهين لأن عائلاتنا مختلفة. البعض منا طويل القامة ، والبعض قصير ، والبعض لديه شعر مجعد ، والبعض لديه شعر ناعم. البعض منا لديه اثنان من الأخوة أو الأخوات، والبعض الآخر لديه ثلاثة. البعض منا جيد في الموسيقى، والبعض الآخر جيد في الرياضة." وافق الجميع.

"The important thing is that we look after each other in our classroom. People shouldn't be unkind to someone because they're different. Our school is for everyone – we are all equally important," said Mrs Mona. "But what should we do if we see someone being mean at school?" asked Injy. "I saw someone being unkind to Tarek the other day because he forgot his glasses, and so he couldn't see well." "You should always come and see me, or another teacher," said Mrs Mona. "Here at school we should all help each other."

قالت السيدة منى: "الشيء المهم هو أننا نعتني ببعضنا البعض في فصلنا الدراسي. لا ينبغي أن يكون الناس قاسيين مع شخص ما لأنه مختلف. المدرسة للجميع – نحن جميعًا على نفس القدر من الأهمية". سألت إنجي "ولكن ماذا يجب أن نفعل إذا رأينا شخصًا قاسيًا في المدرسة؟ رأيت شخصًا غير لطيف مع طارق أول أمس لأنه نسي نظارته ، ولذلك لم يستطع أن يرى جيدًا." قالت السيدة منى: "يجب أن تأتي دائمًا وتخبريني أو تخبري مدرسًا آخر. هنا في المدرسة يجب أن نساعد بعضنا البعض."

Lesson (1)

Read again and write T (True) or F (False). Correct the false sentences in your notebook

1. Reem told her friend Amal that she loves making her laugh. ☐
2. The students said that the world would be fun if we were all the same. ☐
3. Injy asked about what to do if someone is unkind. ☐
4. Mrs Mona said that if someone is unkind, the students shouldn't tell her. ☐

Read the paragraph and write the children's names.



These are my friends at school. Shady is tall and wears glasses. He's very creative and likes drawing. Laila is very kind – she helps everybody. She has straight hair. She can't hear very well, so she wears a hearing aid. Amira loves drama and has curly dark hair. She also loves reading and always has books in her hands. Hesham is very sporty, and he's in the wheelchair basketball team. Seleem is great at math. He has short hair and wears braces.

هؤلاء أصدقائي في المدرسة. شادي طويل القامة ويرتدي نظارات. إنه مبدع جدًا ويحب الرسم. ليلى لطيفة جدًا - إنها تساعد الجميع. لديها شعر ناعم. لا تستطيع أن تسمع جيدًا ، لذا فهي ترتدي جهاز تقوية السمع. أميرة تحب الدراما ولها شعر داكن مجعد. كما أنها تحب القراءة ولديها دائمًا كتب في يديها. هشام رياضي للغاية [illegible] رائع في [illegible] لديه شعر قصير ويرتدي دعائم تقويم الأسنان.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Asser is very ....

a) short b) long c) tall d) old

2. Seleem has .... hair.

a) straight b) long c) curly d) black

3. .... wears glasses.

a) Asser b) Waleed c) Seleem d) Huda

4. .... help teeth get straight.

a) Glasses b) Wheelchair c) Braces d) Hearing aids

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

same - Imagine - curly - straight - glasses

We are all different. It's a good thing. 1).................... if everyone was good at the 2).................... things. Some of us have 3).................... hair and some have straight hair. My friend Omar is tall and wears 4).................... . He's very creative and likes drawing.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. is - and - glasses - wears - Shady - tall - .

....

2. wears - teeth - braces - Injy - help - to - her - straight - get - .

....

3. are - different - each - How - we - other - to - ?

....

4. great - Tarek - playing - is - at - the guitar - .

....

5. a wheelchair - Reem - uses - because - can't - well - walk - she - .

....

Lesson (1)

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

All people are different, but they are all important. Some people are short and some are tall. My friend Amal uses a wheelchair because she can't walk well. Amina has a hearing aid because she has problems with hearing. People shouldn't be unkind to someone because they're different. Our school is for everyone – we are all equally important," said Mrs Mona. "But what should we do if we see someone being mean at school?" asked Injy. "I saw someone being unkind to Tarek the other day because he forgot his glasses, and so he couldn't see well." "You should always come and tell me, or another teacher," said Mrs Mona. "Here at school we should all help each other."

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "mean" means ....
   a) kind b) good c) unkind d) nice
2. Amal uses a .... because she can't walk.
   a) car b) wheelchair c) bike d) wheel
3. People who have problems with hearing always use a ....
   a) wheelchair b) braces c) glasses d) hearing aid

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What happened when Tarek forgot his glasses?

....

5. What should you do when you see someone unkind to others?

....

5 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Describe your friends

Guiding words:

(school - tall - braces - curly - wheelchair - reading - drawing)

....

....

....

Help yo

Lesson (2) LANGUAGE

Key vocabulary

disability	إعاقة	expressions	تعبيرات
difficulties	صعوبات	text messages	رسائل نصية
sounds	أصوات	lip-reading	قراءة الشفاه
noise	ضوضاء	sign language	لغة الإشارة
loud	عالى	finger spelling	التهجي بالأصابع / لغة الأصابع
quiet	هادئ	forehead	الجبهة (مقدمة الرأس)
meowing	مواء (صوت القطة)	chin	الذقن

Important expressions and prepositions

with / have hearing difficulties	لديه صعوبات في السمع	(be) called	يُسمى - يُدعى
communicate with	يتواصل مع	a second language	لغة ثانية

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
communicate	يتواصل	communicated	communicated
invite	يدعو	invited	invited
guess	يخمن	guessed	guessed
press	يضغط	pressed	pressed
think	يعتقد / يفكر	thought	thought



hear + مفعول + v-ing

- I heard our cat meowing.
- I can hear birds singing.

Lesson (2)

Listen and read.

Today, our teacher invited an interesting person called Mr Kamal to come and talk to us in class. Mr Kamal told us about the best ways to communicate with people who have hearing difficulties.

اليوم، دعا معلمنا شخصًا مثيرًا للاهتمام يدعى السيد كمال للحضور والتحدث إلينا في الفصل. أخبرنا السيد كمال عن أفضل الطرق للتواصل مع الأشخاص الذين يعانون من صعوبات في السمع.

First, he asked us what sounds we heard every day. We had lots of ideas. My friend Adam said he heard other people talking, and I said I heard our cat meowing in the morning!

أولاً، سألنا عن الأصوات التي نسمعها كل يوم. كان لدينا الكثير من الأفكار. قال صديقي آدم إنه يسمع أشخاصًا آخرين يتحدثون ، وقلت أنا سمعت قطتنا تموء في الصباح!

Then, Mr Kamal asked what we thought would happen if we couldn't hear well. It really made us think! Adam asked if we would only be able to hear loud noises. Mr Kamal said that he was right. It is difficult to hear quiet noises.

ثم، سأل السيد كمال عن ما الذي سيحدث في رأينا إذا لم نتمكن من السماع جيدًا. حقًا جعلنا نفكر! سأل آدم إذا كنا فقط قادرين على سماع الأصوات العالية. قال السيد كمال إنه محق. من الصعب سماع الأصوات الهادئة.

Next, Mr Kamal asked us what ways we communicate with each other. We thought there were lots of ways. I said that talking was a way of communicating. Adam said that using expressions, like smiling, was another. Younis said that writing messages on his phone was his favorite way to communicate.

بعد ذلك سألنا السيد كمال عن الطرق التي نتواصل بها مع بعضنا البعض. كنا نظن أن هناك الكثير من [illegible] إن الحديث وسيلة للتواصل. قال آدم إن استخدام التعبيرات، مثل الابتسام ، وسيلة أخرى. قال يونس إن كتابة الرسائل على هاتفه طريقته المفضلة للتواصل.

Then, Mr Kamal told us about a really clever way to communicate! Can you guess what it is?

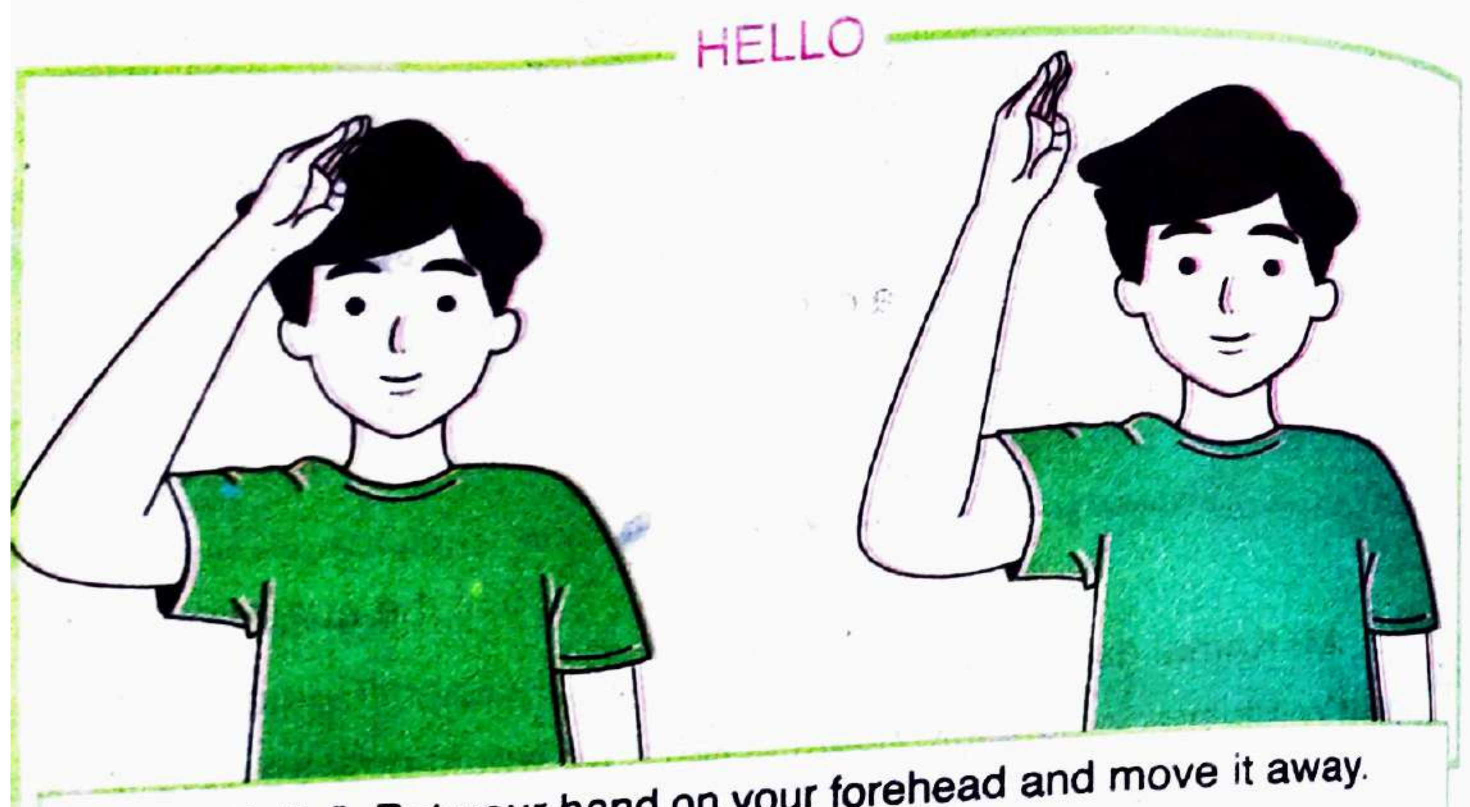
ثم أخبرنا السيد كمال عن طريقة ذكية حقًا للتواصل! هل يمكنك أن تخمن ما هي؟

Help you...

Look and learn some American Sign Language.

انظر وتعلم بعض لغة الإشارة الأمريكية.

HELLO



This is "Hello". Put your hand on your forehead and move it away.

هذه كلمة "مرحبًا". ضع يدك على جبهتك وحركها بعيدًا.

THANK YOU



This is "Thank you". Press your hand on your chin and move it away.

هذه كلمة "شكرًا". اضغط يدك على ذقنك ثم حركها بعيدًا.

Lesson (2)



Reported Questions

الأسئلة غير المباشرة

"How are you traveling to London?"

He asked me how I was traveling to London

"Can you drive a car?"

He asked me if I could drive a car

Steps:

حطوات تحويل السؤال إلى غير مباشر.

1. We use the verb "asked".
   نستخدم الفعل (asked).
2. When it's a Yes/No question, we use if instead of the quotation marks.
   اذا كان السؤال بـ "هل" (يبدأ بفعل مساعد) نستخدم (if) كرابط بدلًا من علامات التنصيص.
3. When it's a wh-question, we use the same question word.
   اذا كان السؤال بأداة استفهام، نستخدم نفس كلمة الاستفهام.
4. We change the tense from present to past.
   نحول الزمن من المضارع إلى الماضي.
5. Change the pronouns.
   نغير الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمخاطب.
   you ⟶ I - we **we ⟶ they**
6. We change the word order, start with the subject, then the verb. Remove the word (do / does).
   نغير ترتيب الكلمات، نبدأ بالفاعل ثم الفعل. احذف الفعل المساعد (do / does).
7. We omit "?" and put a full stop.
   نحذف علامة الاستفهام، ونضع نقطة.

ترتيب الجملة بعد التحويل

Subject + asked + if / wh + subject + verb (past) .... .

Examples:

"Do you hear lots of sounds outside?"
⟶ He asked us if we heard lots of sounds outside

"What sounds do you hear every day?"
⟶ He asked us what sounds we heard every day

Help your child use reported questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم الأسئلة غير المباشرة.



1 Read and choose:

1. "What happens if you can't hear quiet noises?"
   She asked what happened / what happens if we couldn't hear quiet noises.
2. "Can you all see the whiteboard?"
   He asked we could / if we could all see the whiteboard.
3. "How do you communicate at school?"
   She asked how we communicated / if we communicate at school.
4. "Do you know how to use sign language?"
   He asked did I know / if I knew how to use sign language.

2 Correct the underlined words.

1. Mr Kamal asked what <u>thought we</u> would happen if we couldn't hear well. (..........)
2. He <u>said</u> why we were running. (..........)
3. I asked him where he <u>live</u>. (..........)
4. She asked me if <u>did I see</u> Kamal. (..........)
5. They asked me if I <u>can</u> swim. (..........)
6. He <u>ask</u> if I lived in Cairo. (..........)
7. Sara asked what time it <u>is</u>. (..........)
8. He asked us if we <u>do</u> our homework. (..........)

3 Write the questions in reported speech.

1. "What do Gameela and Dalia do after school?" he asked.
   He asked ....
2. "Can you hear the birds singing outside?" she asked me.
   She asked ....
3. "Where do people learn finger spelling?" we asked.
   We asked ....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

General Activities

1 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

sign - meowing - talking - communicate - signal

Mr. Kamal: Hello, everyone. What sounds do you hear every day?

Adam: I hear some people 1) ....

Omar: I hear some cats 2) ....

Mr. Kamal: What ways do we use to 3) .... with people with hearing difficulties?

Adam: We can use 4) .... language and lip-reading.

Mr. Kamal: That's right. Thank you.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. He asked us .... we heard lots of sounds outside.
   a) to b) if c) at d) that
2. She .... where he lived.
   a) said b) told c) asked d) asks
3. The teacher asked us if .... use sign language.
   a) can we b) we could c) we can d) could we
4. Mom asked me what time .... my homework.
   a) I do b) do I do c) I did d) did I
5. He asked me if .... with my family.
   a) I live b) do I live c) did I live d) I lived
6. Dad asked me .... Spanish.
   a) do you speak b) did I speak c) if I spoke d) I spoke
7. Adam asked me how ....
   a) I am b) I was c) are you d) were you
8. Omar asked me where .... worked.
   a) did you b) do you c) I did d)
9. He asked .... all see the whiteboard.
   a) we could b) we can c) if we could d) what we can

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

10. I .... Omar where he played football.

a) said b) told c) asked d) talked

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Today, our teacher invited an interesting person called Mr Kamal to come and talk to us in class. Mr Kamal told us about the best ways to communicate with people who have hearing difficulties. First, he asked us what sounds we heard every day. We had lots of ideas. My friend Adam said he heard other people talking, and I said I heard our cat meowing in the morning! Then, Mr Kamal asked what we thought would happen if we couldn't hear well. It really made us think! Adam asked if we would only be able to hear loud noises. Mr Kamal said that he was right. It is difficult to hear quiet noises.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Mr Kamal was invited by ....
   a) our teacher b) class c) school d) Adam
2. It's not .... to hear quiet noises.
   a) easy b) difficult c) kind d) nice
3. The opposite of "interesting" is ....
   a) exciting b) boring c) funny d) useful

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What is the text about?

....

5. What's the sound of cats?

....

Lesson (3)

AMAZING DAVID!

Key vocabulary



prosthetic arm

ذراع صناعية



movable elbow

مرفق / كوع متحرك

Extra vocabulary

disability	إعاقة	cheap	رخيص
amazing	مذهل - مدهش	expensive	غالى
metal	معدن	animation	رسوم متحركة
expensive	غالي	boring	ممل
message	رسالة	Venn diagram	مخطط فن
opinion	رأي	confident	واثق
facts	حقائق	the same	نفس الشيء
plans	خطط	chess	شطرنج
future	مستقبل	taekwondo	تايكوندو (رياضة)
comic books	كتب مصورة	interesting	شيق - مثير للاهتمام

Important expressions and prepositions

made of	مصنوع من	make animation	يقوم بعمل رسوم متحركة
What do you think about ...?	ما رأيك في ....؟	a bit boring	ممل قليلًا
good at	جيد في	plastic bricks	قوالب طوب بلاستيك
in my opinion	في رأيي	make videos	يصنع فيديوهات

Help your child

Listen and read.

David Aguilar Amphoux is from Spain. When he was 18, he built a **prosthetic arm** with plastic bricks because he only had one arm. He designed it with a **movable elbow** and a hand to pick things up. David's dad has written a **comic book** about David. Everyone thinks this is great because it helps people understand more about **disabilities**. Prosthetic arms and legs can be **expensive** to make, but David made his cheaply with plastic bricks. After university, he wants to create **cheap** prosthetic arms and legs for people.



David Aguilar Amphoux

يفيد أجيلار أمفوكس من إسبانيا. عندما كان عمره ١٨ عامًا، قام ببناء ذراع صناعية من الطوب البلاستيكي لأنّه لم يكن لديه سوى راع واحدة. لقد صممه بمرفق متحرك ويد لالتقاط الأشياء. كتب والد ديفيد كتابًا فكاهيًا عن ديفيد. يعتقد الجميع أن هذا أمر رائع لأنّه ساعد الأشخاص على فهم المزيد عن الإعاقات.

يكون تصنيع الأذرع والأرجل الاصطناعية مكلفًا، لكن ديفيد صنع ذراعه بتكلفة زهيدة باستخدام الطوب البلاستيكي. بعد الجامعة، يد صنع أذرع وأرجل صناعية رخيصة الثمن للناس.

Lesson (3)

Language Functions

Asking about opinions السؤال عن الرأي

What do you think about ...? ما رأيك في ....؟ What is your opinion of ...? ما رأيك في ...؟

What about ...? و ماذا عن ....؟

Expressing opinions التعبير عن الرأي

In my opinion, ... في رأيي، ... I think ... أعتقد To me, ... بالنسبة لي، ...

Opinions about David Aguilar

What do you think about David?

In my opinion, he's very clever.

I think David's family is interesting. What do you think?

To me, they are very interesting, too.

What about his plans for the future?

I think that his plans to help others are fantastic.

 **Work in pairs. Choose a topic and discuss.**

- playing video games
- reading comic books
- playing football
- drawing and painting
- making animations



What do you think about playing football?

Well, in my opinion, football is a bit boring. I love volleyball – it's really fast!



Help your child ask about and give opinions.

ساعد طفلك أن يسأل عن الرأي ويقدم رأيه.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. David Aguilar has a .... arm.
   a) short b) long c) prosthetic d) normal
2. David's prosthetic arm is made of .... bricks.
   a) paper b) metal c) glass d) plastic
3. Most prosthetic arms are ....
   a) expensive b) cheap c) inexpensive d) easy
4. A disability .... stop you.
   a) should b) must c) ought to d) shouldn't

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

interesting - boring - To me - opinion - think

A: What do you 1) .... about David?.
B: In my 2) ...., he is very clever.
A: I think David's family is 3) .... What do you think?
B: 4) ...., they are very interesting, too.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. David has a disability. He has a .... arm.
   a) prosthetic b) normal c) healthy d) good
2. David's arm is made of plastic ....
   a) squares b) bricks c) blocks d) fingers
3. This car is .... It costs 300 thousand pounds.
   a) easy b) cheap c) expensive d) inexpensive
4. This elbow is .... It can change directions.
   a) still b) movable c) stopping d) steady
5. Rana is good .... playing taekwondo.
   a) at b) in c) on d) of
6. I enjoyed this book. It is ....
   a) boring b) bad c) interesting d) terrible

Lesson (3)

4 **Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. think - football - about - What - you - do - ?

....

2. plans - future - What - for - your - the - are - ?

....

3. opinion, - In - really - my - they're - amazing - .

....

4. A disability - stop - you - shouldn't - .

....

5 **Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:**

Prosthetic arms

Guiding words:

(disability - metal - expensive - stop)

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson (4) CAN I WORK WITH YOU?



Key vocabulary

advertisement	إعلان	kindness	اللطف
information	معلومات	tropical rainforests	غابات استوائية
character	شخصية	improve	يحسن



Extra vocabulary

poster	ملصق	grade	صف دراسي	proud	فخور
colorful	ملون	actions	أحداث	advice	نصيحة
dear	عزيزي	excellent	ممتاز	design	تصميم - يصمم
lines	كلمات دور الممثل	real	حقيقي	emotions	عواطف
research	يقوم بعمل بحث	lovely	جميل	bakery	مخبز

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
act	يمثل	acted	acted
talk	يتحدث	talked	talked
need	يحتاج	needed	needed
give	يعطي	gave	given
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken

Important expressions and prepositions

get into	يدخل في	talk to	يتحدث إلى
work with	يعمل مع	someone else	شخص آخر
at the end	في النهاية	work hard	يعمل بجد
move around	يتجول	look proud	يبدو فخورًا

Help your child identify these words. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (4)

Listen and read.

A poster about animals


Grade 6 children working on a poster

Mrs Randa : OK, everyone, I want you to get into groups to make posters about animals that live in tropical rainforests. It should be an advertisement for the rainforest. I would like colorful posters with lots of interesting information. You can get in your groups now. I'd like everyone to work together and don't forget – kindness is important.

حسنًا ، أريدكم جميعًا أن تنضموا إلى مجموعات لعمل ملصقات عن الحيوانات التي تعيش في الغابات الاستوائية المطيرة. يجب أن يكون إعلانًا عن الغابة المطيرة. أود ملصقات ملونة بها الكثير من المعلومات المثيرة للاهتمام. يمكنكم تكوين مجموعاتكم الآن. أود أن يعمل الجميع معًا ولا تنسوا - اللطف مهم.

Fares : Tamer, Gameela, Wael, can I work with you?

تامر، جميلة، وائل، هل يمكنني العمل معكم؟

Tamer : Oh no, sorry. We're already working with Magdy. Magdy, come here!

أوه لا ، آسفون. نحن نعمل بالفعل مع مجدي. مجدي ، تعال هنا!

Magdy : I'm coming!

أنا قادم!

Fares : Sherif and Lamar, can I work with you?

شريف ولمار، هل يمكنني العمل معكم؟

Sherif : Er no, we're working with Fareeda.

إيه لا ، نحن نعمل مع فريدة.

Fares starts to feel a bit sad and goes to talk to Mrs Randa.

يبدأ فارس في الشعور بالحزن قليلًا ويذهب للتحدث إلى الأستاذة راندا.

Fares : I can't find a group to work with, Mrs Randa. Everyone has their group.

لا أستطيع العثور على مجموعة للعمل معها ، يا أستاذة رندا. كل شخص لديه مجموعته.

Mrs Randa : Oh dear! Of course we can find you someone. Let's go and talk to Amira. Amira, who are you working with in your group?

يا عزيزي! بالطبع يمكننا أن نجد لك شخصًا ما. دعنا نذهب ونتحدث إلى أميرة. أميرة، مع من تعملين في مجموعتك؟

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Amira : I'm working with Samer and Mariam, but we need someone else.

أنا أعمل مع سامر ومريم ، لكننا بحاجة إلى شخص آخر.

Mrs Randa : Excellent! Here's Fares!

ممتاز! هذا فارس!

Amira : Hi, Fares! What would you like to do for the poster?

أهلًا، فارس! ماذا تُحب أن تعمل للملصق؟

Fares : I'd love to draw the pictures!

أحب أن أرسم الصور!

Amira : That's fantastic! I'm good at writing, Samer is good at design, and Mariam is great at researching information and finding photos. If you can draw pictures, then we will make a very good team!

هذا رائع! أنا جيدة في الكتابة ، سامر جيد في التصميم ، ومريم رائعة في البحث عن المعلومات والعثور على الصور. إذا كنت تستطيع رسم الصور ، فإننا سوف نكوّن فريقًا جيدًا!

A little later...

بعد قليل ...

Mrs Randa : These posters are beautiful. Who did these lovely pictures?

هذه الملصقات جميلة. من قام بهذه الصور الجميلة؟

Samer : That was Fares, Mrs Randa - he really worked hard to make our poster.

إنه فارس، يا أستاذة راندا - لقد عمل بجد حقًا لصنع ملصقنا.

Fares smiles and looks very proud.

يبتسم فارس ويبدو فخورًا جدًا.



Read again. Ask and answer with a partner.

1. What does Mrs Randa want her students to do?

....

2. Why is it difficult for Fares to find a group?

....

3. What does Fares want to do for the poster?

....

4. Why does Amira say her team will be good?

....

Help your child listen and read. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Listen and read.

Reem : Would you both like to come shopping with me? I want to buy a present for my mom.

هل ترغبان في القدوم للتسوق معي؟ أريد شراء هدية لأمي.

Mazen : Oh, that's nice, Reem. Is it her birthday?

أوه، هذا لطيف، يا ريم. هل هو عيد ميلادها؟

Reem : No, it isn't. I just want to buy her a present for being the **best** mom. I'm going to use my birthday money from last month.

لا، ليس كذلك. أريد فقط أن أشتري لها هدية لكونها أفضل أم. سأستخدم أموال عيد ميلادي من الشهر الماضي.

Talia : That's a great idea. My mom always says, "**kindness** is important", and that's a **kind** thing to do. Your mom will love a present. What do you want to buy her?

هذه فكرة عظيمة. تقول أمي دائمًا: "اللطف مهم"، وهذا شيء لطيف يجب القيام به. سوف تحب والدتك هدية. ماذا تريد أن تشتري لها؟

Reem : I was thinking of buying her some special cookies, or cakes. I saw an **advertisement** for the new bakery in town. They make really special cakes and cookies. They put them in a white box with some pretty paper.

كنت أفكر في شراء بعض الكعك المميز أو الكيك لها. رأيت إعلانًا عن المخبز الجديد في المدينة. إنهم يصنعون كعكًا وبسكوتًا مميزًا حقًا. ويضعونه في صندوق أبيض به بعض الورق الجميل.

Mazen : That would be a great present, Reem. Where's the bakery? Let's go there now.

ستكون تلك هدية رائعة يا ريم. أين المخبز؟ هيا بنا نذهب إلى هناك الآن.

Reem : Hmm ... I'm not sure. It's called Cake **Creations**. They probably have a website.

همم، لست متأكدة. يطلق عليه إبداعات الكيك. من المحتمل أن يكون لديهم موقع على شبكة الإنترنت.

Talia : OK. If we look at their website, we could get their address and some more **information** – like what kind of cakes they make and the prices.

حسنًا. إذا نظرنا إلى موقعهم الإلكتروني، فيمكننا الحصول على عناوينهم وبعض المعلومات الإضافية - مثل نوع الكعك الذي يصنعونه والأسعار.

Mazen : Great. I'll look at my phone and find the website.

عظيم. سألقي نظرة على هاتفي وأجد الموقع.

Reem : Thanks, Mazen.

شكرًا يا مازن.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.



Noun suffixes لواحق الأسماء

- Suffixes are a group of letters that are added at the end of word.
  اللواحق هي مجموعة حروف تُضاف إلى آخر الكلمة.
- Suffixes like ment, ness and ation can change a word into a noun.
  اللواحق مثل ment ، ness ، ation يمكن أن تحول الكلمة إلى اسم.

1 verb + -ment

Verb		Noun	
agree	يوافق	agreement	اتفاق
entertain	يسلي	entertainment	تسلية
advertise	يعلن	advertisement	إعلان
improve	يحسن	improvement	تحسين

2 adjective + -ness
(adjectives with y , drop y and add iness)

Adjective		Noun	
happy	سعيد	happiness	سعادة
sad	حزين	sadness	الحزن
kind	لطيف	kindness	اللطف

3 verb + -ion / ation

Verb		Noun	
inform	يخبر	information	معلومات
transform	يحول	transformation	تحويل
transport	ينقل	transportation	وسائل النقل
create	يخلق - يبدع	creation	إبداع

Examples:

- Ali is happy.
- I can find happiness with my friends.
- I want someone to entertain me.
- We need some entertainment.

Help your child identify noun suffixes.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على لواحق الأسماء.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The children are in grade ....
   a) four b) five c) three d) six
2. The children are working on a/an ....
   a) article b) poster c) diary d) magazine
3. The posters are about animals in tropical ....
   a) rivers b) mountains c) rainforests d) oceans
4. Mrs Randa wants a lot of .... information.
   a) boring b) interesting c) terrible d) bad

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

has - is - dear - else - working

Fares : I can't find a group to work with, Mrs Randa. Everyone 1) .... their group.

Mrs Randa : Oh 2) .... ! Of course we can find you someone. Let's go and talk to Amira. Amira, who are you 3) .... with in your group?

Amira : I'm working with Samer and Mariam, but we need someone 4) ....

Mrs Randa : Excellent! Here's Fares!

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Monkeys live in tropical ....
   a) rivers b) rainforests c) lakes d) seas
2. Amira is good .... writing.
   a) at b) on c) in d) with
3. The posters are beautiful. Who did these .... pictures?
   a) boring b) lovely c) bad d) terrible
4. The students worked hard. They look very ....
   a) sad b) bad c) angry d) proud

5. Mariam is great at .... information.
   a) designing   b) looking   c) researching   d) mopping
6. .... is very important.
   a) Kindness   b) Kind   c) Happy   d) Relax
7. The group made an .... for the project.
   a) advertise   b) agree   c) advertisement   d) entertain
8. You need some .... after a long tiring day.
   a) ill   b) happy   c) agree   d) entertainment
9. They are looking for some .... for the poster.
   a) inform   b) information   c) entertain   d) happy

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. work - you - Can - with - I - ?

....

2. are - These - beautiful - posters - .

....

3. Fares - a bit - feels - sad - .

....

5 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

A poster about animals

Guiding words:

(rainforests - advertisement - information - kindness)

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson (5) LANGUAGE

Key vocabulary

herd	قطيع	hunter	صياد	roar	يزأر - زئير
leader	قائد	route	طريق / مسار		

Extra vocabulary

India	دولة الهند	powerful	قوى	village	قرية
net	شبكة	mouse - mice	فأر - فئران	community	مجتمع
shocked	مصدوم	needs	احتياجات	chef	طباخ / طاهٍ

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
bite	يعض / يقضم	bit	bitten
hurt	يؤذى / يؤلم	hurt	hurt
explain	يشرح	explained	explained
respect	يحترم	respected	respected
nod	يومئ برأسه	nodded	nodded

Important expressions and prepositions

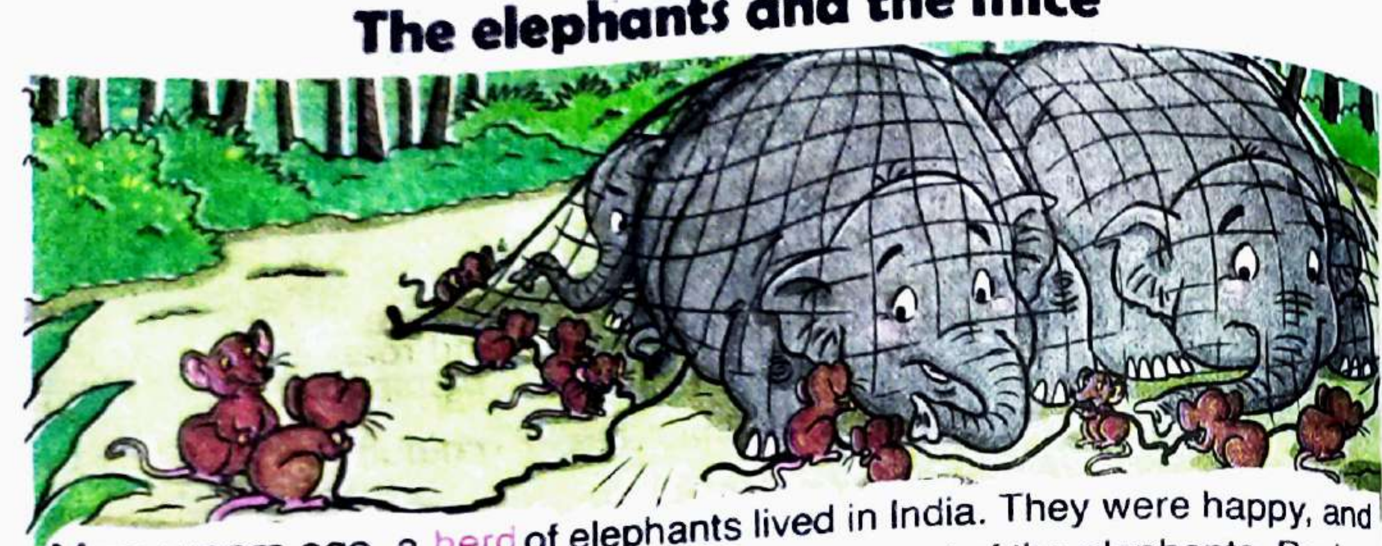
a herd of elephants	قطيع من الأفيال	close to	قريب من
after a while	بعد فترة قصيرة	along a path	على طول الطريق
in a difficult situation	في موقف صعب	make a difference	يُحدث فرقًا
hundreds of	مئات من	got caught	تم اصطيادهم

Definitions تعريفات

leader	the most powerful person or animal in a group, for example, a king or queen	قائد - زعيم
herd	a group of elephants	قطيع
hunter	a person who tries to catch or kill wild animals	صياد
roar	to make a very loud noise	يزأر - زئير
route	a path or a way to go somewhere	طريق

Listen and read.

The elephants and the mice



Many years ago, a herd of elephants lived in India. They were happy, and their leader, the queen, was the kindest and best of the elephants. During the day, it was very hot, and the elephants liked to swim in the lake.

منذ سنوات عديدة ، عاش قطيع من الأفيال في الهند. كانوا سعداء ، وكانت زعيمتهم ، الملكة ، ألطف وأفضل الفيلة. خلال النهار ، كان الجو حارًا جدًا ، وكانت الأفيال تحب السباحة في البحيرة.

Near that lake, there was an old village. Nobody lived in the village now, but there were hundreds of mice. Their leader, the king, was kind. The elephants and the mice lived well together.

بالقرب من تلك البحيرة ، كانت هناك قرية قديمة. لا أحد يعيش في القرية الآن ، ولكن كان هناك مئات الفئران. كان قائدهم ، الملك ، لطيفًا. عاشت الأفيال والفئران معًا بشكل جيد.

But, one day, the elephants changed their route to the lake. This meant they walked along a path that was too close to the mice. Many of the elephants didn't see the mice. They walked on them and hurt them.

ولكن ، في يوم من الأيام ، غيرت الأفيال طريقها إلى البحيرة. هذا يعني أنهم ساروا على طول طريق قريب جدًا من الفئران. العديد من الفيلة لم يروا الفئران. وداسوا عليهم وآذوهم.

After a while, the mice said to the mouse king, "This cannot continue! It isn't safe for us!" The mouse king said, "Don't worry – I'll talk to the elephant queen," and he went to see her.

بعد فترة ، قالت الفئران للملك الفأر ، " هذا لا يمكن أن يستمر! هذا ليس آمنًا بالنسبة لنا!" قال الملك الفأر ، " لا تقلقوا – سأتحدث إلى ملكة الفيلة " ، وذهب لرؤيتها.

The mouse king met the elephant queen and explained the problem. She was shocked to hear what was happening and agreed to go a different route.

التقى الملك الفأر بملكة الفيلة وشرح المشكلة. لقد صدمت لسماع ما كان يحدث ووافقت على السير في طريق مختلف.

Help your child listen and read. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

"Thank you for listening and respecting our needs," said the mouse king, "One day, I hope we can help you if you're in a difficult situation."

قال الملك الفأر: " شكرًا لك على الاستماع واحترام احتياجاتنا. يومًا ما ، آمل أن نتمكن من مساعدتك إذا كنت في موقف صعب."

The elephant queen nodded, but thought, "We elephants are the most powerful animals in India – why would we need help from little mice?"

أومأت ملكة الفيلة برأسها، لكن فكرت، "نحن الفيلة أقوى الحيوانات في الهند – لماذا سنحتاج إلى مساعدة من الفئران الصغيرة؟"

A few weeks later, some hunters were watching the elephants and left nets. The next day, when the elephants went to the lake, they got caught in the nets. They couldn't move, and they roared and roared, making the loudest noise. The mice heard the loud noise and came running. Quickly, they started biting the nets. The elephants could get out!

بعد بضعة أسابيع ، كان بعض الصيادين يراقبون الأفيال وتركوا الشباك. في اليوم التالي ، عندما ذهبت الأفيال إلى البحيرة ، وقعوا في الشباك. لم يتمكنوا من التحرك ، وبدأوا يزأرون ويزأرون ، وأصدروا أعلى الأصوات. سمعت الفئران الأصوات العالية وجاءت تجرى. وبسرعة، بدأوا في قضم الشباك. تمكنت الفيلة من الخروج!

The next day, the elephant queen came to see the mouse king and said, "Thank you so much! You saved some elephants from the hunters! You showed us that all members of our community, from the biggest to the smallest, can make a difference." The mouse king felt like the happiest and proudest mouse in the village!

في اليوم التالي ، جاءت ملكة الفيلة لرؤية الملك الفأر وقالت، " شكرًا جزيلًا! لقد أنقذت بعض الفيلة من الصيادين! لقد بينت لنا أن جميع أعضاء مجتمعنا ، من الأكبر إلى الأصغر ، يمكن أن يحدث فرقًا. " شعر الملك الفأر بأنه الفأر الأكثر سعادة وفخرًا في القرية!

- Read the story again. Ask and answer with a partner.

1. Why did the elephants go to the lake every day?

....

2. Why did the elephants and mice like their leaders?

....

3. Do you think the elephants queen and the mouse king liked each other?

....

4. Why do you think the elephants roared?

....

5. How did the mice help the elephants?

....





صيغة التفضيل

When we want to compare more than two things in an adjective, we use the superlative form. عندما نريد أن نقارن بين أكثر من شيئين في صفة، نستخدم صيغة التفضيل.

Short adjectives الصفات القصيرة

the + adj + est

e.g. Elephants are the biggest animals.

Note:

- Adjectives ending in (e), we add (st).

  nice ⟶ the nicest fine ⟶ the finest

- Adjectives ending in (a vowel + a consonant), we double the last consonant and add (est).

  fat ⟶ the fattest big ⟶ the biggest

- Adjectives ending in (a consonant + y), we omit (y) and add (iest).

  heavy ⟶ the heaviest happy ⟶ the happiest

Long adjectives الصفات الطويلة

the most (الأكثر) / the least (الأقل) + adjective

e.g. Elephants are the most powerful animals in India.

Irregular adjectives صفات غير منتظمة

Adjectives	Comparative	Superlative
good جيد	better than	the best
bad سئ	worse than	the worst
little قليل	less than	the least
many / much كثير	more than	the most

e.g. The elephant queen was the best of the elephants.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The elephant queen is the .... of all.
   a) kind b) kinder c) kindest d) most kind
2. The elephant made the .... noise.
   a) loud b) louder c) loudest d) more loud
3. Elephants are .... animals on land.
   a) the biggest b) bigger c) biggest d) big
4. The mouse king felt .... mouse in the village.
   a) the proud b) more proud c) the proudest d) less proud
5. The mouse king was the .... one in India.
   a) happy b) happier c) as happy d) happiest
6. Mahmoud is .... one in my family.
   a) good b) better c) best d) the best
7. Today is the .... day all over the year.
   a) hot b) hotter c) as hot d) hottest
8. Elephants are .... animals.
   a) powerful b) more powerful
   c) most powerful d) the most powerful

2 Read and complete with the correct form.

1. Boxing is the .... (difficult) sport.
2. Ali is .... (happy) boy in the class.
3. English is the .... (easy) subject at school.
4. My mom is .... (kind) person in my family.
5. Summer is .... (hot) season in the year.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A herd of .... lived in India.
   a) elephants b) lions c) giraffes d) buffaloes
2. The elephants' .... was the kindest of the elephants.
   a) boss b) leader c) vet d) keeper
3. During the day it was very ....
   a) sunny b) cool c) hot d) cold
4. The elephants liked to swim in the ....
   a) river b) sea c) ocean d) lake

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

roared - caught - hunters - cried - mice

Many years ago, a herd of elephants lived in India. Some 1)........................ were watching the elephants and left nets. When the elephants went to the lake, they got 2)..................... in the nets. They couldn't move and they 3)...................... The 4)...................... heard the loud noise and came running. Quickly, they started biting the nets. The elephants could get out.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. January is often the .... month of the year here in Egypt.
   a) colder b) coldest c) cold d) more cold
2. Gameela is the .... girl in the class - she's always laughing.
   a) happier b) happiest c) happy d) more happy
3. That man is the .... chef in our city.
   a) best b) better c) as good d) good
4. It was the .... vacation - it rained the whole time!
   a) worst b) worse c) bad d) good
5. Lake Nasser is the .... lake in Egypt.
   a) bigger b) biggest c) as big d) big

Lesson (5)

6. What's the .... subject in school?
   a) easy b) easier c) easiest d) most easy
7. What's the .... sport?
   a) difficult b) most difficult c) less difficult d) more difficult
8. A .... of elephants lived in India a long time ago.
   a) bunch b) herd c) hard d) collection
9. One day the elephants changed their .... to the lake.
   a) route b) right c) write d) rite
10. Some .... were watching the elephants and left the nets.
    a) writers b) vets c) doctors d) hunters
11. The elephants couldn't move and they .... making the loudest noise.
    a) breathed b) whistled c) roared d) walked
12. The Nile crocodile is the .... animal in Egypt.
    a) more dangerous b) dangerous
    c) less dangerous d) most dangerous
13. A .... is the most important person in a group.
    a) leader b) teacher c) servant d) driver
14. A .... is a person who tries to catch or kill wild animals.
    a) leader b) hunter c) runner d) farmer

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. the mice - the elephants - How - help - did - ?
   ....
2. the - Cartoons - on - programs - TV - are - funniest - .
   ....
3. The elephants - like - the mice - their leaders - and - .
   ....
4. was - for - me - vacation - best - It - the - .
   ....

Key vocabulary

personal profile	ملف تعريف شخص	introduce	يقدم
blog	مدونة	report	تقرير / يقدم تقرير

Extra vocabulary

brown hair	شعر بني	volleyball	الكرة الطائرة
wear braces	تضع تقويم أسنان	movies	أفلام
the countryside	الريف	dentist	طبيب أسنان
photography	التصوير الفوتوغرافي	hobbies	هوايات
computing	استعمال الحاسب - الحوسبة	comments	تعليقات
downtown	وسط المدينة	free time	وقت الفراغ

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
write	يكتب	wrote	written
score	يحرز هدف	scored	scored

Important expressions and prepositions

Alex Modern School	مدرسة الإسكندرية الحديثة	as well as	بالإضافة إلى
meet up with friends	يتقابل مع الأصدقاء	What about you?	ماذا عنك؟
I'm into ...	أنا أحب ...	take photos	يلتقط صورًا
(be) keen on + (n / v + ing)	حريص على / يحب	local club	النادي المحلي
all over the world	في كل أنحاء العالم	on the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
Thank you for + (n / v + ing)	شكرًا لك على	I can't wait.	لا أستطيع الانتظار.

Lesson (…)

Listen and read.

Dalia's personal profile

Hi everybody!

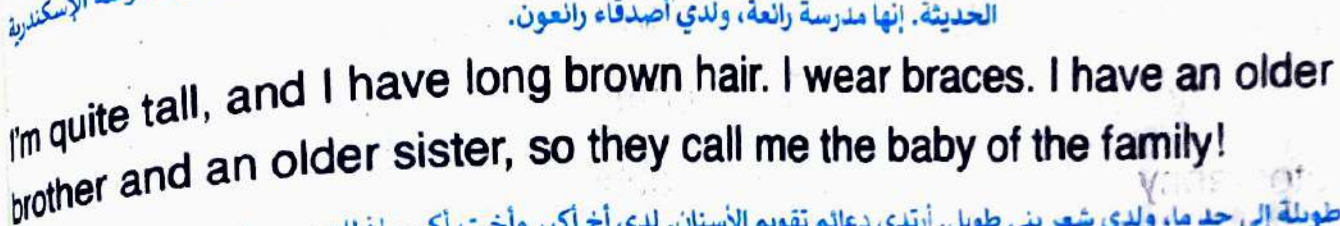
أهلًا بكم جميعًا!

How are things?

كيف أحوالكم؟

My name's Dalia. I'm eleven, and I live in Alexandria. I go to school at Alex Modern School. It's a great school, and I have great friends.

اسمي داليا. أنا في الحادية عشرة من عمري ، وأعيش في الإسكندرية. أذهب إلى مدرسة الإسكندرية الحديثة. إنها مدرسة رائعة، ولدي أصدقاء رائعون.



I'm quite tall, and I have long brown hair. I wear braces. I have an older brother and an older sister, so they call me the baby of the family!

أنا طويلة إلى حدٍ ما، ولدي شعر بني طويل. أرتدي دعائم تقويم الأسنان. لدي أخ أكبر وأخت أكبر، لذلك يسمونني طفلة الأسرة!

I'm keen on walking with my family and friends, and the countryside near where I live is really amazing. I'm into photography. I like taking photos of all the beautiful things I see in the countryside.

أنا حريصة على المشي مع عائلتي وأصدقائي، والريف القريب من المكان الذي أعيش فيه حقًا مدهش. أنا أحب التصوير الفوتوغرافي. أحب التقاط صور جميع الأشياء الجميلة التي أراها في الريف.

I also love listening to music from my country and all over the world. As well as this, I'm really into sports. I play volleyball at my local club, and we have games about once a month.

أنا أيضًا أحب الاستماع إلى الموسيقى من بلدي وجميع أنحاء العالم. بالإضافة إلى هذا ، أنا أحب الرياضة. ألعب الكرة الطائرة في النادي المحلي، ونحن نلعب مباريات مرة واحدة في الشهر.

On the weekend, I love going to the mall with my friends and family, and then I go to my grandma's to watch movies with her. We talk a lot, and she lives near my house, so it's easy for me to get home.

في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع، أحب الذهاب إلى المركز التجاري مع أصدقائي وعائلتي، ثم أذهب إلى منزل جدتي لمشاهدة الأفلام معها. نتحدث كثيرًا ، وهي تعيش بالقرب من منزلي ، لذلك من السهل عليّ الوصول إلى المنزل.

I think a lot about the future, and I think I'd like to be a dentist, like my dad. What about you? What do you look like? What are your hobbies? Write and tell me about yourself!

افكر كثيرًا في المستقبل، وأعتقد أنني أود ان أكون طبيبة أسنان، مثل والدي. وماذا عنك؟ كيف تبدو؟ وما هي هواياتك؟ اكتب وأخبرني عن نفسك!

Read the personal profile again. Read the chart about Dalia.

Name:	الاسم	Dalia
Age:	العمر	11
School:	المدرسة	Alex Modern School
What does she look like?	الشكل	tall, with long and brown hair
Her hobbies:	الهوايات	photography listening to music
What does she do on the weekend?	ماذا تفعل في العطلة الأسبوعية؟	goes to the mall goes to her grandma's
What are her future plans?	ما خططها المستقبلية؟	to be a dentist

Writing a personal profile



- Remember these tips when you write: تذكر هذه الإرشادات عندما تكتب:
- **Start with** a greeting: Hi / Hey ابدأ بتحية: مرحبًا
- Give your name, your age, and where you live. اذكر اسمك وعمرك وأين تعيش.
- Describe what you look like. صف شكلك.
- **Tell people about your hobbies:** اخبر الناس عن هواياتك مستخدمًا هذه التراكيب:
  - I'm into ... أنا أحب ....
  - I'm keen on ... أنا أحب / حريص على .....
  - My favorite hobby is ... هوايتي المفضلة هي ....
- **Ask them to write to you:** اطلب منهم أن يكتبوا لك مستخدمًا هذه الجمل:
  - I can't wait to hear from you! لا أستطيع الانتظار لسماع أخبارك!
  - Write and tell me! اكتب وأخبرني!

Writing rule

- Use a **comma** before **and**, **but** and **so** when the sentence contains two clauses.
استخدم الفاصلة السفلى قبل أدوات الربط (so / but / and) عندما تحتوى الجملة على عبارتين.

e.g.
- Lara is good at tennis, **so** everybody wants to play tennis with her.
- Adel doesn't play sport, **but** he likes watching sport on TV.
- Younis has three brothers, **and** they live in an apartment downtown.

General Activities

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. Dalia is .... years old.
   a) ten b) eleven c) twelve d) thirteen
2. She lives in ....
   a) Luxor b) Giza c) Sinai d) Alexandria
3. Dalia's school is ....
   a) great b) bad c) small d) terrible
4. Dalia has long .... hair.
   a) black b) blonde c) white d) brown

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

dentist - movies - mall - future - school

On the weekend, I love going to the 1) .... with my friends and family, and then I go to my grandma's to watch 2) .... with her. We talk a lot, and she lives near my house, so it's easy for me to get home. I think a lot about the 3) ...., and I think I'd like to be a 4) ...., like my dad.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Dalia .... braces in her mouth.
   a) shows b) wears c) thinks d) changes
2. She is keen on .... with her friends.
   a) walked b) walks c) to walk d) walking
3. She likes .... photos.
   a) walking b) talking c) taking d) wearing
4. I like watching .... on TV.
   a) movies b) blogs c) stories d) books
5. I .... volleyball at my local club.
   a) stay b) make c) do d) play
6. What are your favorite ....? - Swimming and running.
   a) books b) hobbies c) subjects d) stories

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. the weekend - on - What - do - you - do - ?
2. keen - I'm - walking - on - the countryside - in - .



5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Hi everybody!
I'm Sherif and I'm eleven. I live in Hurghada near the sea and I go to Azziz School. I'm in grade 6. My best friends at school are Younis and Waleed. We're in the same class. I have short dark hair and I wear glasses. I have a brother, Amir, and a sister, Fareeda. I'm really into sports. I play football and basketball, and I go to swimming club on Thursday. I love watching football games on TV with my dad. Our favorite football team is Barcelona. On the weekend, I often meet my friends in the park to play basketball. My friend Samer uses a wheelchair, and he plays basketball with us. He scores the most baskets, so everybody wants him to be in their team. As well as this, I'm really into computer games, too. I love playing computer games with my brother Amir, but he often wins! In the future, I want to be a doctor.
Write and tell me about yourself!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Sherif's family live in ....
   a) Giza b) Cairo c) Hurghada d) Alexandria
2. The underlined phrase "I'm really into" means ....
   a) dislike b) keen on c) good at d) inside
3. Sherif meets his friends ....
   a) every day b) once a day c) once a week d) twice a day

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What does Sherif look like? ....
5. What's his plan for the future? ....



6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Your personal profile

Guiding elements:

- Write about your name, age, where you live, what you look like, your hobbies, and your future plans.

....

....

....

Lesson (7)

STORY: HANA SAVES THE DAY

Key vocabulary


physiotherapist
أخصائي العلاج الطبيعي


crawl
يزحف - يحبو


walker
مشاية


decorate
يُزين

Extra vocabulary

awesome	مدهش	brain	مخ	entrance	مدخل
worried	قَلِق	cerebral palsy	شلل دماغي	snack	وجبة خفيفة

Important expressions and prepositions

come over	يزور	help each other	نساعد بعضنا البعض	in danger	في خطر
a group of	مجموعة من	a very helpful girl	بنت متعاونة جدًا	at the end	في النهاية
pull up	يجذب لأعلى	go for a walk	يتمشى	wait for	ينتظر
move past	يتحرك متجاوزًا	get in the car	يركب السيارة	a special seat	مقعد خاص

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
decorate	يُزين	decorated	decorated
receive	يستلم - يتلقى	received	received
turn	يلف	turned	turned
crawl	يزحف	crawled	crawled
notice	يلاحظ	noticed	noticed
pull	يجذب - يسحب	pulled	pulled
catch	يمسك	caught	caught

Definitions

decorate — to add something to an object or place to make it look better يزين

walker — something that people use to help them walk مشاية

crawl — to move along the ground using both arms and legs يزحف

physiotherapist — a person who helps people with injuries or disabilities إخصائي العلاج الطبيعي

Listen and read.



Hana is a good friend who lives on my street. One day, after school, she called me.

هَنا صديقة جيدة تعيش في شارعي. ذات يوم ، بعد المدرسة ، اتصلت بي.

"My new walker arrived. Do you want to come over and help me decorate it?" Excited, I ran to her house. As she gets taller, Hana receives a new walker every year. When the new one arrives, we decorate it. Hana's favorite color is green, so we painted it green and decorated it with stars and stickers. It looked awesome. "What should we do now, Reem?" asked Hana.

"لقد وصلت مشايتي الجديدة. هل تريدين أن تأتي وتساعديني في تزيينها؟" كنت متحمسة ، وركضت إلى منزلها. ولأنها تزداد طولًا ، تتلقى هَنا مشاية جديدة كل عام. عندما تصل المشايه الجديدة ، نقوم بتزيينها. لون هَنا المفضل هو الأخضر ، لذلك قمنا بطلائها باللون الأخضر وزيناها بالنجوم والملصقات. بدت رائعة. سألت هَنا "ماذا يجب أن نفعل الآن، يا ريم؟".

"I think we should go to the park," I said. We often go for a walk to the park after school. Hana's physiotherapist, Donia, says it's important for Hana to get fresh air and exercise her legs so they get stronger. At the park, we met our friends. They said Hana's new walker looked great. Our new friend, Rasha, asked Hana why she needed a walker.

قلت:" أعتقد أننا يجب أن نذهب إلى الحديقة". غالبا ما نذهب في نزهة على الأقدام إلى الحديقة بعد المدرسة. تقول دنيا ، أخصائية العلاج الطبيعي لهَنا، إنه من المهم أن تحصل هَنا على هواء نقي وتمرن ساقيها حتى يصبحان أقوى. في الحديقة ، التقينا بأصدقائنا. قالوا إن مشاية هَنا الجديدة تبدو رائعة. صديقتنا الجديدة ، رشا ، سألت هَنا لماذا تحتاج إلى مشاية.

she said, "when I was born, something happened to my brain works differently to some other people's. My dad calls it my l brain. The name for what I have is cerebral palsy." "Can you do thing with the walker?" asked Rasha.

قالت: "حسنًا ، عندما ولدت ، حدث شيء ما لعقلي وهو يعمل بشكل مختلف عن دماغ بعض الأشخاص الآخرين. يسميه والدي الخاص. اسم الشيء الذي أصبت به هو الشلل الدماغي." سألت رشا "هل يمكنك أن تفعلي كل شيء بالمشاية؟".

for eating meals I have a special chair at home, and for going out in car, I have a special seat – it's really comfortable." Then we walked le more with our friends. Hana was walking behind with Nadine, our r friend. Suddenly, a woman came running towards us, and she crying.

"لا ، لتناول وجبات الطعام لدي كرسي خاص في المنزل ، وللخروج في السيارة ، لدي مقعد خاص - إنه مريح حقًا." ثم مشينا أكثر مع أصدقائنا. كانت هنا تسير في الخلف مع نادين، صديقتنا الأخرى. فجأة ، جاءت امرأة تجري نحونا ، وكانت تبكي.

can't see my little boy!" she said. "I turned around to get him a snack m my bag, and now I can't see him!" "How old is your little boy?" asked sha. "Only one. He can't walk, he crawls along the ground."

قالت "لا أستطيع رؤية ابني الصغير! استدرت لإحضار وجبة خفيفة له من حقيبتي ، والآن لا أستطيع رؤيته!" سألت رشا "كم عمر طفلك الصغير؟" "سنة واحدة فقط. إنه لا يستطيع المشي ، و يزحف على الأرض."

o we all looked in the grass, and the snack bar, but we didn't see him. hen, I noticed there was a group of trees behind where the woman was itting. "Let's look over there!" I said. "And where's Hana?"

لذلك نظرنا جميعًا في العشب ، ومطعم الوجبات الخفيفة ، لكننا لم نره. ثم لاحظت وجود مجموعة من الأشجار خلف المكان الذي كانت المرأة جالسة فيه. قلت "دعونا نبحث هناك! وأين هَنَا؟"

Nobody knew. We all ran over to the trees, quite scared because it was near the road. "Adam!" shouted the woman, and she stopped crying.

لا أحد يعرف. ركضنا جميعًا إلى الأشجار ، خائفين جدًا لأنها كانت بالقرب من الطريق. صاحت المرأة "آدم!" ، وتوقفت عن البكاء.

There was Adam, pulling himself up on Hana's walker, and Hana was talking to him quietly. His mom was so thankful that Hana found him. We were all so relieved and happy, and we had an ice cream to celebrate!

كان آدم هناك ، يقف على مشاية هَنَا ، وكانت هَنَا تتحدث معه بهدوء. كانت والدته ممتنة جدًا لأن هَنَا وجدته. كنا جميعًا نشعر بالارتياح والسعادة، وتناولنا الآيس كريم للاحتفال!

Answer the following questions.

1. What is special about Hana?
....
2. Why did Hana call Reem?
....
3. Where did Hana and Reem go together?
....

Help your child listen and read. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Listen and read. What's Adam's disability?

It was Thursday afternoon and for Adam, this was the best day of the week. Adam went to basketball club after school on a Thursday. Today was special. His mom was waiting for him at the school entrance.

كان ذلك بعد ظهر يوم الخميس، وكان هذا أفضل يوم في الأسبوع بالنسبة لآدم. ذهب آدم إلى نادي كرة السلة بعد المدرسة يوم الخميس. اليوم كان مميزًا. وكانت والدته تنتظره عند مدخل المدرسة.

"I've brought you some water and a snack, Adam. You should eat something before you play," she said. "Thanks, Mom, I forgot about eating," said Adam. "That's because you're so excited," his mom said, smiling. "Come on, Adam, let's get in the car."

قالت: "لقد أحضرت لك بعض الماء ووجبة خفيفة يا آدم. يجب أن تأكل شيئًا قبل أن تلعب". قال آدم: "شكرًا يا أمي، لقد نسيت الأكل". قالت والدته وهي تبتسم: "هذا لأنك متحمس للغاية. هيا يا آدم، لنركب السيارة."

Fifteen minutes later, they arrived at the sports center. Adam saw his friend Hazem, who was waiting for him at the entrance. "Hi, Adam. Are you excited about the game?" he shouted.

وبعد خمسة عشر دقيقة، وصلوا إلى المركز الرياضي. رأى آدم صديقه حازم الذي كان ينتظره عند المدخل. صاح قائلًا "مرحبًا آدم. هل أنت متحمس للعبة؟"

"Hi, Hazem! Yes! It's going to be the most exciting game ever," Adam said. He waited for his mom as she took out his wheelchair from the back of the car. "Look, Mom," said Adam. "There's Mr Adel, my physiotherapist. He has come to watch the game. Let's say hello."

قال آدم: "مرحبا حازم! نعم! ستكون اللعبة الأكثر إثارة على الإطلاق". انتظر والدته وهي تخرج كرسيه المتحرك من الجزء الخلفي من السيارة. قال آدم: "انظري يا أمي. ها هو السيد عادل، أخصائي العلاج الطبيعي. لقد جاء لمشاهدة المباراة. هيا نرحب به."

Adam started playing wheelchair basketball six months ago and this was his first game as the captain of the team. The game started well and Adam's team was winning, until the last five minutes, when the other team scored two baskets. This was serious.

بدأ آدم بلعب كرة السلة على الكراسي المتحركة منذ ستة أشهر وكانت هذه أول مباراة له كقائد للفريق. بدأت المباراة بشكل جيد وكان فريق آدم هو الفائز، حتى الدقائق الخمس الأخيرة، عندما سجل الفريق الآخر نقطتين. كان هذا خطيرًا.

There were three minutes until the end of the game. Then two minutes ... Suddenly, Maged caught the ball and threw it to Hazem. Hazem quickly moved past two players and threw the ball to Adam. *There were 60 seconds to go* ... Adam caught the ball and stopped his wheelchair. Thirty seconds ... he put his arms above his head.

كانت هناك ثلاث دقائق حتى نهاية المباراة. ثم دقيقتان.. وفجأة أمسك ماجد الكرة وألقاها لحازم. وتجاوز حازم سريعًا لاعبين وألقى الكرة إلى آدم. كان هناك ٦٠ ثانية متبقية... أمسك آدم بالكرة وأوقف كرسيه المتحرك. ثلاثون ثانية...وضع ذراعيه فوق رأسه.

Twenty seconds ... then he threw the ball high in the air ... and it dropped into the middle of the basketball net! Everyone cheered loudly! Adam's team won the match! What a great day!

عشرون ثانية.. ثم رمى الكرة عاليًا في الهواء.. فسقطت في منتصف شبكة كرة السلة! هتف الجميع بصوت عالٍ! فاز فريق آدم بالمباراة! يا له من يوم عظيم!

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Adam was pulling himself up on Hana's ....
   a) bike b) leg c) walker d) chair
2. Hana was talking to him ....
   a) sadly b) quietly c) noisily d) loudly
3. His mom was so .... that Hana found him.
   a) sad b) angry c) annoyed d) thankful
4. We had .... to celebrate.
   a) juice b) an ice cream c) chocolate d) fruit

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

entrance - sport - club - best - special

It was Thursday afternoon and for Adam, this was the 1) .... day of the week. Adam went to basketball 2) .... after school on a Thursday. Today was 3) .... His mom was waiting for him at the school 4) .... He plays wheelchair basketball and they had an exciting game at the sports club.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Hana can't walk without a ....
   a) computer b) walker c) tablet d) phone
2. A/An .... helps people move and walk better.
   a) surgeon b) vet c) physiotherapist d) doctor
3. Cerebral palsy is something happens to the ....
   a) teeth b) brain c) stomach d) eyes
4. When you want something to look better, you .... it.
   a) copy b) decorate c) draw d) move



Read the following text and answer the questions.

Hana is a good friend who lives on my street. One day, after school, she called me. "My new walker arrived. Do you want to come over and help me decorate it?" Excited, I ran to her house. As she gets taller, Hana receives a new walker every year. When the new one arrives, we decorate it. Hana's favorite color is green, so we painted it green and decorated it with stars and stickers. It looked awesome

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Hana is a .... friend.
   a) selfish b) naughty c) good d) bad
2. Hana receives a new walker every ....
   a) day b) week c) month d) year
3. The word " awesome" means ....
   a) bad b) awful c) wonderful d) difficult

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What do they do with the new walker?

....

5. What did they decorate it with?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. new -arrived - My -has -walker -.

....

2. woman - Why -worried -the -is -?

....

3. because -loves - Adam -he -Thursday -basketball -plays -.

....

We are all special

We are all different to each other. My friends and I are different. Shady is tall and wears glasses. He's very creative and likes drawing.

Laila is very kind, she helps everybody. She has straight hair. She can't hear very well, so she wears a hearing aid. Amira loves drama and has curly dark hair. She also loves reading and always has books in her hands. Hesham is very sporty, and he's in the wheelchair basketball team. Seleem is great at math. He has short hair and wears braces.

Dalia's personal profile

Hi everybody!

My name's Dalia. I'm eleven, and I live in Alexandria. I go to Alex Modern School. It's a great school, and I have great friends. I'm quite tall, and I have long brown hair. I wear braces. I have an older brother and an older sister, so they call me the baby of the family! I'm keen on walking with my family and friends, and the countryside near where I live is really amazing. I'm into photography. I like taking photos of all the beautiful things I see in the countryside.

Write and tell me about yourself!

Hamza's personal profile

My name's Hamza. I'm eleven, and I live in Giza. I go to El-Manar School. It's a great school, and I have great friends. I'm quite tall, and I have black hair. I wear glasses. I have two brothers. On the weekend, I love going to the mall with my friends and family, and then I go to my grandma's to watch movies with her. We talk a lot, and she lives near my house, so it's easy for me to get home.

Review on Unit (4)

Describing people

braces	دعامة تقويم الأسنان	hearing aid	جهاز تقوية السمع
curly hair	شعر مجعد	mean = unkind	قاس - غير لطيف
straight hair	شعر ناعم	glasses	نظارة
wheelchair	كرسي متحرك	languages	لغات

Ways of communication

finger spelling	تهجئة الأصابع	sign language	لغة الإشارة
lip-reading	قراءة الشفاه	text messages	رسائل نصية

Noun suffixes

advertise ment	إعلان	kind ness	العطف
inform ation	معلومات	happi ness	سعادة

Other words

cerebral palsy	شلل دماغي	leader	قائد
crawl	يزحف	movable elbow	مرفق / كوع متحرك
decorate	يزين	physiotherapist	أخصائي العلاج الطبيعي
herd	قطيع	prosthetic arm	ذراع صناعي
hunter	صياد	walker	مشاية

Language

Reported Questions

"How are you traveling to London?"

He asked me how I was traveling to London.

"Can you drive a car?"

He asked me if I could drive a car.

"Do you hear lots of sounds outside?"

He asked us if we heard lots of sounds outside.

Help your child revise unit (4).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الرابعة.

Superlatives

When we want to compare more than two things in an adjective, we use the superlative form. عندما نريد أن نقارن بين أكثر من شيئين في صفة نستخدم صيغة التفضيل

Short adjectives الصفات القصيرة

the + adj + est

e.g. Elephants are the biggest animals.

Note:

- Adjectives ending in (e), we add (st).
  - nice ⟶ the nicest
  - fine ⟶ the finest
- Adjectives ending in (a vowel + a consonant), we double the last consonant and add (est).
  - fat ⟶ the fattest
  - big ⟶ the biggest
- Adjectives ending in (a consonant + y), we omit (y) and add (iest).
  - heavy ⟶ the heaviest
  - happy ⟶ the happiest

Long adjectives الصفات الطويلة

the most (الأكثر) / **the least** (الأقل) + **adjective**

e.g. Elephants are the most powerful animals in India.

Irregular adjectives صفات غير قياسية

Adjectives	Comparative	Superlative
good	أفضل better than	the best
bad	أسوأ worse than	the worst
little	أقل less than	the least
many / much	أكثر more than	the most

e.g. The elephant queen was the best of the elephants.

Dictation on Unit (4)

Lesson (1)

جهاز تقوية السمع ....
نظارات ....
دعائم تقويم الأسنان ....
كرسي متحرك ....
شعر ناعم ....
شعر مجعد ....

Lesson (2)

قراءة الشفاه ....
لغة الإشارة ....
لغة الأصابع ....
إعاقة ....
مواء (صوت القطة) ....
يتواصل ....

Lesson (3)

مرفق / كوع متحرك ....
ذراع صناعية ....
كتب مصورة ....
يتحرك ....
مصنوع من ....
في رأيي ....

Lesson (4)

إعلان ....
شخصية ....
يُحسن ....
يعمل ....
يدخل في ....
ملصق ....

Lesson (5)

قطيع ....
قائد - زعيم ....
طريق ....
صياد ....
يزأر ....
يعض / يقضم ....

Lesson (6)

يقدم ....
تقرير ....
ملف تعريف شخصي ....
مدونة ....
تضع تقويم أسنان ....
مركز تجاري ....

Lesson (7)

أخصائي العلاج الطبيعي ....
يزحف ....
مشاية ....
يزين ....
شلل دماغي ....
مخ ....

Help your child dictate these words.
ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Shady is .... and wears glasses.
   a) fat b) short c) tall d) thin
2. Laila has .... hair.
   a) curly b) straight c) black d) blonde
3. Amira loves drama and ....
   a) singing b) reading c) running d) swimming
4. Seleem is great at ....
   a) Arabic b) English c) science d) math

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

kindness - rainforests - information - advertisement - kind

OK, everyone, I want you to get into groups to make posters about animals that live in tropical 1)................ It should be an 2)................ for the rainforest. I would like colorful posters with lots of interesting 3)................. You can get in your groups now. I'd like everyone to work together and don't forget - 4)................ is important.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

My name's Dalia. I'm eleven, and I live in Alexandria. I go to school at Alex Modern School. It's a great school, and I have great friends. I'm quite tall, and I have long brown hair. I wear braces. I have an older brother and an older sister, so they call me the baby of the family!
I'm keen on walking with my family and friends, and the countryside near where I live is really amazing. I'm into photography. I like taking photos of all the beautiful things I see in the countryside. I also love listening to music from my country and all over the world.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Dalia lives in ....
   a) Tanta b) Giza c) Alexandria d) Cairo
2. She has long .... hair.
   a) blonde b) yellow c) black d) brown
3. The underlined phrase "I'm into" means ....
   a) play b) keen on c) put on d) dislike

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What school does she go to?

....

5. What are her hobbies?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write (YES) or (NO).

1. Asser's dad put down his spade.
2. There will be water chimes for relaxing sounds.
3. The boys had fun.
4. Mayar's favorite thing is the fountain.

B Read and answer the questions.

1. When does the garden open? ....

....

2. What can Asser help to plant? ....

....

Activities On Unit (4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Lake Nasser is the .... lake in Egypt.

a) big b) bigger c) biggest d) more big

Happy is an adjective, but happiness is a ....

a) verb b) noun c) adverb d) preposition

He asked us .... sounds we heard every day.

a) how b) what c) where d) when

She asked me if I .... to school.

a) go b) going c) went d) have gone

5. January is the .... month in the year.

a) cold b) coldest c) colder d) as cold

6. He .... me what I had seen.

a) told b) said c) asked d) warned

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. you - David - What - do - about - think - ?

....

2. is - My - the oldest - grandfather - the - in - family - .

....

3. my - keen on - I'm - helping - friends - .

....

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Guiding words: Your personal profile

(name - age - school - hobbies - plans)

....

....

....

....

....

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Schools give children a good ....
   a) meal b) education c) uniform d) party
2. Children start .... school at 7 years old.
   a) prep b) elementary c) high d) KG
3. .... people move from place to place.
   a) City b) Country c) Nomadic d) Egyptian
4. Teachers have to be .... with the timetable.
   a) hard b) flexible c) fast d) nice

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

about - me - opinion - that - think

Sherif: Mom, I'd really like to understand English better!

Mom: What do you 1) .... about speaking English all day with me?

Sherif: I don't know, Mom. In my 2) ...., it might be difficult.

Mom: What 3) .... speaking English while we have our lunch then?

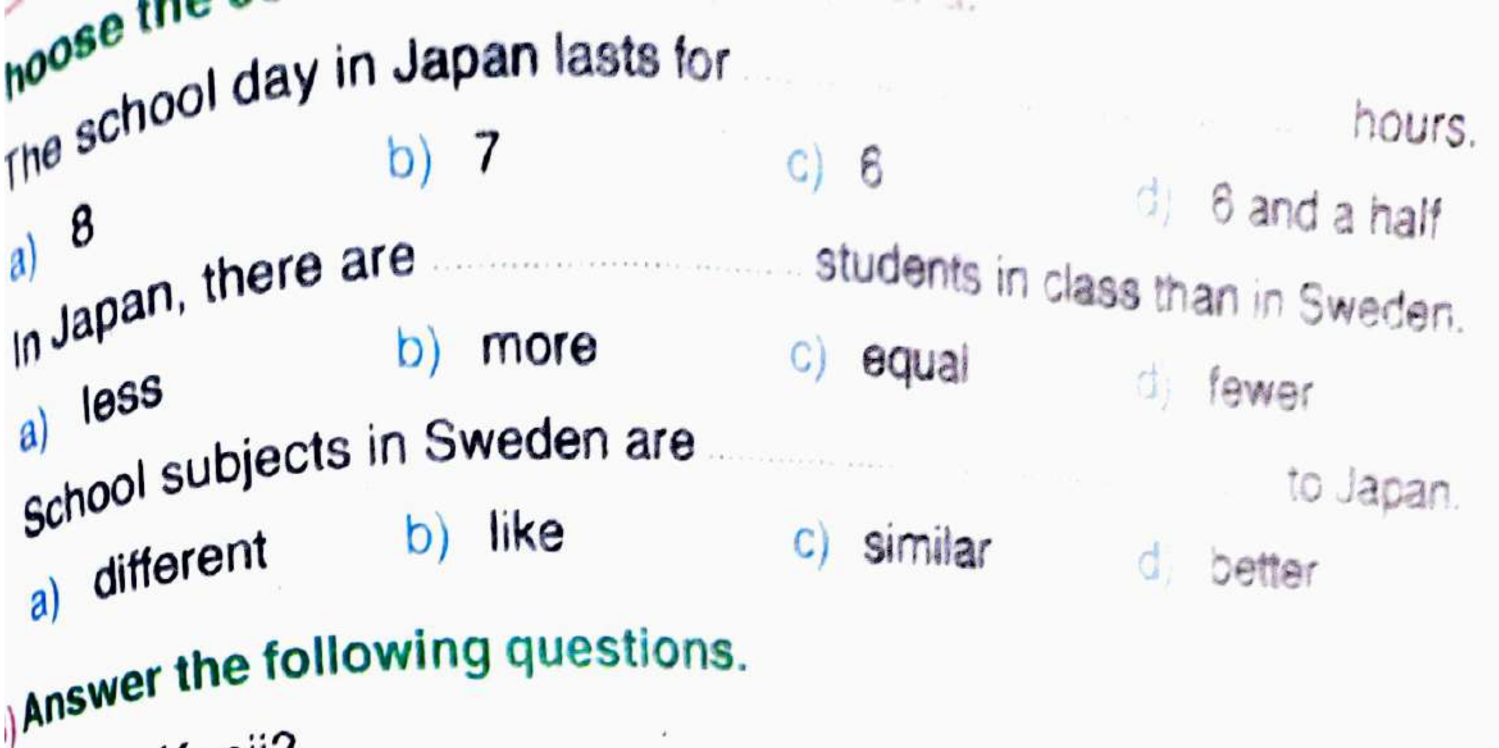
Sherif: To 4) ...., that's a much better idea!

Mom: Hooray! What about watching a movie in English this evening?

Sherif: I think that could work well. There's a fantastic movie I'd like to see. Thanks, Mom!

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

In most Japanese elementary schools, the school day starts at about 8:30 am and finishes at 3 pm. In Sweden, the school day starts at about 8 or 9 am. It often finishes earlier than Japanese schools, at 1 or 2 pm. In Japan, there are usually 30 to 40 students in a class, compared to Sweden, where there are usually 20 to 30 students. School subjects in Japan include Japanese, math, science, social studies, PE, music, and often English. Students also study traditional Japanese subjects like poetry and Kanji, which is Japanese script. They do homework every day, on weekends, and in the holidays. School subjects in Sweden are similar to Japan, but they don't study Japanese or the traditional subjects, and they don't have a lot of homework.



...hoose the ...

The school day in Japan lasts for .... hours.

a) 8 b) 7 c) 6 d) 6 and a half

In Japan, there are .... students in class than in Sweden.

a) less b) more c) equal d) fewer

School subjects in Sweden are .... to Japan.

a) different b) like c) similar d) better

...) Answer the following questions.

... What is Kanji?

....

5. When do students do homework in Japanese schools?

....



4 The Reader

A Read and write (YES) or (NO).

1. Asser would love to do something to help.
2. The parents have a surprise.
3. Shady and his dad invited Asser to come to the club.
4. Shady is Asser's cousin.



Read and answer the questions.

1. Where were Asser's parents?

....

2. How will the flowers smell?

....

Help yo...

Revision [illegible]

5 Choose the correct answer [illegible]

1. [illegible] go to school by car
a) [illegible] b) [illegible] c) never d) sometimes
2. [illegible] building in the world
a) [illegible] b) [illegible] c) tallest d) the tallest
3. [illegible] me feel happy
a) [illegible] b) [illegible] c) making d) to make
4. [illegible] to school
a) [illegible] b) [illegible] c) had gone d) goes
5. [illegible] I've ever done
a) [illegible] b) more difficult c) the most difficult d) as difficult
6. [illegible] using sign language in her class
a) [illegible] b) was c) are d) could

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences

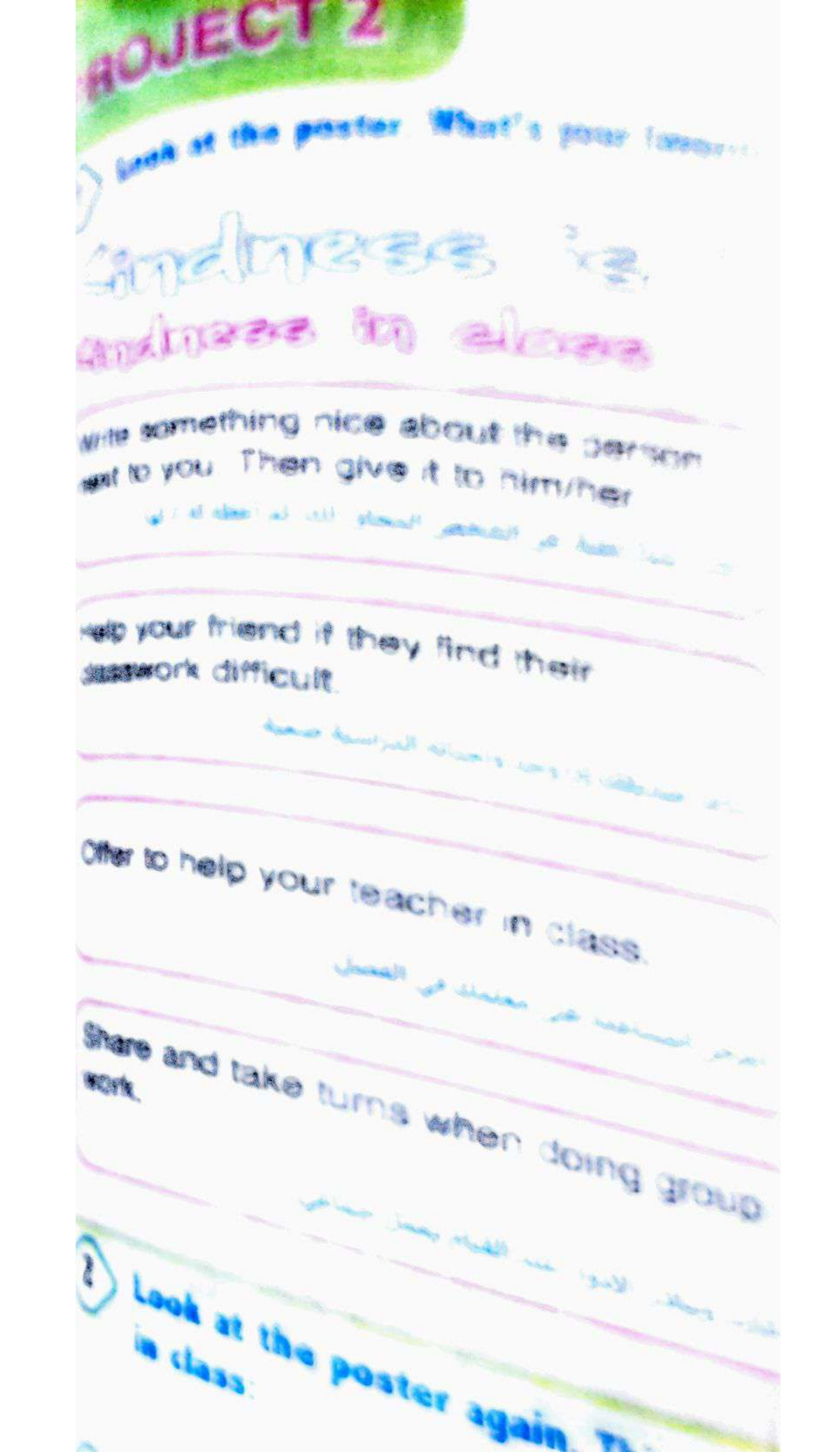
1. [illegible] My sister she so read can better
2. What [illegible] weekend the ?
3. [illegible] My [illegible] language body

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about

Your opinion about school trips

[illegible] words

[illegible] In addition - Finally)



PROJECT 2

1 Look at the poster. What's your favour...

Kindness is ...

Kindness in class

Write something nice about the person next to you. Then give it to him/her.

Help your friend if they find their classwork difficult.

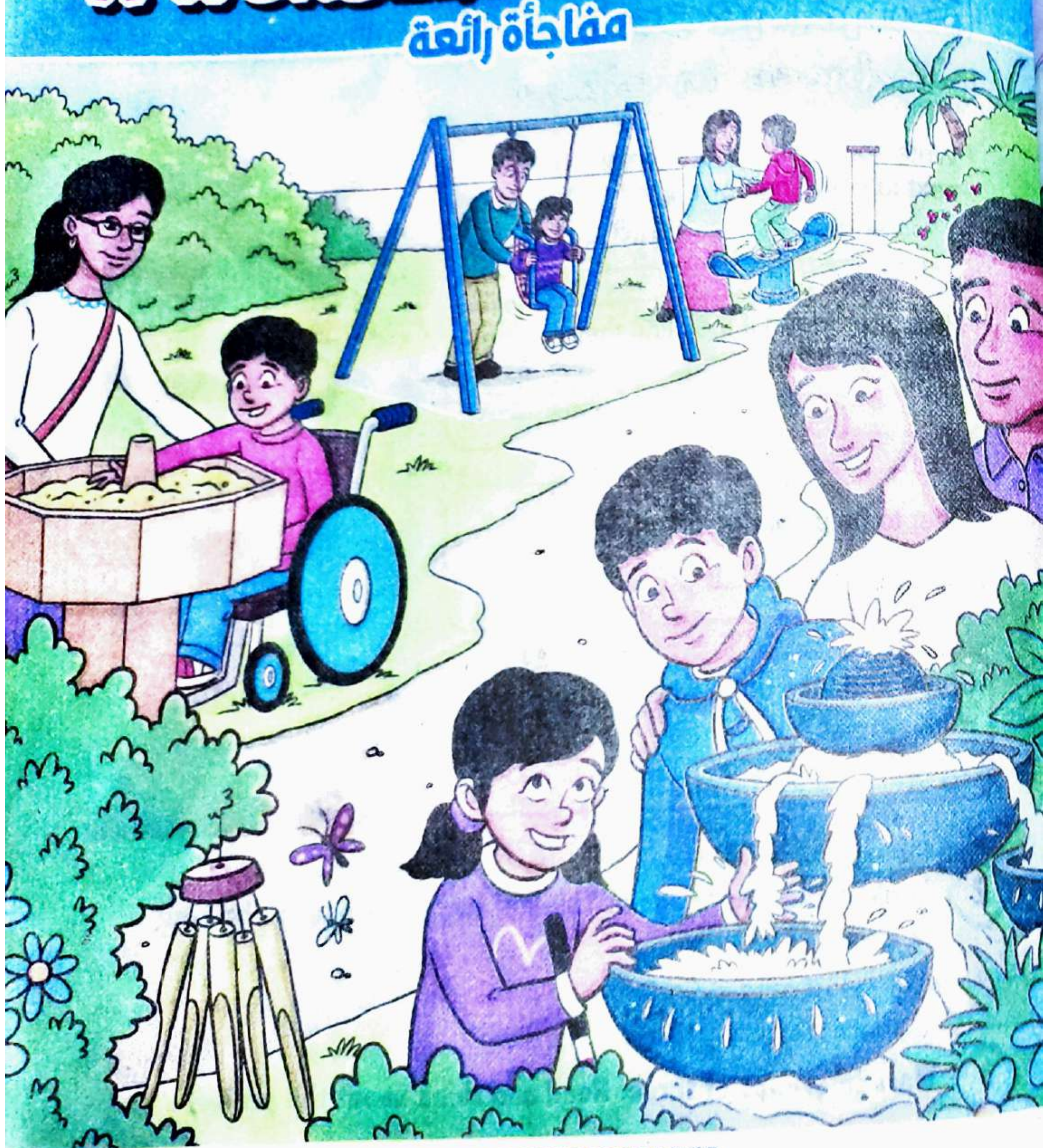
Offer to help your teacher in class.

Share and take turns when doing group work.

2 Look at the poster again. Th... in class:

FICTION READER
A WONDERFUL SURPRISE

مفاجأة رائعة



BY EMMA WILKINSON
ILLUSTRATED BY MATT WARD

The Characters



Asser

Mayar



Grandma



The children's dad



The children's mom



Shady's father



Shady



Mrs Azza



Mrs Eman

...lp your child identify the characters of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على شخصيات القصة.

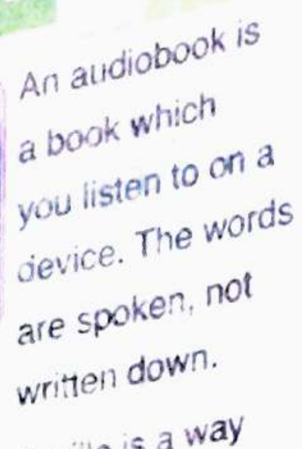
The Story

PICTURE DICTIO...



audiobook

كتاب صوتي



An audiobook is a book which you listen to on a device. The words are spoken, not written down.



braille

طريقة برايل (القراءة للمكفوفين)

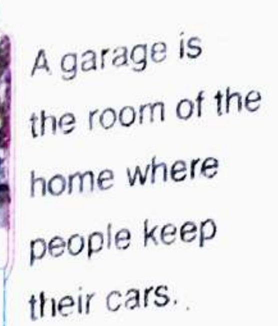
Braille is a way of writing words for people who can't see well. You touch the braille with your fingers to read it.



bush

شجيرة

A bush is a short tree with a lot of branches and leaves.





garage

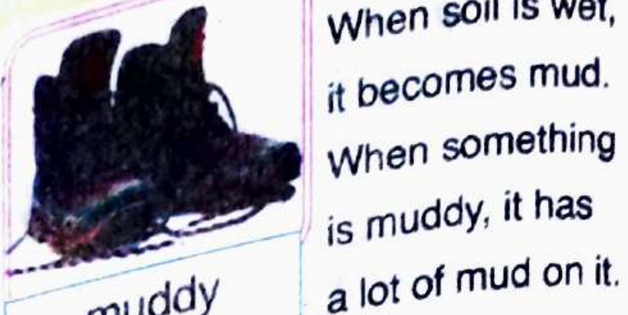
جراج - مرآب

A garage is the room of the home where people keep their cars.

hug

يحضن

You hug somebody when you put your arms around them. We hug a person to show we care.



muddy

موحِل

When soil is wet, it becomes mud. When something is muddy, it has a lot of mud on it.



secret

سر

A secret is something that you don't tell anybody, or want anybody to find out.



shovel

جاروف

A shovel is a tool for digging.

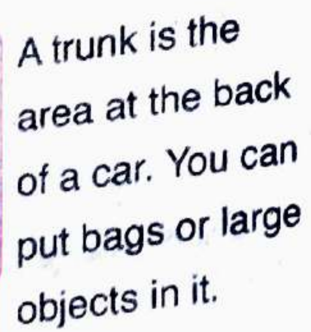




trunk

الصندوق الخلفي للسيارة

A trunk is the area at the back of a car. You can put bags or large objects in it.

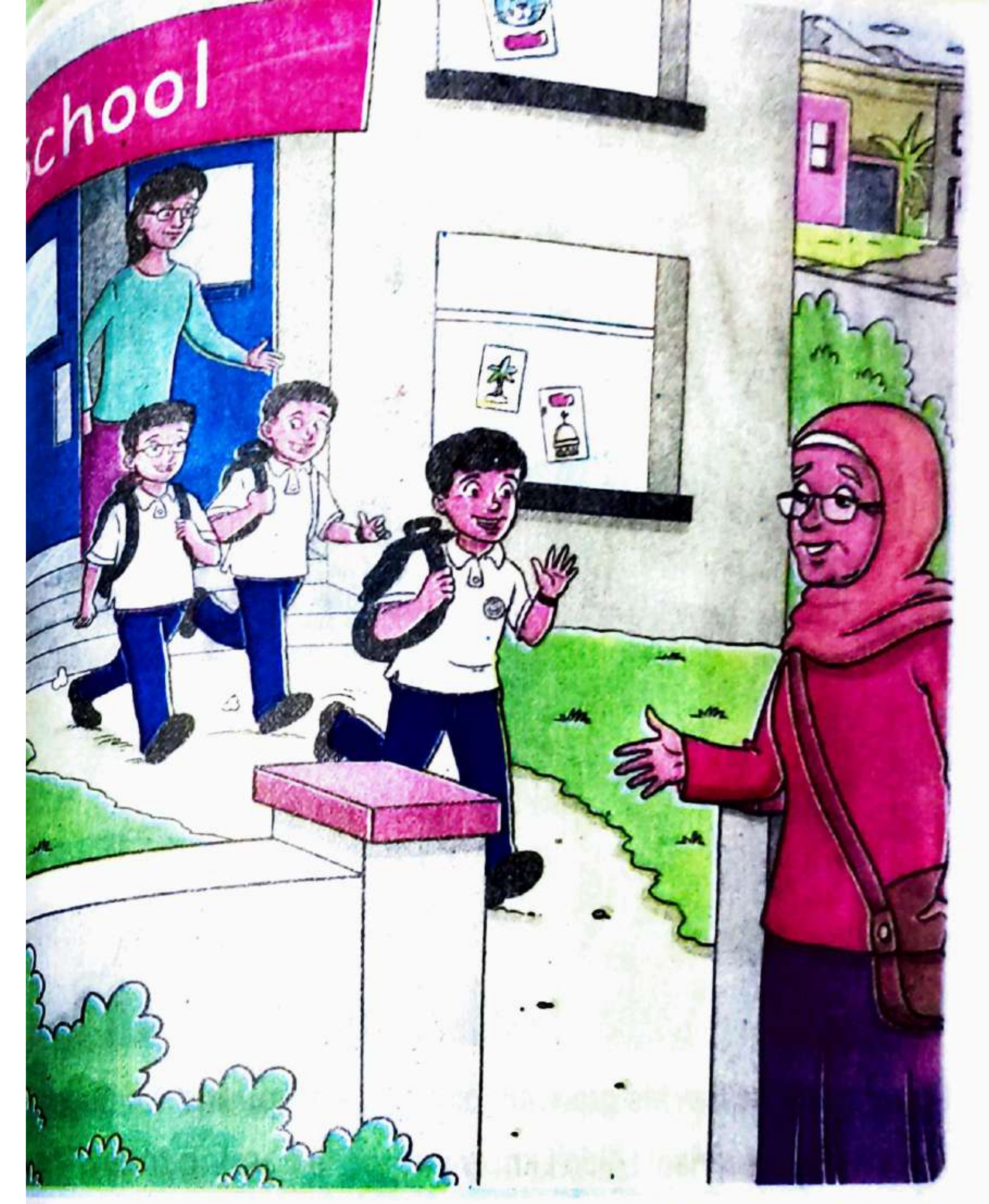




wind chime

الجرس الهوائي

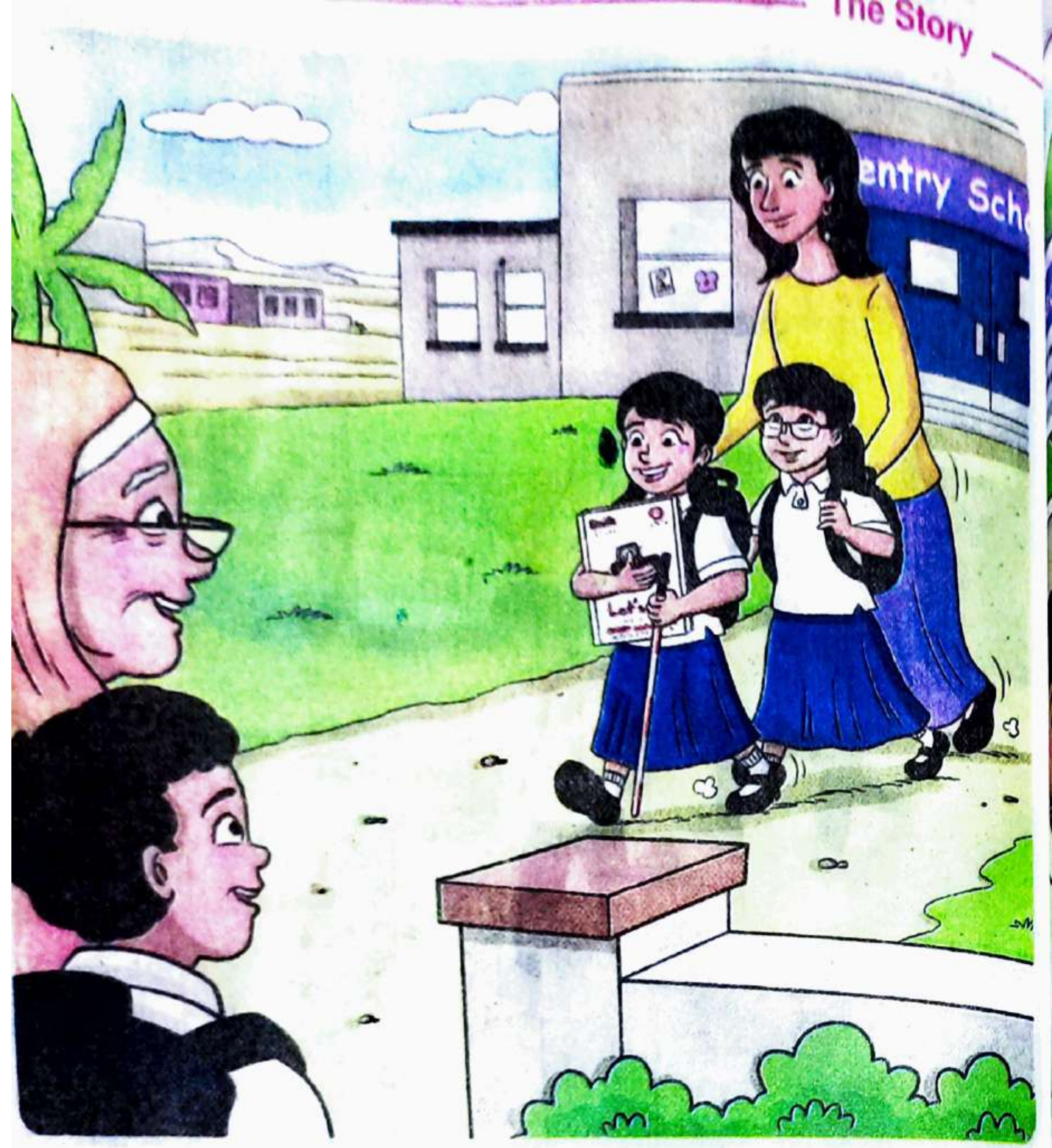
A wind chime is a decoration which makes a nice sound in the wind.



as the end of the school day, and Asser put his pens and pencils
ay neatly. He looked out of the classroom window for his mom, but
couldn't see her.

Eman, his teacher, took the children outside. Then Asser saw his
ndma waiting at the school gates. He smiled and waved at her.

كانت نهاية اليوم الدراسي ، ووضع آسر أقلامه الجاف والرصاص فى مكانها بعناية. نظر آسر من نافذة الفصل
والدته، لكنه لم يتمكن من رؤيتها. أخذت معلمته الأستاذة إيمان، الأطفال إلى الخارج. رأى آسر جدته تنتظ
بوابة المدرسة. ابتسم ولوَّح لها.



Asser loved it when his grandma picked him up, and he hugged her. "What a nice surprise! I didn't know you were coming today," he said. "Your mom is busy, so I'm here today," she smiled. "Now, where's your sister?"

They saw Mayar come out of her classroom. She was with her friends, and she was carrying a book. She looked very happy.

Mayar's teacher, Mrs Azza, came to talk to Grandma.

كان آسر يحب أن تصطحبه جدته، واحتضنها وقال: "يا لها من مفاجأة لطيفة! لم أكن أعلم أنك ستأتين اليوم."
قالت الجدة مبتسمة "أمك مشغولة، لذلك أنا هنا اليوم. الآن، أين أختك؟"
رأوا ميار تخرج من فصلها الدراسي. كانت مع صديقاتها، وكانت تحمل كتابًا. بدت سعيدة جدًا.
جاءت معلمة ميار الأستاذة عزة، للتحدث إلى الجدة.

Help your child read and follow the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



Mrs Azza said, "Mayar has a new book. It has words that you can read to her. It also has words in braille that she can read herself."

"Thank you!" said Grandma. "We can read this together this evening."

"Are we going to your house today, Grandma?" asked Mayar.

"Yes, we are. Your mom and dad are busy. Should we make cookies?"

"Yes, please!" said Asser and Mayar.

قالت الأستاذة عزة: "لدى ميار كتاب جديد. لديها الكلمات التي يمكنك أن تقرئيها لها. كما أن لديها كلمات بطريقة برايل يمكنها قراءتها بنفسها." قالت الجدة "شكرًا لك! يمكننا قراءة هذا معًا هذا المساء."

سألت ميار "هل نحن ذاهبون إلى منزلك اليوم، يا جدتي؟". قالت الجدة "نعم. أمك وأبوك مشغولان. هل يمكننا أن نُعِد الكعك؟" قال آسر وميار "نعم، من فضلك!"



The children stayed at Grandma's house until the evening. Their parents arrived after dinner.

"Thanks for having the children, Mom," said their mom.

"You're welcome, Salma! I love having them here!" replied Grandma.

"Did you have a good time with Grandma today?" asked their mom.

'Yes, of course! And look at my new book from school!" said Mayar.

"It's great. Let's read it when we get home," said their dad.

Their mom and dad were happy to see Mayar's new book. When Mayar was a baby, her mom and dad learned braille. They helped her to read. Now, they love reading with their daughter in the evenings.

بقي الأطفال في منزل الجدة حتى المساء. وصل والداهم بعد العشاء. قالت والدتهم: " شكرًا لمرافقتك الأطفال،
أمي". ردت الجدة "على الرحب والسعة، يا سلمى! أنا أحب وجودهم هنا!" سألت والدتهم "هل قضيتم وقتًا
الجدة اليوم؟" قالت ميار "نعم، بالطبع! وانظرى إلى كتابي الجديد من المدرسة!" قال والدهم
عندما نعود إلى المنزل. " كانت أمهم وأبوهم سعداء لرؤية كتاب ميار الجديد. عندما كانت ميار
وأبوها طريقة برايل. و ساعدوها على القراءة. الآن ، يحبون القراءة مع ابنتهم في المساء.

1 Read and write Yes or No.

1. Asser put his pens and pencils away neatly.
2. Asser looked out of the classroom door for his mom.
3. Mrs Eman, Asser's teacher, took the children outside.
4. Asser saw his father waiting at the school gates.
5. Asser loved it when his grandma picked him up.
6. Asser's mom is busy.
7. Asser and his grandma saw Mayar come out of her classroom.
8. Mayar was carrying a pen.
9. Mayar looked very sad.
10. Mayar has a new book.
11. Mayar's book has words in braille.
12. The children stayed at uncle's house.
13. Asser and Mayar have good time with Grandma.
14. Mom and dad were happy to see Mayar's new book.
15. When Mayar was a baby, her mom and dad didn't learn braille.

2 Read and answer the questions.

1. Who was waiting at the school gates? ....
2. Who was Mrs Eman? ....
3. What did Asser do when he saw his grandma? ....
4. Why did Grandma pick them up from school? ....
5. What was Mayar carrying? ....
6. Who was Mrs Azza? ....
7. What did the book have? ....
8. What did Grandma offer to make for Asser and Mayar? ....
9. Where did the children stay until the evening? ....
10. What did Mom and Dad learn when Mayar was a baby? ....

Part 2



The family all got in the car to go home. As Asser went to put the school bags in the open trunk, he noticed something strange. He saw his mom and dad's boots there, and they were muddy.

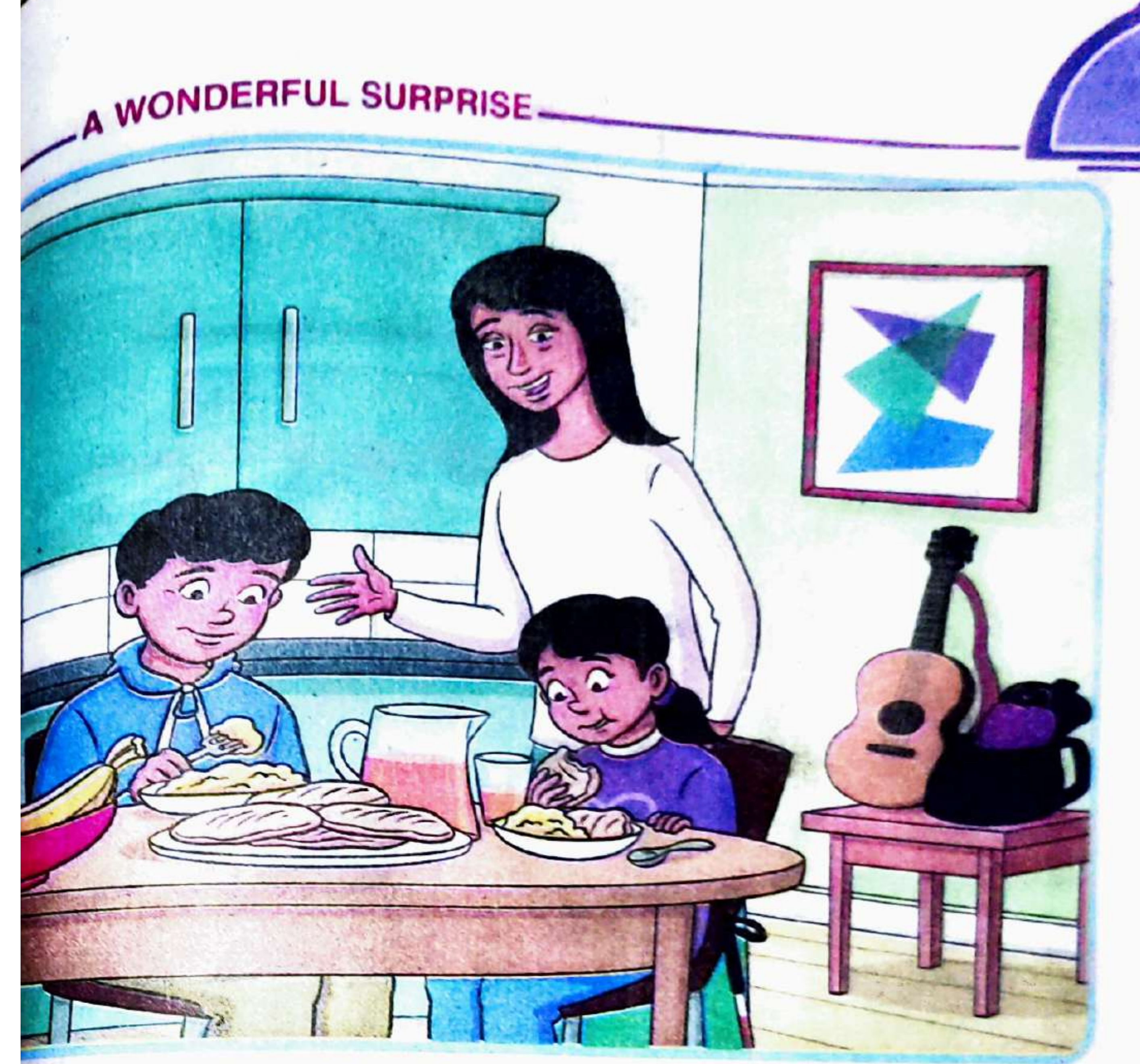
"Their boots are really muddy. Have Mom and Dad been to a farm?" thought Asser.

Asser then got into the car, and they all went home.

ركب جميع أفراد العائلة السيارة للعودة إلى المنزل. عندما ذهب آسر لوضع الحقائب المدرسية في صندوق السيارة المفتوح، لاحظ شيئًا غريبًا. رأى أحذية والدته وأبيه هناك، وكانوا مُوحِلين. فكر آسر "أحذيتهم مُوحِلة جدًا. هل ذهبت أمي وأبي إلى مزرعة؟" ثم ركب آسر السيارة ، وذهبوا جميعًا إلى المنزل.

Help your child read and follow the story

A WONDERFUL SURPRISE



he next morning, at breakfast, the children's mom said, "Grandma ill pick you up from school again today."

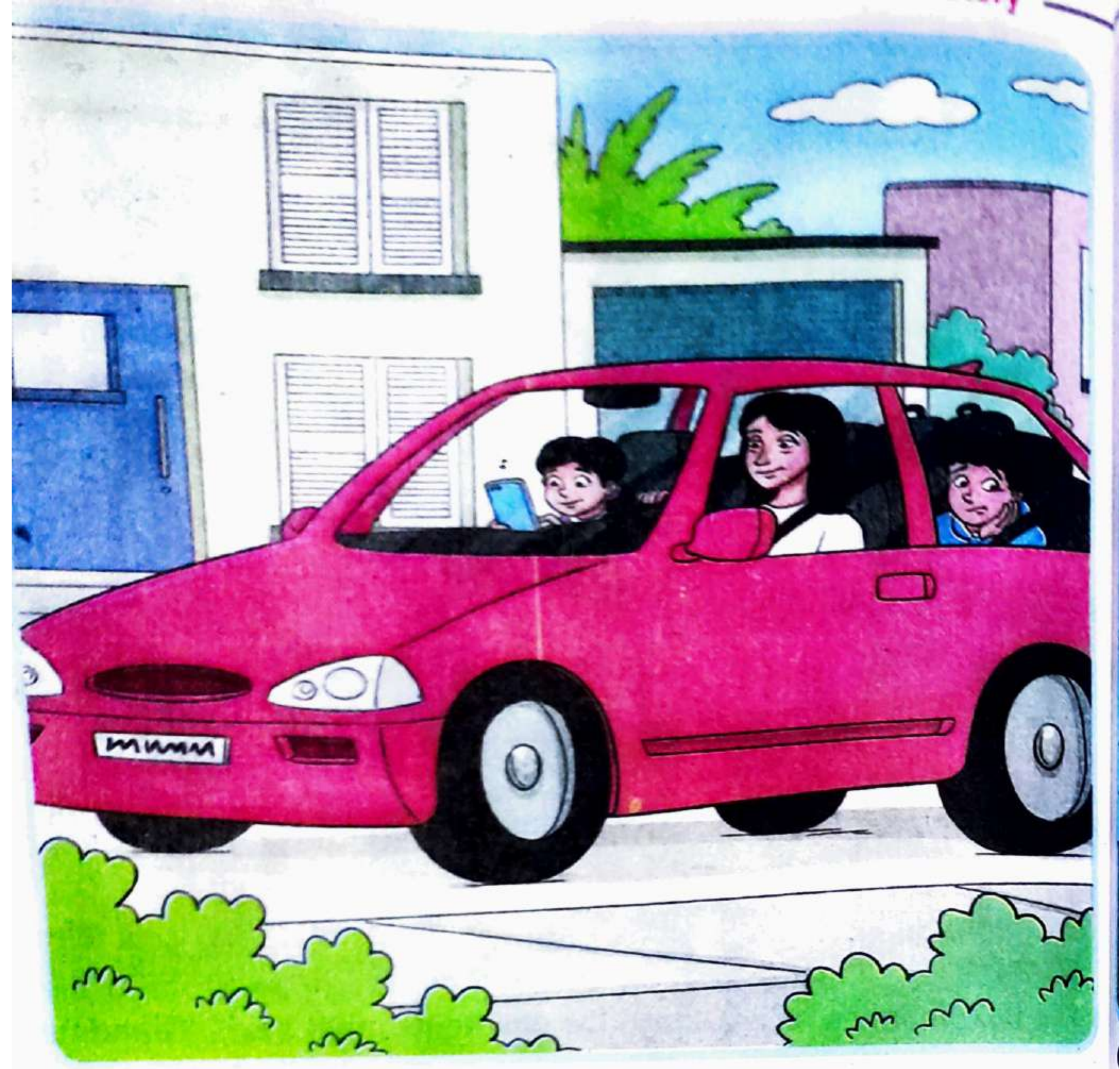
Are you going to be home late, Mom?" asked Asser.

Yes, I'm very busy this week. I'll pick you up from Grandma's at even o'clock."

OK," said Asser.

t's music club today, so don't forget your guitar, Asser. Mayar, you ave pottery classes at lunchtime, so remember your apron."

في صباح اليوم التالي، عند الإفطار قالت والدة الأطفال: "سوف تصطحبكم الجدة من المدرسة مرة أخرى اليوم" سأل آسر "هل ستعودين إلى المنزل في وقت متأخر يا أمي؟" قالت الأم "نعم ، أنا مشغولة جدًا هذا الأسبوع. سأصطحبكم من منزل الجدة الساعة السابعة." قال آسر: "حسنًا." قالت الأم "إنه نادي الموسيقى اليوم ، لذلك لا تنس جيتارك يا آسر. وأنت يا ميار، لديك دروس في صناعة الفخار في وقت الغداء، لذا تذكري المريلة الخاصة بك."



"Can we listen to an audiobook, Mom?" asked Mayar.

"Yes, of course," her mom said.

While Mayar and her mom chose an audiobook, Asser looked out of the window. He was thinking about his school concert next week. He hoped his parents remembered it. He really wanted them to come and watch him. Asser wanted to ask his mom about the concert, but she looked tired. He decided to ask her later.

سألت ميار "هل يمكننا الاستماع إلى كتاب صوتي، يا أمي؟" قالت والدتها: "نعم بالطبع." بينما كانت ميار ووالدتها يختاران كتابًا صوتيًا ، كان آسر ينظر من النافذة. كان يفكر في حفل مدرسته الموسيقي الأسبوع المقبل. كان يأمل أن يتذكر والداه ذلك. كان يريدهم حقًا أن يأتوا ويشاهدوه. أراد آسر أن يسأل والدته عن الحفل الموسيقي، لكنها بدت متعبة، فقرر أن يسألها لاحقًا.

Help your child read and follow the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



On the weekend, the parents were busy again. Salma planned to take the children to Grandma's. It was a beautiful day, so Asser decided to take his football.

He went to the garage to get this football. Outside the garage, he saw his dad's shovel. It was covered in mud. Asser looked around the yard. There was nothing different there, no new trees or plants. Why was the shovel so muddy?

"That's strange," thought Asser.

في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع، كان الوالدان مشغولين مرة أخرى. خططت سلمى لأخذ الأطفال إلى منزل الجدة. كان يومًا جميلاً، لذلك قرر آسر أن يأخذ كرة القدم. ذهب إلى المرآب لإحضار كرة القدم. خارج المرآب ، رأى جاروف والده. وكان مغطى بالطين. نظر آسر حول الفناء. لم يكن هناك شيء مختلف ، لا أشجار أو نباتات جديدة. لماذا كان الجاروف موحلًا جدًا؟ فكر آسر "هذا غريب."

Help your child read and follow the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



1 Read and write Yes or No.

1. The family all got in the car to go home.
2. Asser put the school bags in the open trunk.
3. Asser saw his mom and dad's boots in the trunk.
4. The boots were clean.
5. All the family went to the club.
6. Asser's mom isn't busy this week.
7. Asser's mom will pick him up from Grandma's at seven o'clock.
8. Asser and Mayar have pottery classes at lunchtime.
9. Asser was thinking about his school concert.
10. Asser wanted his parents to come and watch him.
11. Asser's mom looked relaxed.
12. Asser decided to take his jacket.
13. Asser went to the classroom to get his football.
14. Outside the garage, he saw his dad's shovel.
15. The shovel was so muddy.

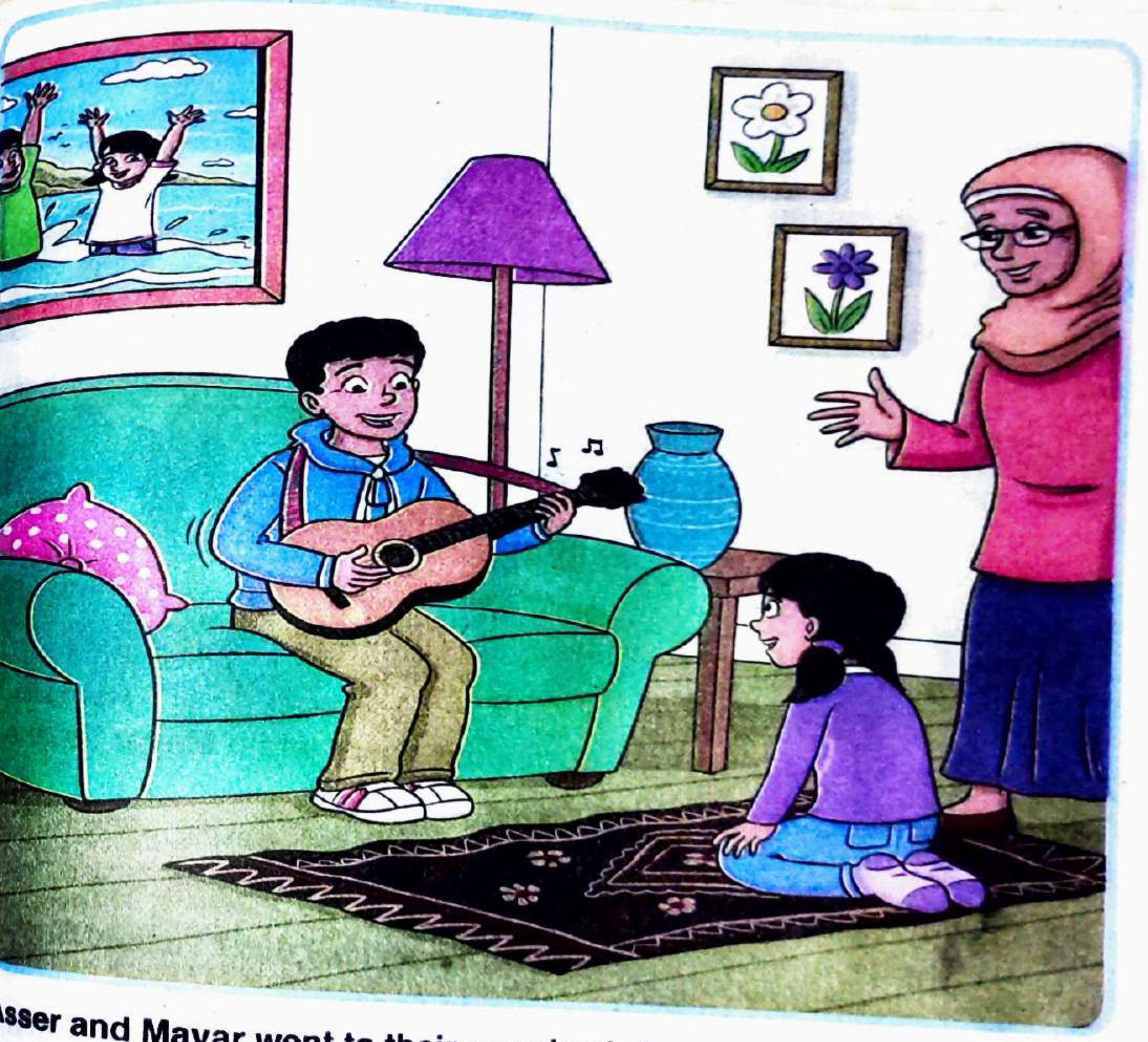
2 Read and answer the questions.

1. How did the family go home? ....
2. Where did Asser put the school bags? ....
3. How were his mom and dad's boots? ....
4. Who would pick up the children from school? ....
5. What club did Asser have? ....
6. What did Mayar take to pottery classes? ....
7. What did Mayar want to listen to? ....
8. What was Asser thinking about? ....
9. Where did Asser go to get his football? ....
10. What did he see outside the garage? How was it? ....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Part 3



sser and Mayar went to their grandma's house every day that week. sser was worried about the concert. He really wanted his mom and ad to go to the concert. He wanted them to hear him sing and play his uitar. Did they remember about it? They were so busy. He practiced is song a lot because he wanted the concert to go well.

ذهب آسر وميار إلى منزل جدتهما كل يوم في ذلك الأسبوع. كان آسر قلقًا بشأن الحفل الموسيقي. لقد أ
حقاً أن تذهب والدته وأبوه إلى الحفل الموسيقي. كان يريد أن يسمعوه يغني ويعزف على جيتاره. ه
تذكروا هذا الأمر؟ كانا مشغولين جدًا. لقد تدرب على أغنيته كثيرًا لأنه أراد أن يسير الحفل الموسيقي على ما يرام.

lp your child read and follow the story.



Later on, Asser was playing in Grandma's yard while Mayar listened to an audiobook. Asser's friend, Shady, came by.

"Hi, Asser. I didn't know you lived here," said Shady.

"It's my grandma's house," said Asser.

"Do you want to come to the park with me and my dad?" asked Shady.

"Yes, but I'll have to ask Grandma," said Asser.

Asser went inside. "Grandma, can I go to the park with Shady and his dad, please?" he said.

"Yes, of course. Take your water bottle!" replied Grandma.

في وقت لاحق، كان آسر يلعب في فناء بيت الجدة بينما كانت ميار تستمع إلى كتاب صوتي. جاء صديق آسر، شادي. قال شادي "مرحبًا، آسر. لم أكن أعرف أنك تعيش هنا". قال آسر: "إنه منزل جدتي".

سأل شادي "هل تريد أن تأتي إلى الحديقة معي ومع والدي؟"

قال آسر: "نعم، لكن عليّ أن أسأل جدتي".

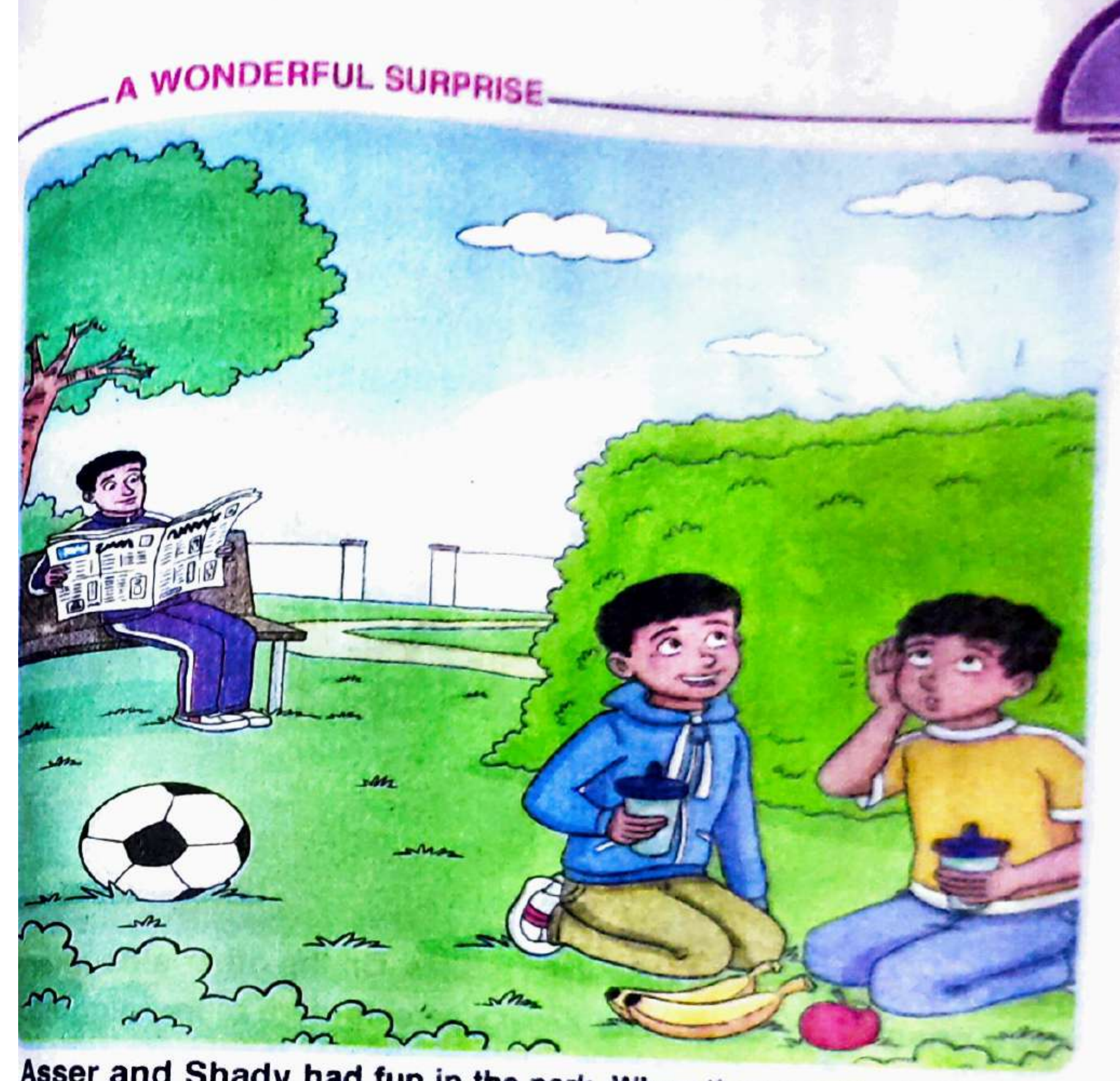
دخل آسر وقال "جدتي، هل يمكنني الذهاب إلى الحديقة مع شادي ووالده، من فضلك؟"

ردت الجدة "نعم، بالطبع. خذ زجاجة المياه الخاصة بك!".

Help your child read and follow the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة

A WONDERFUL SURPRISE



Asser and Shady had fun in the park. When they got tired, they sat down by some thick bushes. They drank some water and ate some fruit.

They were sitting quietly when they heard people talking.

"That sounds like your mom and dad," said Shady.

Asser looked around. Shady was right. It sounded like they were near – but where?

كان آسر وشادي يستمتعان في الحديقة. عندما تعبوا ، جلسوا بجانب بعض الشجيرات الكثيفة. شربوا بعض

الماء وأكلوا بعض الفاكهة.

كانوا يجلسون بهدوء عندما سمعوا أناسا يتحدثون.

قال شادي: " هذا يبدو مثل صوت والدتك وأبيك".

نظر آسر حوله. كان شادي على حق. بدا الأمر كما لو كانا قريبين - لكن أين؟

elp your child read and follow the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



Asser and Shady walked around the bushes. On the other side, there was a group of people working. Asser's parents were there, digging. Asser ran over to his parents. When his parents saw them, they looked surprised.

"Asser! What are you doing here?" asked his dad.

Asser replied, "Shady and his dad invited me to come to the park. Grandma said it was OK."

Asser looked down and saw his dad's muddy boots. "But what are you doing here?" he asked.

سار آسر وشادي حول الشجيرات. على الجانب الآخر ، كان هناك مجموعة من الأشخاص يعملون. كان والدا آسر هناك، يحفران.

ركض آسر إلى والديه. عندما رآهم والداه ، بدوا متفاجئين.

سأله والده :"آسر! ماذا تفعل هنا؟"

أجاب آسر" دعاني شادي ووالده للحضور إلى الحديقة. ووافقت الجدة." نظر آسر إلى الأسفل ورأى حذاء والده الموحِل، وسأل " ولكن ماذا تفعل هنا؟"

Help your child read and follow the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع احداث القصة.

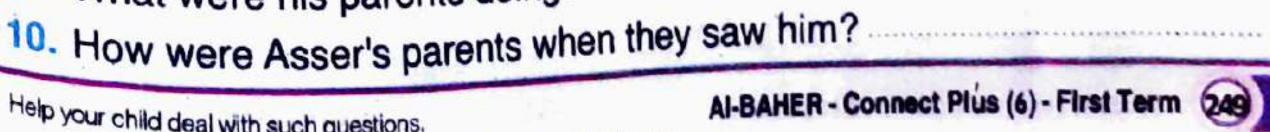


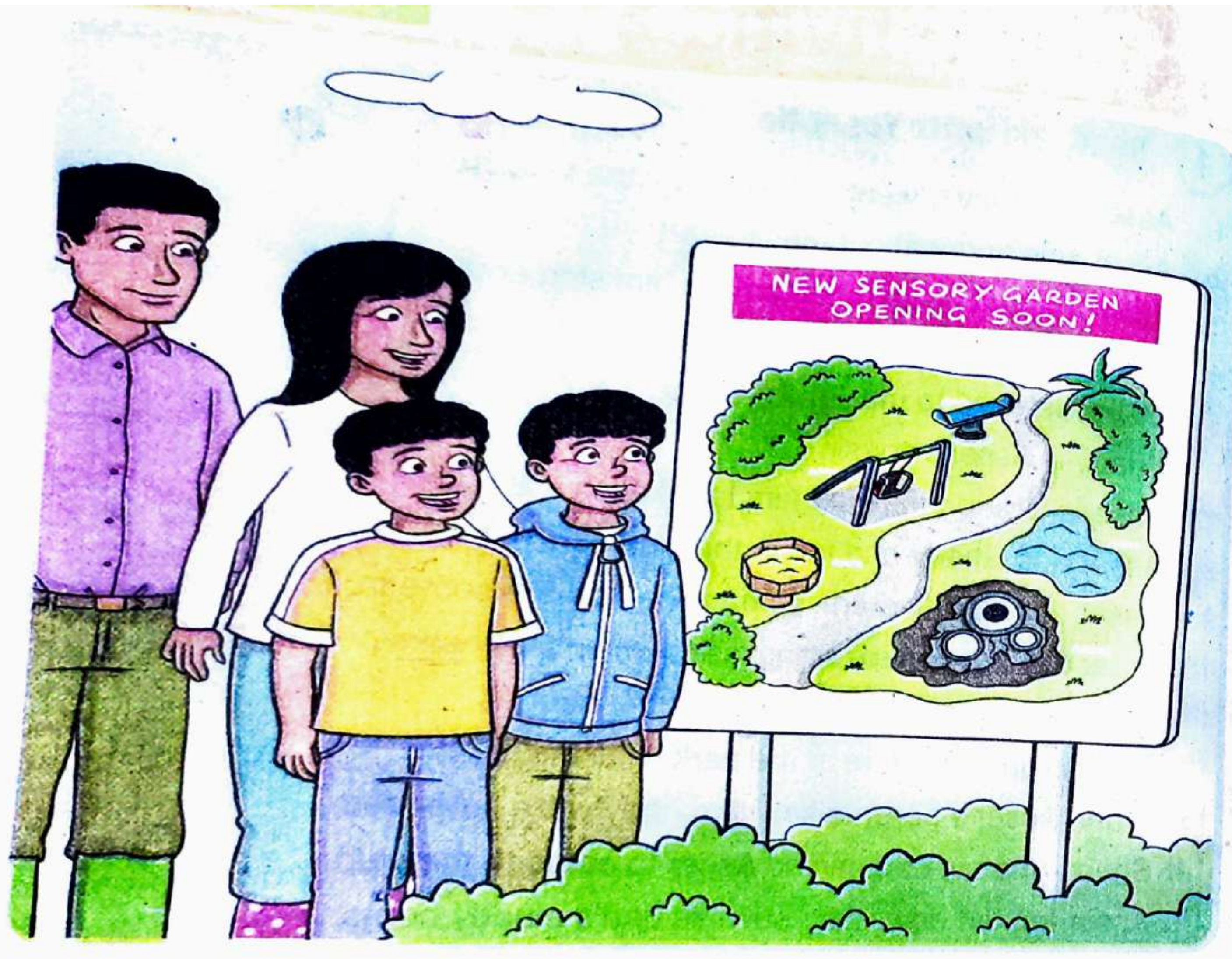
1 Read and write Yes or No.

1. Asser and Mayar went to their grandma's house.
2. Asser was angry about the concert.
3. Asser wanted his parents to hear him sing and play football.
4. Asser practiced his song a lot.
5. Mayar listened to music.
6. Shady is Asser's cousin.
7. Asser's Grandma asked him to take his water bottle.
8. Asser and Shady had fun in the club.
9. Asser and Shady drank some juice and ate some fruit.
10. Asser and Shady were sitting quietly when they heard people talking.
11. Asser and Shady walked around the bushes.
12. Asser's parents were in the park, walking.
13. When Asser's parents saw him, they were surprised.
14. Shady and his dad invited Asser to come to the club.
15. Asser looked down and saw his dad's muddy boots.

2 Read and answer the questions.

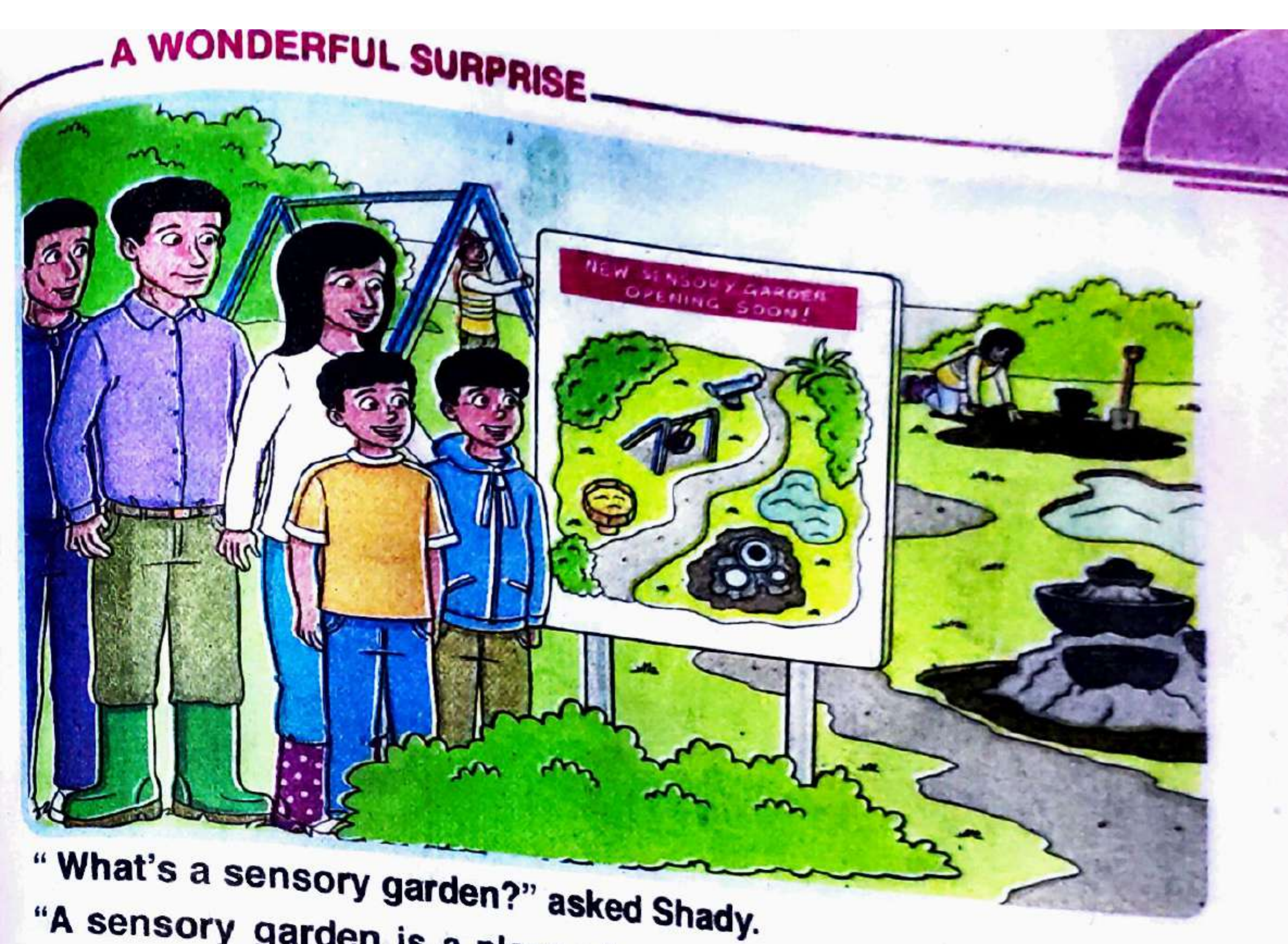
1. How often did Asser and Mayar go to Grandma's house that week? ....
2. What was Asser worried about? ....
3. Why did he practice his song a lot? ....
4. Who came by Grandma's house and spoke to Asser? ....
5. What did Shady invite Asser to do? ....
6. What did Grandma ask Asser to do? ....
7. What did Asser and Shady drink? ....
8. Where were Asser's parents? ....
9. What were his parents doing? ....
10. How were Asser's parents when they saw him? ....





Asser's parents looked at each other and laughed. His dad put down his spade. They showed Asser and Shady a large information board with a plan on it. The plan showed lots of exciting new play equipment.
"We're making a playground with a sensory garden. It's for all the children in the neighborhood to enjoy," said Salma.
Shady's dad arrived. "Wow! This is going to be amazing," he said.

نظر والدا آسر إلى بعضهما البعض وضحكا. وضع والده الجاروف. وعرضا على آسر وشادي لوحة معلومات كبيرة عليها خطة. بينت الخطة الكثير من معدات اللعب الجديدة والمثيرة.
قالت سلمى"نحن نصنع ملعبًا ذو حديقة حسية. إنها لجميع الأطفال في الحي لكي يستمتعوا."
وصل والد شادي وقال. "واو! سيكون هذا مذهلًا ."



" What's a sensory garden?" asked Shady.

"A sensory garden is a place where you can hear, see, and touch all kinds of interesting things," said Asser's dad. "Mayar and lots of other children couldn't use some of the equipment in the old playground. So, we're working with these builders to make a space that everybody can enjoy. There's a fountain, and there will be wind chimes for relaxing sounds. There will be wide paths, so it's easy for people in wheelchairs to enjoy the garden."

"We're planting flowers, too," said Asser's mom. "They will smell beautiful."

"This is awesome," said Asser. "Is this why you've been so busy?"

سأل شادي "ما هي الحديقة الحسية؟" قال والد آسر: " الحديقة الحسية هي مكان يمكنك فيه سماع ورؤية ولمس جميع أنواع الأشياء المثيرة للاهتمام. لم تتمكن ميار والكثير من الأطفال الآخرين من استخدام بعض المعدات في الملعب القديم. لذلك ، نحن نعمل مع هؤلاء البنائين لتوفير مساحة يمكن للجميع الاستمتاع بها. هناك نافورة ، وسوف يكون هناك أجراس لاصدار الأصوات المريحة. ستكون هناك مسارات واسعة ، لكى يسهل على الأشخاص الذين يستخدمون الكراسي المتحركة الاستمتاع بالحديقة." قالت والدة آسر:" نحن نزرع الزهور أيضا. ستكون رائحتها جميلة." قال آسر:" هذا رائع. هل هذا هو السبب في أنك كنت مشغولة للغاية؟"

Help your child read and follow the story.



"Yes, it is! We didn't tell you about it because it's a surprise!" said his dad.

"I'd love to do something to help, too!" said Asser.

"Great!" said his mom. "The builders are putting in the big equipment next week, but you can help us plant the flowers."

'You can hang the wind chimes, too," said his dad.

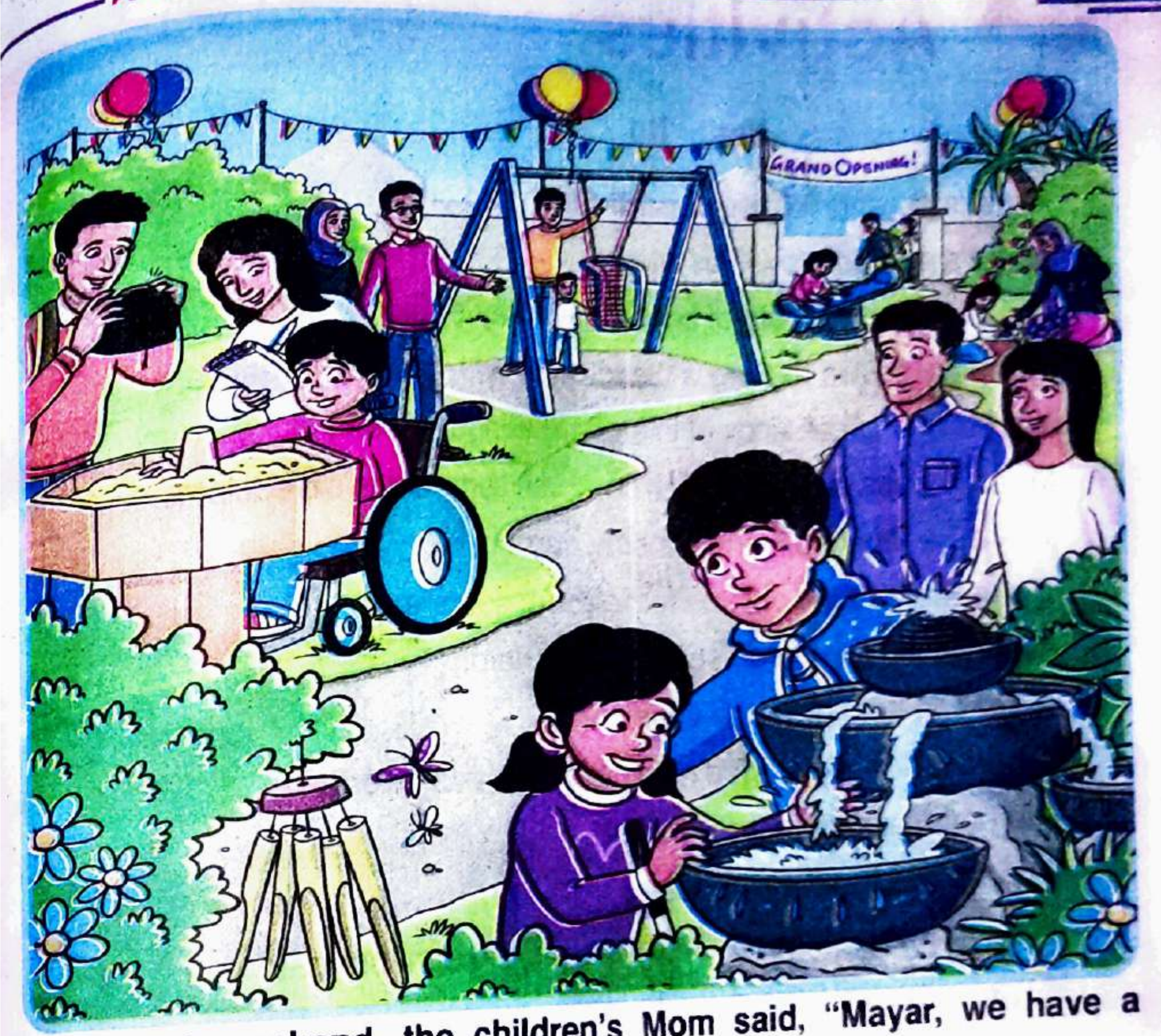
Asser and Shady started helping. It was hard work, but the boys had un.

'Thank you for helping!" said Asser's mom. "When this opens next week, you can come and show everybody around."

قال والده "نعم، إنه كذلك! لم نخبرك عن ذلك لأنها مفاجأة!" قال آسر"أحب أن أفعل شيئًا للمساعدة أيضًا!"
قالت والدته "عظيم! سوف يضع عمال البناء المعدات الكبيرة الأسبوع المقبل، ولكن يمكنك مساعدتنا في زراع
الزهور." قال والده: " يمكنك تعليق أجراس الرياح أيضًا." بدأ آسر وشادي في المساعدة. لقد كان عملاً شاقً
لكن الأولاد استمتعوا. قالت والدة آسر"شكرًا لكما على المساعدة! عندما يفتتح هذا الأسبوع المقبل ، يمكنك
المجئ واصطحاب الجميع جول الحديقة ."

Help your child read and follow the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.

A WONDERFUL SURPRISE



The next weekend, the children's Mom said, "Mayar, we have a surprise!" "What is it?" asked Mayar.
"We can't tell you. It's a secret. Let's all go to the park," said Mayar's dad.
Asser enjoyed showing Mayar around the sensory garden.
"I love it here! The fountain is my favorite thing!" said Mayar.
"Thank you for helping us, Asser," said their mom, "and don't worry – we haven't forgot your concert!"

في نهاية الأسبوع التالي، قالت والدة الأطفال "ميار، لدينا مفاجأة!" سألت ميار "ما هي؟" قال والد ميار: "لا يمكننا إخبارك. إنه سر. هيا بنا نذهب جميعًا إلى الحديقة."
استمتع آسر باصطحاب ميار حول الحديقة الحسية.
قالت ميار "أنا أحب ذلك المكان! النافورة هي الشيء المفضل لدي!"
قالت والدتهم: "شكرًا لك على مساعدتنا يا آسر، ولا تقلق - لم ننس حفلك الموسيقي!"

Help your child read and follow the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



Activities

1 Read and write Yes or No.

1. Asser's parents looked at each other and cried.
2. Asser's dad put down his spade.
3. The plan showed lots of boring new play equipment.
4. The parents are making a playground with a sensory garden.
5. You can't touch all kinds of interesting things in a sensory garden.
6. Mayar and lots of other children could use some of the old equipment.
7. There's a fountain in the sensory garden.
8. There will be wind chimes for relaxing sounds.
9. Asser would love to do something to help.
10. Asser can help plant the vegetables.
11. Asser and Shady started helping. It was easy work.
12. The boys had fun in the park.
13. The parents have a surprise.
14. Asser enjoyed showing Shady around the sensory garden.
15. Mayar's favorite thing is the fountain.

Read and answer the questions.

What did Asser's dad put down? ....

What did the parents show Asser and Shady? ....

What were they making? ....

What is there in the sensory garden? ....

What were they planting? ....

Why will there be wide paths? ....

How can Asser help? ....

When does the garden open? ....

What did Asser enjoy doing with Mayar? ....

What did Mayar like in the sensory garden? ....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



General Activities



Look and write.

Asser - Grandma - Mayar - the children's mom - Shady - the children's dad



....



....



....



....



....



....

2 Complete the sentences with names from Exercise 1.

1. She meets Asser and Mayar at the school gate. ....
2. She has pottery classes. ....
3. He is playing in a concert next week. ....
4. They are very busy. ....
5. He goes to the park with Asser. ....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3 Put the events of the story in order.

1. Asser finds a muddy shovel by his garage.
2. Mayar gets a big surprise.
3. Asser's grandma takes Mayar and Asser to her house after school.
4. Asser goes to the park with Shady and Shady's dad.
5. Asser finds muddy boots in his mom and dad's car.
6. Asser helps his mom and dad in the park.
7. Asser finds out his mom and dad have a secret.
8. Asser's mom says she and Asser's dad are very busy.

4 Correct the mistakes in the sentences in your notebook.

1. Mrs Azza gave Asser a braille book.

   ....

2. Grandma and the children made a cake together.

   ....

3. Asser found some muddy boots on the seat of the car.

   ....

4. Mayar wants to listen to the radio in the car.

   ....

5. Asser took his bike to Grandma's house.

   ....

6. Asser practiced the piano for the school concert.

7. Asser and Shady sat by some tall trees in the park.

8. Asser and Shady heard Shady's parents talking in the park.

5 Ask and answer with a partner.

1. Why did Asser's parents have muddy boots?

2. What was Asser's parents' secret?

3. How did Asser find out his parents' secret?

4. How do you think Asser felt about his concert at the end of the story?

5. Why did Asser look out of the classroom window?

6. Where did Asser put the school bags?

7. What was Asser worried about?

8. What did Asser's parents show him?

9. What did Mayar's parents learn when she was a baby?

....

10. What did Salma plant that day?

....

11. How did Asser's parents look when they saw him?

....

12. What was Mayar's favorite thing?

....

13. What was Mayar carrying?

....

14. How were the parents boots?

....

15. Who invited Asser to go the park?

....

16. What is a sensory garden?

....

17. What does the new book have?

....

18. What did Asser hope?

....

19. What were Asser's parents doing in the park?

....

20. Why didn't the parents tell Asser about the sensory garden?

....

Help your child deal with such questions.
طفلك ان يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Listening Texts

Unit (1)

Lesson (1)

If you prefer using technology, you could use your computer skills to make an animation. Moving pictures can tell a great story! There are so many things you can do! How do you like to express yourself?

Lesson (2)

Noha feels happy when she's painting. If she's sad, she paints. She likes painting trees and animals. Hesham isn't good at painting. He prefers making things with his hands. He likes sculpture and junk modeling.

Lesson (4)

Anish Kapoor is a sculptor. He was born in India n 1954, and moved to London, UK, to study art in 1973. He likes to use new and interesting shapes as well as different materials. Kapoor makes very arge pieces of art for public places, and people can see his art all over the world.

Lesson (5)

Interviewer: Wow, Mazen! The concert was amazing! You're so talented!

Mazen : Thank you so much! I loved it, but I'm always tired after a concert!

Interviewer: I'm not surprised. You played the guitar and sang for over an hour!

Mazen : It went very quickly. But nobody knew about the problem I had before the concert.

Lesson (6)

y class worked on a pottery project at school is week. We started with a lump of clay, and we hose what to make. I wanted to make a bowl. irst, the teacher showed us how to use a pottery heel. Then it was our turn. We put on aprons ver our clothes. When I put my clay on the wheel, went fast. It was difficult, and I got messy.

Lesson (7)

It was two weeks until the school show, and everybody was excited. Everybody except Magdy. "I'm going to play the piano," said Waleed. "The choir is going to sing beautiful songs," said Neama. "And I'm going to make costumes for the choir," said Dalia. "I've written a funny play!" said Samir. Magdy was worried. He didn't go to piano lessons, and he didn't like singing.

Activities on Unit (1)

If you can't find anything you want to wear, how about designing and making your own clothes? You can use recycled cloth to save money and help the planet. If you prefer using technology, you could use your computer skills to make an animation. Moving pictures can tell a great story!

Unit (2)

Lesson (1)

We moved into a new apartment a month ago, and I'm so happy because I have a new bedroom! I love my new room. It's a very light and comfortable room. I share it with my brother, Maged, and we're good friends.

Lesson (2)

Did you know that a Polish-American man called Stephen Poplawski invented the blender in 1922? He put a sharp blade in the bottom of a tall glass. When the blade turns, it chops the food. He added a small motor. The motor turned the blade, which blended the food together. He used his new invention to make milkshakes.

Lesson (3)

Mom : Hi Mariam, how was your day?

Mariam: Oh, hi Mom! It was a strange day, actually. We had a power outage! My class and I were looking at the interactive whiteboard, when suddenly all the information disappeared.

Mom : Really? That is strange!

Lesson (4)

It's the Year 2089, and life on Earth is sweet! Humans have easy lives because every family has a Bill robot which works 24 hours a day for them. The Bill robots do all their chores.

Lesson (5)

The family are happy doing their chores. It is early on Sunday. Mom is mopping up the water. Dalia is hanging up the clothes. Dina is putting out the garbage. Ahmed is tidying up his room.

Lesson (6)

What equipment does a cat need? A cat needs a scratch post. This is a strong wooden pole which the cat can sharpen its claws on. Cats also like toys to play with. A collar with the cat's name and address on it is a good idea. If your cat gets lost, somebody can bring it home to you.

Lesson (7)

In the spare room, Sameh and Nadine found some old boxes. Sameh looked in one of the boxes and found a little house and a doll. The doll was beautiful, and underneath, there was a birthday card: To Monira on your birthday, much love, Grandma. Just then, their Dad called them downstairs.

Activities on Unit (2)

Mom and Dad's bedroom is next to ours. Their bedroom is the same size as ours, but they have their own bathroom. I prefer our bedroom - my favorite thing about it is that we have space for our hobbies and for our friends.

Review (1)

I love watching cartoons after school. I think they're really funny. My favorite one is about a cat that can fly and talk. There are stories about the cat, too. I sometimes swap comic books with my friends so we can all read the stories.

Unit (3)

Lesson (1)

In Egypt, some classes have their lessons in a garden on the roof of the school! The Shagara at School project designs gardens and green roofs for schools in Egypt. Green roofs are gardens on the top of a building. They bring nature into the city. They also clean and cool the air.

Lesson (2)

My name is Omar, and I go to primary school in Cairo, Egypt. I started school in kindergarten when I was five. Now I am twelve. I'm in Grade 6. I like my school very much. I would like to be a teacher of English one day.

Lesson (3)

Last week, our club went for a walk in the park. When our teacher pointed to an object, we took a photograph of it but we could only take one photo! So, we had to look carefully and decide where to stand. It was fun and it made me excited about the subject. When we compared our photos later, they were really different!

Lesson (4)

New students and their families are welcome to join us for our Open Day on 25th May.

Open day schedule :

9 am New students and families arrive at the school Presentation by the principal

10 am Tour of the school buildings.

First, see our new Green Library. Why is it green? Because all its electricity comes from solar panels on the roof.

Lesson (5)

When Lina got on the bus, she looked at the bridge. Seeing it broken made her sad . Their life would be different until someone repaired it. She enjoyed going across it in the mornings, and walking up the hill on the other side. She was often the first to arrive at school. Now she would be late!

Lesson (7)

"There's a snake!" somebody shouted. Everyone looked. A small, brown snake was moving across the classroom floor. The boy tri[illegible] to push the snake away, but it bit his hand and [illegible] screamed.

Activities on Unit (3)

Hi, my name's Lilly, and I go to middle schoo[illegible] San Francisco, USA. I started school in Kindergarten when I was six. Now I'm eleven, [illegible]



Listening Texts

'm in Grade 6. I like my school. In Kindergarten, ve played a lot, and there were always lots of oys in the classroom. We do more writing now n Grade 6, and we do more interesting subjects, ike ICT. I like using computers!

Unit (4)

Lesson (1)

Today, our teacher, Mrs Mona, asked us, "How are we different to each other?" That's an easy question to answer! Asser is very tall. He's taller than everyone else in the class. I'm very short. I have green eyes and Asser has brown eyes. Seleem's hair is curly, but Waleed's hair is very straight, and he wears glasses. Injy wears braces to help her teeth get straight. Amal uses a wheelchair because she cannot walk well.

Lesson (3)

David Aguilar has a prosthetic arm. David's prosthetic arm is made of plastic bricks. Most prosthetic arms are expensive but David can make them cheaply. David's message for other people is " a disability shouldn't stop you".

Lesson (4)

Grade 6 children are working on a poster. Mrs Randa wants everyone to get into groups to make posters about animals that live in tropical rainforests. It should be an advertisement for the rainforest. She would like colorful posters with lots of interesting information.

Lesson (5)

Many years ago, a herd of elephants lived in India. They were happy, and their leader, the queen, was the kindest and best of the elephants. During the day, it was very hot, and the elephants liked to swim in the lake.

Lesson (6)

Dalia is eleven years old and she lives in Alexandria. She goes to school at Alex Modern School. It's a great school, and she has great friends. She's quite tall and has long brown hair. She wears braces, too.

Lesson (7)

Adam was pulling himself up on Hana's walker, and Hana was talking to him quietly. His mom was so thankful that Hana found him. We were all so relieved and happy, and we had an ice cream to celebrate!

Activities on unit (4)

These are my friends at school. Shady is tall and wears glasses. Laila is very kind. She has straight hair. Amira loves drama and reading and always has books in her hands. Seleem is great at math. He has short hair and wears braces.

Review (2)

Schools around the world all want to do the same thing – to give children a good education . In some countries, children start elementary school at seven years old. In other countries, the children are younger. In other countries in Africa, for example, Kenya, some people have a nomadic culture, where they move from place to place. This means their teacher has to be flexible with the timetable. The teacher chooses subjects which are the most important at different times.

Let's Remember

Lesson (1)

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. who 2. beauty 3. spending
4. help 5. Everything 6. going
7. anybody 8. too 9. boil 10. if

2) Circle the correct words:

1. patience 2. everybody 3. don't
4. learning 5. too 6. can
7. lucky 8. might

3) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Can you take photos of the ruins?
2. Is it easy to sleep in a bright room?
3. Have they made the salad yet?
4. Do you like going shopping?

Lesson (2)

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. been 2. made 3. told
4. out 5. interview 6. popular

2) Read and correct.

1. had 2. swum 3. eat
4. will see 5. hasn't finished 6. would run

3) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. I have been to Australia.
2. I feel excited when it is my birthday.
3. I want to be an astronaut.
4. My dad was very happy that I got 100%.

Unit (1)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. skills 2. animation
3. story 4. do

2) Read and complete the text.

1. creative 2. exhibition
3. express 4. painting

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. leaves 2. beads 3. cardboard
4. clay 5. computer 6. cloth

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1. Britain 2. natural 3. make
4. His works.
5. Because they are in the wind, sun, and rain.

5) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. What can you make with a cardboard box?
2. I like to make a collage.
3. He has made a bowl with some clay.

Lesson (2)

Practice (P. 24)

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. feel 2. don't feel 3. get
4. mix 5. puts 6. use 7. wake

2) Correct the underlined words.

1. dries 2. can 3. visit
4. arrive 5. get

Activities

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. happy 2. paints
3. painting 4. sculpture

2) Read and complete the dialog.

1. competition 2. painting
3. feel 4. creative

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. feel 2. find 3. make
4. make 5. set 6. take
7. wear 8. cries

4) Correct the underlined words.

1. make 2. mix 3. clean
4. leave 5. use

5) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. How does Noha feel when she paints?
2. Why doesn't Noha like pottery?
3. If it starts to rain, use an umbrella.

Lesson (3)

1) Circle the words that rhyme.

1. moon - soon 2. be - sea
3. trees - leaves 4. away - play
5. draw - wall

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. brightly 2. up 3. sound
4. breath 5. verse 6. rhyme

3) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Rockets take off noisily with flashes of light.
2. The sky shines brightly.

Model Answers

3. The sky is dark and far away.
4. We see fireworks dance happily

Lesson (4)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. sculptor 2. India 3. art 4. world

2) Read and complete the text.

1. Gate 2. walk
3. steel 4. Chicago

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1. sculpture 2. irregular 3. bright
4. Math and materials.
5. Stainless steel.

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. sculptor 2. India 3. art
4. materials 5. sphere 6. sculptor
7. reflects 8. bubble

5) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. People can walk under Cloud Gate.
2. Where is Anish Kapoor from?
3. Nahdet Misr was first displayed in 1928.

6) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Balloon Dog is a famous sculpture. It is by Jeff Koons. The sculpture is 3.5 meters. It's made of stainless steel. It's located in about 20 different places around the world. There are lots of Balloon Dogs!

Lesson (5)

Practice (P. 42)

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. before 2. on 3. in
4. in 5. behind 6. on 7. in

2) Read and correct:

1. on 2. At 3. for
4. into 5. under

Activities

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. amazing 2. tired 3. guitar 4. before

2) Read and complete the text.

1. magazine 2. concert 3. talented 4. songs

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. stage 2. award 3. writes
4. talented 5. nervous 6. practicing
7. talented 8. after 9. in
10. under 11. At 12. for
13. after 14. next 15. on

4) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. I try to breathe slowly before a concert.
2. On Fridays we go to the park.
3. What do you hope to do one day?

Lesson (6)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. pottery 2. lump 3. wheel 4. aprons

2) Read and complete the text.

1. wheel 2. kiln 3. hard 4. decorate

3) Write a report of 70 words about:

My class worked on a candle project. We started with a lump of wax. We melted it. We poured wax in cups and put some perfume. We used some wicks into them. We used small sticks to make them stand. I painted them in different colors.

Lesson (7)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. weeks 2. choir 3. Dalia 4. play

2) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1. advertisement 2. change 3. camera
4. A man playing the piano on stage.
5. From his dad's photography books.

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. edit 2. play 3. choir
4. worried 5. photographer
6. exhibition 7. lines 8. costumes

4) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

I like photography. It's my favorite hobby. I took a course to learn it. I read some books about photography. I practice it ever day. My dad bought me a modern camera. Now, I can take nice photos and edit them on the computer. I'm going to take part in a school show next week. I'll be the photographer. My photos will be on the school website. I'm very excited.

Activities on Unit (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. design 2. recycled
3. animation 4. story

2) Read and complete the dialog.

1. competition 2. What
3. painting 4. creative

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1. India 2. Spain 3. sphere
4. He is a sculptor.
5. It's made of 73 stainless steel balls or spheres.

4) The Reader

A) Read and write Yes or No.

1. Yes 2. No 3. Yes 4. No

B) Read and answer the questions.

1. He smiled and waved at her.
2. Because she was busy.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. mix 2. on 3. When 4. paint
5. is 6. use

6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Do you like getting your hands messy?
2. A musician is a person who plays music.
3. Magdy was excited about the show.

7) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

There are so many ways to express myself. I can enter a competition of any kind of creative project. I love creative projects. Making a collage is my favorite. I need some material, paint and paper. I use different pictures and stick them together. I see a beautiful picture when I finish the collage.

Unit (2)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. apartment 2. happy
3. love 4. good

2) Read and complete the text.

1. violin 2. bored
3. sporty 4. does

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. watch 2. swap 3. violin
4. push-ups 5. chess 6. share
7. do 8. in 9. awesome

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1. a new apartment 2. cartoons
3. computers 4. A month ago.
5. In their bedroom.

5) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. I swap comic books with my friends.
2. What do you do in your bedroom?
3. Can you play the violin?

Lesson (2)

Practice (P. 73)

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. gets 2. will be 3. come
4. put 5. may 6. can

2) Correct the underlined words.

1. have 2. will 3. want 4. will

Activities

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Polish 2. blender
3. sharp 4. milkshakes

2) Read and complete the text.

1. appliance 1. smoothie
3. making 4. delicious

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. will make 2. vaccine 3. arrive
4. motor 5. have 6. smoothie
7. will go 8. invention

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1. blenders 2. different 3. heat
4. It has saved millions of lives.
5. Plastic, glass and metal.

5) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Some blenders can heat food.
2. What do you use your blender for?
3. We're organizing a special party next week.

Lesson (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. strange 2. power
3. interactive 4. disappeared

2) Read and complete the box.

1. opinion 2. laptop
3. games 4. watch

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. strange 2. interactive 3. cut
4. socket 5. In 6. electric

4) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. I know what you mean.
2. Why is electricity important?
3. How was your day?
4. They were looking at the interactive whiteboard

Model Answers

5) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

In my opinion, electricity is most useful in our free time. I love my laptop! I do my homework on it, then I play video games with my brother. I love to watch television with my grandma in the evening, too. I think it's more important in the kitchen. We can't use our electric kettle without electricity, or our blender – or our refrigerator!

Lesson (4)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. sweet 2. robot 3. day 4. chores

2) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1. Bill robots 2. koshari 3. jobs
4. They were ironing clothes.
5. Because they have Bill robots.

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. terrible 2. ironing 3. fixing
4. shocked 5. fill 6. Luckily
7. Suddenly

4) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Luckily, a computer engineer solved the problem.
2. Bills were busily ironing clothes.
3. They broke down and fell to the ground.

5) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

We live in the age of technology. Robots are very useful in our life. We can use them to do things that are difficult to us. In the future, people can use robots to do all the chores. They will iron clothes for people to wear. They will fix the cars. They will change the car battery. They will make food for people to eat. I think they will be great and important for our future.

Lesson (5)

Practice (P. 91)

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. up 2. up 3. away 4. up
5. out 6. up 7. up 8. away

2) Read and complete with the correct form.

1. up 2. up 3. away 4. out

Activities

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. happy 2. Sunday
3. hanging 4. out

2) Read and complete the dialog.

1. living room 2. hang
3. put 4. tidy

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. out 2. mop 3. on
4. hanging 5. up 6. up

4) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Our dining table is messy.
2. She is mopping up the water.
3. Dina is cleaning up the kitchen.
4. There are toys on the floor.

5) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Everyone in my family has chores. My little sister mops up the water. My mother hangs up the clothes. My elder sister cleans up the kitchen. My father puts out the garbage. My brother tidies up his room.

Lesson (6)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. post 2. claws
3. toys 4. collar

2) Read and complete the text.

1. go 2. vaccinations
3. sick 4. furry

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. heat 2. Garden centers
3. This means that 4. This means that

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1. sleeping 2. plants 3. turtles
3. A very large space.
4. To keep the turtle nice and warm.

5) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Your cat needs a vaccination.
2. What equipment do turtles need?
3. Some plants don't need much water.

6) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

How can I make my dog feel at home? Give your dog a lot of attention, so it feels safe. You should stroke it. Dogs love this. They like to sleep in warm places. They like to eat meat. You can buy a special dog food. Dogs should go to the vet for vaccinations. If you look after your dog well, you'll have a new friend in your life.

2. Where do turtles sleep?
3. Suddenly, all the robots broke down.

7) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Turtles like to eat plants and flowers. You can also buy special turtle food. Turtles need a very large place for their home. They sometimes need a heat lamp. This is a special light to keep the turtle nice and warm. Turtles like sleeping in a safe, dark place where the temperature doesn't change.

Activities on Review (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. cartoons
2. funny
3. cat
4. friends

2) Read and complete the text.

1. chess
2. club
3. difficult
4. board

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1. hour
2. kitchen
3. rubbish
4. It was raining.
5. Because I sometimes leave them on the chair.

4) The Reader

A) Read and write Yes or No.

1. No
2. Yes
3. Yes
4. No

B) Read and answer the questions.

1. She has pottery classes.
2. His dad's shovel.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. up
2. cries
3. up
4. watch
5. Would
6. in

6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. I usually watch cartoons on TV.
2. Sameh was on school vacation.
3. On the weekend, I usually visit my uncle.

7) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

I love dogs very much. They need a big place to live in. They like to eat meat. You can buy them special dog food. They like playing and going out or a walk. You can buy a collar and a lead when ou go out with them for a walk. You should take hem to the vet once a year for vaccinations. Stroke hem, so they feel safe and happy. If you have a pet og, you have a furry friend to play with.

Model Answers

Unit (3)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. garden 2. green
3. top 4. city

2) Read and complete the text.

1. roofs 2. amazing
3. shade 4. space

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Mobile 2. Flexible 3. Nomadic
4. sleds 5. reindeer 6. boarding
7. mobile 8. subjects 9. timetable
10. chores

4) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Classrooms aren't the same in every school.
2. Green roofs are gardens on the top of a building.
3. Nomadic children help to look after reindeer.
4. Adel's favorite subject at school is ICT.
5. Why are green roofs good for the environment?

5) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1. boarding 2. tents 3. move
4. Because they are away from their families for many months every year.
5. Math, science and computing.

6) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

In Northern Siberia, some students have their lessons in tents on the ice and snow! Many people in the North of Siberia are nomadic. This means that they don't live in one place. They travel in sleds across the frozen land and sleep in tents. To get education, some students go to boarding school where they are away from their families for many months. Other students learn at nomadic school. The classrooms are tents on the ice or mobile rooms on wheels.

Lesson (2)

Practice (P. 136)

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. go 2. likes 3. does
4. always walks 5. does 6. never go
7. often walks

2) Correct the underlined words.

1. sometimes get 2. eats 3. bring
4. are always 5. starts

Activities

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Omar 2. Cairo
3. twelve 4. teacher

2) Read and complete.

1. boat 2. floods
3. solar 4. football

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. ICT 2. uniform 3. neat
4. cafeteria 5. never 6. always
7. sometimes go 8. is often
9. is sometimes 10. never walks
11. sometimes brings

4) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Lilly always gets the bus with her friends.
2. There are always floods in Bangladesh.
3. How does Aban go to school?

5) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1. kindergarten 2. six 3. clean and tidy
4. From Monday to Friday.
5. In the cafeteria or outside in summer.

6) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Every day, I wake up at 6 a.m. I have breakfast with my family. I go to school by bus. I go with my friends. I have lunch at school. I have sandwiches in the cafeteria. I do my homework in the evening. Then, I watch TV with my family.

Lesson (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. park 2. photograph
3. excited 4. different

2) Read and complete the text.

1. swimming 2. healthy
3. drama 4. costumes

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. makes 2. me 3. Swimming
4. make 5. makes 6. feel
7. Watching 8. excited

4) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Art is good for your mind.
2. Swimming makes me feel happy.
3. Children can shoot goals at football club.
4. The children join in friendly matches.

rite a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

go to art club. Everyone knows that art is good ur mind. Art makes me relaxed and happy. If I'm I always paint. I go to art club on Tuesdays to to draw and paint. I make beautiful paintings owers and birds. My parents like my paintings.

Lesson (4)

sten and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

ay 2.9 am

he principal 4.solar panels

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Green 2.principal 3.passionate

plastic 5.nature trail 6.solar panels

demonstration

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

We are the greenest school in the city.

We encourage you to walk or cycle.

Read the following text and answer the questions.

presentation 2.environment

.open day

.From the Green Library.

.How we sort the waste from our classrooms.

) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

To make our school greener, we should do many ings. First, we should get electricity from solar anels. We should plant more trees. We should cycle plastic. We also need a bike shed to ncourage people to cycle. Walking also helps the nvironment. We should sort the waste from our assrooms.

Lesson (5)

Practice (P. 157)

) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

.was 2.said 3.could 4.he

) Read and complete.

.heard 2.were

.said 4.could

Activities

Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

.bus 2.broken

.different 4.first

) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

.steep 2.repair 3.collapsed

4.journey 5.repair 6.steep

7.over 8.on 9.online

10.said 11.had 12.had

13.was going 14.would be 15.his

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1.fell down 2.radio 3.Lina's dad

4.All night.

5.They couldn't get to town or the school town.

Lesson (7)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1.snake 2.brown

3.away 4.hand

2) Read and complete the text.

1.older 2.scribe

3.palace 4.busy

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1.palace 2.court

3.tablet 4.poisonous

4) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1.Nebsin's dad has an important job.

2.What does the snake look like?

3.A scribe worked at the Pharaoh's palace.

5) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1.scribe 2.tablets 3.poisonous

4.He wrote about everything that happened in the Pharaoh's court.

5.She put some herbs into a bottle of oil and put the liquid on the snake bite.

Activities on Unit (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1.America 2.six

3.toys 4.computers

2) Read and complete the text.

1.uniform 2.neat

3.lunch 4.cafeteria

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1.teachers 2.hot 3.roof gardens

4.Green outdoor places.

5.In the shade.

4) The Reader

1.Yes 2.No 3.No 4.Yes

B) Read and answer the questions.

1.His friend Shady. 2It was muddy.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. never 2. happy 3. feel 4. that
5. were building 6. How often

6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. What did Lina hear?
2. Sad plays make me unhappy.
3. We can learn a lot by visiting new places.

7) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Playing sports is wonderful. I love tennis very much. It's a great sport. It keeps me strong and healthy. I go to tennis classes twice a week. I go to a club near my house. I go with my friends. We play hard to be perfect.

Unit (4)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. tall 2. curly
3. Waleed 4. Braces

2) Read and complete the text.

1. Imagine 2. same
3. curly 4. glasses

3) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Shady is tall and wears glasses.
2. Injy wears braces to help her teeth get straight.
3. How are we different to each other?
4. Tarek is great at playing the guitar.
5. Reem uses a wheelchair because she can't walk well.

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1. unkind 2. wheelchair 3. hearing aid
4. Someone was unkind to him.
5. I should tell the teachers.

5) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

I have many friends at school. My favorite one is Amir. He is very tall. He wears braces to help his teeth get straight. He has curly hair. He uses a wheelchair because he can't walk. He loves reading very much. He always has books in his hand. He also loves drawing.

Lesson (2)

Practice (P. 188)

1) Read and choose.

1. what happened 2. if we could
3. how we communicated 4. if I know

2) Correct the underlined words.

1. we thought 2. asked 3. lived 4. I saw
5. could 6. asked 7. was 8. did

3) Write the questions in reported speech.

1. He asked what Gameela and Dalia did after school.
2. She asked me if I could hear the birds singing outside.
3. We asked where people learned finger spelling.

Activities

1) Read and complete the dialog.

1. talking 2. meowing
3. communicate 4. sign

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. if 2. asked 3. we could
4. I did 5. I lived 6. if I spoke
7. I was 8. I 9. if we could
10. asked

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1. our teachers 2. easy 3. boring
3. Ways to communicate. 4. Meowing.

Lesson (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. prosthetic 2. plastic
3. expensive 4. shouldn't

2) Read and complete the text.

1. think 2. opinion
3. interesting 4. To me

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. prosthetic 2. bricks 3. expensive
4. movable 5. at 6. interesting

4) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. What do you think about football?
2. What are your plans for the future?
3. In my opinion, they're really exciting.
4. A disability shouldn't stop you.

5) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Some people have disabilities. They have one hand, so they use prosthetic arms. Prosthetic arms are very expensive. They are made of metal. They help people with disabilities in their hand. Some of them could be plastic. They help people hold things. Disability shouldn't stop us from making things.

Lesson (4)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. six
2. poster
3. rainforests
4. interesting

2) Read and complete the dialog.

1. has 2. dear 3. working 4. else

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. rainforests 2. at 3. lovely
4. proud 5. researching 6. Kindness
7. advertisement 8. entertainment 9. information

4) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Can I work with you?
2. These posters are beautiful.
3. Fares feels a bit sad.

6) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Our teacher wants us to get into groups to make posters about animals that live in tropical rainforests. It should be an advertisement for the rainforest. She would like colourful posters with lots of interesting information. She'd like everyone to work together. She told us that kindness was important.

Lesson (5)

Practice (P. 205)

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. kindest 2. loudest 3. the biggest
4. the proudest 5. happiest 6. the best
7. hottest 8. the most powerful

2) Read and complete with the correct form.

1. most difficult 2. the happiest 3. easiest
4. the kindest 5. the hottest

Activities

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. elephants 2. leader
3. hot 4. lake

2) Read and complete the text.

1. hunters 2. caught
3. roared 4. mice

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. coldest 2. happiest 3. best
4. worst 5. biggest 6. easiest
7. most difficult 8. herd 9. route
10. hunters 11. roared 12. most dangerous
13. leader 14. hunter

4) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. How did the mice help the elephants?
2. Cartoons are the funniest programs on TV.
3. The elephants and the mice like their leaders.
4. It was the best vacation for me.

Lesson (6)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. eleven 2. Alexandria
3. great 4. brown

2) Read and complete the text.

1. mall 2. movies
3. future 4. dentist

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. wears 2. walking 3. taking
4. movies 5. play 6. hobbies

4) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. What do you do on the weekend?
2. I'm keen on walking in the countryside.

5) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1. Hurghada 2. keen on 3. once a week
4. He has short dark hair and he wears glasses.
5. to be a doctor

6) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Hi everybody! My name is Seif. I am 13 years old. I live in Giza. I am very tall. I have straight hair and brown eyes. I'm keen on riding bicycles. I play football too. On the weekend, I love going to the club with my friends. I'm really into sports. I'm good at tennis and football. I often watch football matches on TV with my dad. In the future, I want to be a doctor. Write and tell me about yourself!

Lesson (7)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. walker 2. quietly
3. thankful 4. an ice-cream

2) Read and complete the text.

1. best 2. club
3. special 4. entrance

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. walker 2. physiotherapist
3. brain 4. decorate

Model Answers

4) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1. good 2. year 3. wonderful
4. They decorate it. 5. Stars and stickers.

5) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. My new walker has arrived.
2. Why is the woman worried?
3. Adam loves Thursday because he plays basketball.

Activities on Unit (4)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. tall 2. straight
3. reading 4. math

2) Read and complete the text.

1. rainforest 2. advertisement
3. information 4. kindness

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1. Alexandria 2. brown 3. keen on
4. Alex Modern School
5. Taking photos and listening to music.

4) The Reader

A) Read and write Yes or No.

1. Yes 2. No 3. Yes 4. Yes

B) Read and answer the questions.

1. Next week. 2. Flowers.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. biggest 2. noun 3. what
4. went 5. coldest 6. asked

6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences..

1. What do you think about David?
2. My grandfather is the oldest in the family.
3. I'm keen on helping my friends.

7) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Hello everyone!

How are things?

My names Anas. I'm eleven, and I live in Giza. I go to Al-Omrania school. It's a great school, and I have great friends. I love listening to music. I'm into sports. I'm good at tennis and football. I often watch football matches on TV with my dad. In the future, I want to be a doctor.

Write and tell me about yourself!

Activities on Review (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. education 2. elementary
3. Nomadic 4. flexible

2) Read and complete the dialog.

1. think 2. opinion
3. about 4. me

3) Read the following text and answer the questions.

1. 6 and half 2. more 3. similar
4. It's a Japanese script.
5. Every day, on weekend, and in the holidays.

4) The Reader

A) Read and write Yes or No.

1. Yes 2. Yes 3. No 4. No

B) Read and answer the questions.

1. They were in the park.
2. They will smell beautiful.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. never 2. tallest
3. makes 4. had gone
5. the most difficult 6. was

6) Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. My sister wears glasses so she can read better.
2. What do you do on the weekend?
2. My mom uses a lot of body language.

7) Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

In my opinion, school trips are exciting learning experiences.

First of all, we can learn a lot by visiting new places. In addition, school trips are often more interesting than only reading about things in books or watching videos.

To sum up, school trips are a very important part of our education. I think we should try to go on one school trip every year.

The Story Answers

Part 1

1) Read and write Yes or No.

1. Yes 2. No 3. Yes 4. No 5. Yes 6. Yes
7. Yes 8. No 9. No 10. Yes 11. Yes 12. No
13. Yes 14. Yes 15. No

2) Read and answer the questions.

1. Asser's Grandma. 2. Asser's teacher.
3. He smiled and waved to her.
4. Because their mom was busy.
5. She was carrying a book.
6. Mayar's teacher. 7. It had words in braille.

8. Cookies
9. At Grandma's house.
10. They learned braille.

Part 2

1) Read and write Yes or No.

1. Yes 2. Yes 3. Yes 4. No 5. No 6. No
7. Yes 8. No 9. Yes 10. Yes 11. No 12. No
13. No 14. Yes 15. Yes

2) Read and answer the questions.

1. By car.
2. In the open trunk.
3. They were muddy.
4. Grandma.
5. music club.
6. Her apron.
7. An audiobook.
8. About his school concert next week.
9. To the garage.
10. He saw his dad's shovel. It was covered in mud.

Part 3

1) Read and write Yes or No.

1. Yes 2. No 3. No 4. Yes 5. No 6. No
7. Yes 8. No 9. No 10. Yes 11. Yes 12. No
13. Yes 14. No 15. Yes

2) Read and answer the questions.

1. Every day.
2. The concert.
3. Because he wanted the concert to go well.
4. His friend Shady.
5. To go to the park with him and his dad.
6. To take his water bottle.
7. They drank some water.
8. On the other side of the park.
9. They were digging.
10. They were surprised.

Part 4

1) Read and write Yes or No.

1. No 2. Yes 3. No 4. Yes 5. No 6. No
7. Yes 8. Yes 9. Yes 10. No 11. No 12. Yes
13. Yes 14. No 15. Yes

2) Read and answer the questions.

1. His spade.
2. A large information board with a plan on it.
3. They were making a playground with a sensory garden.
4. There is a fountain and wind chimes.
5. They were planting flowers.
6. So it's easy for people in wheelchairs to enjoy the garden.
7. He can help plant the flowers and hang the wind chimes.
8. Next week.
9. He enjoyed showing Mayar around the sensory garden.
10. She liked the fountain.

General Activities

1) Look and write.

Student's answer

2) Complete the sentences with names from Exercise 1.

1. Grandma
2. Mayar
3. Asser
4. Mom and dad
5. Shady

3) Put the events of the story in order.

Student's answer

4) Correct the mistakes in the sentences in your notebook.

1. (Asser) Mayar
2. (a cake) cookies
3. (on the seat) in the trunk
4. (the radio) an audiobook
5. (bike) football
6. (piano) guitar
7. (tall trees) bushes
8. (Shady's) Asser's

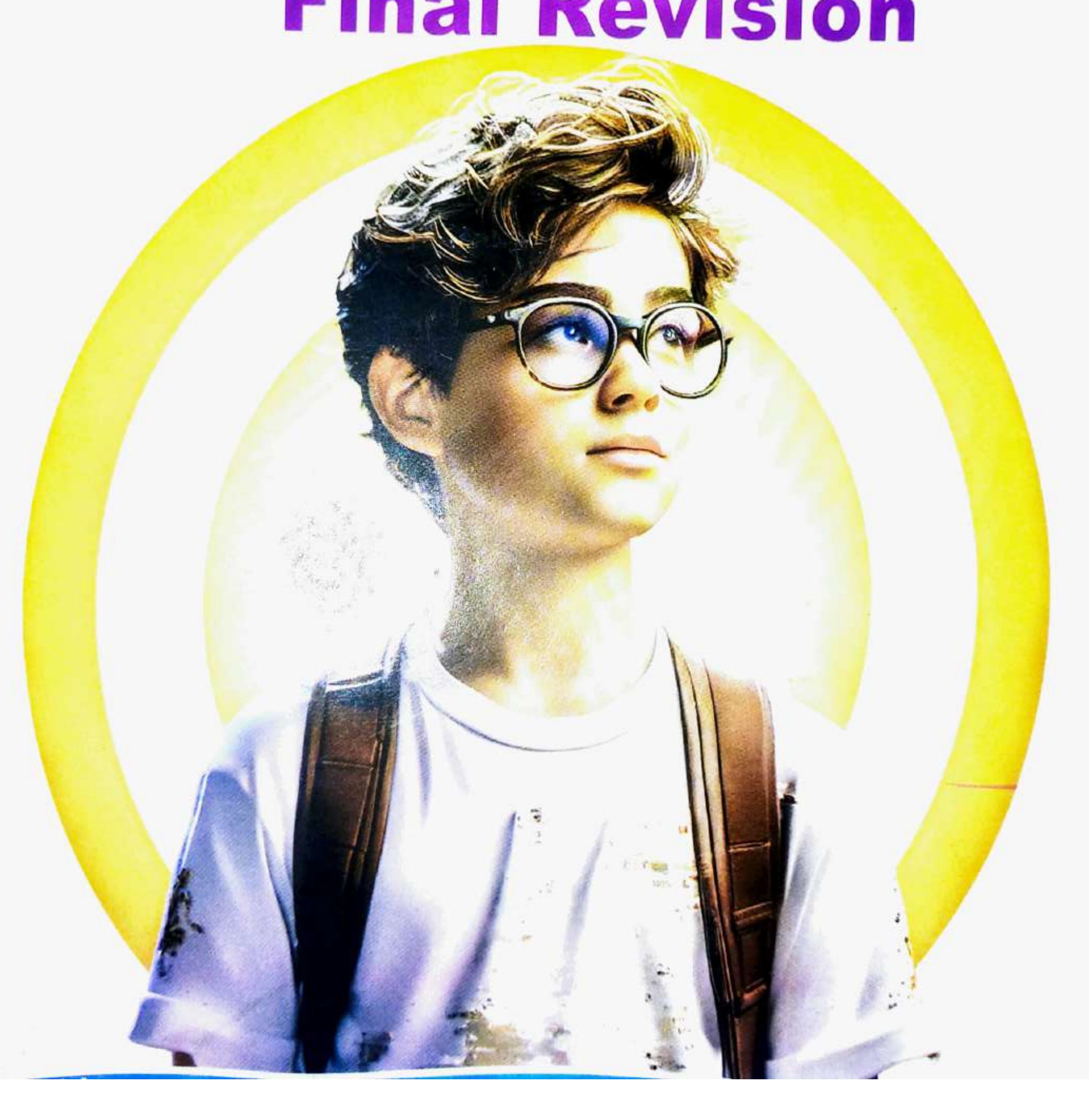
5) Ask and answer with a partner.

1. Because they were digging in the park.
2. The sensory garden.
3. When he saw them digging in the park.
4. He felt excited.
5. To look for his mom.
6. In the car trunk.
7. The concert.
8. A large information board with a plan on it.
9. They learned braille.
10. Flowers.
11. They were surprised.
12. The fountain.
13. A book.
14. They were muddy.
15. Shady and his father.
16. It's a place where you can hear, see, and touch all kinds of interesting things.
17. It has words in braille.
18. He hoped his parents remembered the concert.
19. They were digging.
20. Because it was a surprise.

AL-BAHER

CONNECT PLUS

Final Revision



Unit (1) Express yourself!

Vocabulary

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
creative	مبدع - إبداعي	order	ترتيب
creativity	إبداع	title	عنوان
exhibition	معرض	crafts	مصنوعات يدوية
junk modeling	تصميم مجسمات من الأشياء القديمة	advertisement	إعلان
beads	حبات الخرز	audience	جمهور
sculpture	فن النحت - تمثال منحوت	costumes	أزياء
making a collage	صناعة الملصقات (فن الكولاج)	photography	التصوير الفوتوغرافي
computer animation	الرسوم المتحركة بالكمبيوتر	cloth	قماش
designing clothes	تصميم الملابس	rocket	صاروخ
making jewelry	صناعة المجوهرات	messy	فوضوي - متسخ
outdoor art	الفن الخارجي	relaxing	مريح
uncomfortable	غير مريح	poem	قصيدة
disappear	يختفي	exploding = blast	انفجار
far away	بعيد	breath	نفس
flash	وميض	brilliantly	بتألق
jewels	جواهر	cheer	يهتف - يشجع
shout	يصيح - يصرخ	award	جائزة
talented	موهوب	actor	ممثل
nervous	عصبي - متوتر	stage	خشبة المسرح
acting	فن التمثيل	cello	آلة التشيلو
interviewer	مُحاوِر	musician	موسيقار
perform	يؤدي - يعرض	hoopoe	هدهد
lump of clay	كتلة صلصال	choir	كورال "فريق من المنشدين"
pottery wheel	عجلة صناعة الفخار	decorate	يزين - يزخرف
pottery	صناعة الأواني الفخارية	edit	يُحرر - يُعدل (صورة)
clay	طين - صلصال	chance	فرصة
kiln	فرن "للخزف"	a play	مسرحية
apron	مريلة	sculptor	نحات

Help your child revise these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع هذه الكلمات.



(If) Zero Conditional

Usage الاستخدام

- We use the zero conditional to talk about facts or things that are usually true for us. نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الصفرية للتحدث عن حقائق أو أشياء عادة ما تكون حقيقية بالنسبة لنا.

If / When + present simple , present simple or can + inf.

e.g. If you paint, you get paint on your hands.
If I go to bed late, I can't wake up in the morning.

present simple or can + inf. + if + present simple

e.g. You get paint on your hands if you paint.
I can't wake up in the morning if I go to bed late.

- We also use the zero conditional to give instructions or make suggestions. نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الصفرية لإعطاء التعليمات وعمل الاقتراحات.

If / When + present simple , imperative "جملة أمر"

e.g. If it starts to rain, use an umbrella.
When you arrive at school, come to the classroom.

Imperative + if / when + present simple

e.g. Use an umbrella if it starts to rain.
Come to the classroom when you arrive at school.

Notes:

إذا بدأنا الجملة بـ (If / When) نضع (,) comma بين الجملتين.

e.g. If I do something good, I feel happy.

أما إذا جاءت if / when في منتصف الجملة فلا نضع (,) comma.

e.g. I feel happy if I do something good.

Prepositional Phrases
شبه الجملة

1. A prepositional phrase is a group of words beginning with a preposition, and ending with a noun, or pronoun, that the preposition refers to, and sometimes an adjective.

- شبه الجملة هي مجموعة من الكلمات تبدأ بحرف جر، وتنتهي باسم ، أو ضمير يشير إليه حرف الجر ، و أحيانًا تنتهي بصفة.

2. It doesn't contain a verb.

- لا تحتوي على فعل.

3. It can give information about where or when.

- يمكن أن تعطي معلومات عن المكان أو الوقت.

4. Prepositions can include:

- يمكن أن تشمل حروف الجر:

-after	بعد	-before	قبل	-behind	خلف
-in	في	-into	داخل	-under	تحت
-through	عبر / خلال	-for	لمدة	-on	على

Examples:

- I'm always tired **after a concert**.
- I'm always a bit nervous when I'm **on stage**.
- I try to breathe slowly **before a concert** to help me relax.
- **At your last concert**, you looked very confident.
- I looked **under all the chairs**.
- **On a sunny day**, I play football outside with my friends.

Help your child identify prepositional phrases.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على شبه الجملة.

Activities on Unit (1)

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Noha and Hesham have to enter a .... project competition.
   a) **creative** b) **happy** c) **messy** d) **sad**
2. Noha always feels .... when she is painting.
   a) **relaxing** b) **sad** c) **happy** d) **creative**
3. If Noha is ...., she paints.
   a) **messy** b) **tired** c) **thirsty** d) **sad**
4. Hesham thinks making pottery is ....
   a) **uncomfortable** b) **sad** c) **relaxing** d) **happy**

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

park - outdoor art - playground - sees - collage

Samia : Hey, Amira. How are you?
Amira : Hey, Samia. I'm fine, thank you.
Samia : What are you doing?
Amira : I'm making some 1)............................ for the creative project.
Samia : Where is the art?
Amira : It's at the back of the school 2)............................ .
Samia : Why is it at the back of the playground?
Amira : If the art's here, then nobody 3)............................ it.
Samia : It looks great. Where did you get those pretty leaves?
Amira : In the 4)............................ . When I walk in the park, I get lots of ideas for outdoor art.

- Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

steel - concerts - Finland - sculpture - Egypt

The Sibelius monument was built in 1967 to celebrate the famous musician Jean Sibelius, who died in 1957. Sibelius was from 1) .... a country in northern Europe. Sibelius's work is still popular today and played at 2) .... and in theaters all around the world. The 3) .... was created by the female artist Eila Hiltunen, who was also from Finland. The sculpture has 600 4) .... pipes of different sizes in an irregular shape.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Andy Goldsworthy is a famous British artist who works both with and in nature. He creates sculptures that are made with natural materials, such as flowers, leaves, snow, grass, and wood. To do this, he uses only his hands and simple tools. Then, instead of putting his works in a gallery, he presents **them** outdoors in their natural environment. Because they are in the wind, sun, and rain, the works are usually temporary. They give us a sense of connection with the natural world and the way that it changes through the seasons. This is because the sculptures will change how they look according to each season. So for example, a sculpture made of snow will melt and disappear if the weather is not very cold.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Andy Goldsworthy is a famous .... artist.
   a) **British** b) **American** c) **Egyptian** d) **Chinese**
2. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to his ....
   a) **hands** b) **tools** c) **materials** d) **works**
3. A .... is a place where artistic works are shown.
   a) **school** b) **hall** c) **gallery** d) **laboratory**

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What kind of art does Andy Goldsworthy create? ....
5. What is special about the materials that Goldsworthy uses? ....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1. Laila used her computer skills to create some great ....
   a) beads b) animations c) materials d) collage
2. Dina used some colored .... to make jewelry for her mom.
   a) outdoors art b) collage c) beads d) material
3. Youssef has made a bowl with some clay. He loves making ....
   a) animation b) collage c) material d) pottery
4. Fareeda is going to make a .... of a cat with her clay.
   a) sculpture b) material c) animation d) beads
5. Samir has some fabric and some recycled .... to make clothes.
   a) outdoor art b) collage c) material d) animation
6. Salma is going to use some rocks and leaves to make some ....
   a) outdoor art b) collage c) beads d) pottery
7. Kareem is making a .... of a horse with some cardboard and wool.
   a) junk modeling b) collage c) sculpture d) material
8. They have made a rocket with this cardboard box. They love ....
   a) junk modeling b) pottery c) outdoor arts d) material
9. You can see the light as it is .... on the water.
   a) reflected b) painted c) played d) affected
10. When water boils, it is full of small balls of air called ....
    a) foam b) patterns c) bubbles d) pupils
11. There were ten actors in the .... at the theater on Friday.
    a) edit b) play c) exhibition d) costume
12. Nadine and Sarah sing in the school ....
    a) advertisement b) exhibition c) choir d) team
13. Fares would like a camera for his birthday because he loves ....
    a) photography b) play c) choir d) exhibition

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Language)

1. When Samia runs, she .... happy.
   a) feel b) feels c) felt d) is feeling
2. If it is cold, ... a jacket.
   a) wear b) wore c) wears d) is wearing
3. When you .... water, it boils.
   a) heat b) are heating c) heats d) heated
4. If it's too hot outside, we .... inside the house.
   a) stay b) staying c) could stay d) are staying
5. If my little brother is tired, he ....
   a) cry b) crying c) cries d) is crying
6. When it's hot, Hesham .... a T-shirt and shorts.
   a) wear b) wore c) wears d) is wearing
7. When you finish your homework, ... it to your teacher.
   a) gave b) give c) to give d) given
8. When dad .... water the plants, they die.
   a) isn't b) doesn't c) don't d) didn't
9. Nadine loves performing .... stage.
   a) on b) in c) at d) under
10. She often gets nervous .... a concert.
    a) with b) before c) on d) for
11. She looked very confident .... the concert.
    a) for b) into c) on d) at
12. Ali often likes to write songs .... dinner.
    a) after b) under c) in d) on
13. Mona never puts her cello .... the door.
    a) behind b) next c) between d) in

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. creates - Andy Goldsworthy - sculptures - materials - natural - with - .

   ....

2. material - made of - is - What - the sculpture - ?

   ....

3. feel - When - I - run, - happy - I - .

   ....

4. you - performed - at school - on stage - Have - ever - ?

   ....

5. very - Ahmed - confident - at - looked - the concert - .

   ....

6. did - do - What - for - Samir - show - the school - ?

   ....

7. on - for - is - a concert - There - an advertisement - the website - .

   ....

8. you - Who - lunchtime - eat - do - at - with - ?

   ....

6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

A school show

Guiding words:

(show - great - acting - photographer - stage - pictures)

....

....

....

....

....

Unit (2) Home is where the heart is

Vocabulary

cartoons	رسوم متحركة - أفلام كارتون	assistant	مساعد
sporty	رياضي	vaccination	تطعيم
do push-ups	يقوم بتمارين الضغط	dust	يزيل الغبار - ينفض
apartment	شقة	curious	فضولي - محب للإطلاع
appliance	جهاز منزلي	spare room	غرفة احتياطية
games console	وحدة التحكم للألعاب الإلكترونية	underneath	في الأسفل - تحت
milkshake	مخفوق الحليب	great-grandmother	الجدة الكبرى
hairdryer	مُجفف الشعر	chess	لعبة الشطرنج
blender	خلاط	violin	آلة الكمان
motor	مُحرّك - موتور	swap	يتبادل
blade	شفْرة	comic books	كتب مصورة مضحكة
refrigerator	ثلاجة	invention	اختراع
toaster	محمصة خبز	vaccine	لقاح
power socket	مقبس الكهرباء	lighting	إضاءة
extension cable	وصلة سلك "كابل"	break down	يتعطل
interactive whiteboard	السبورة التفاعلية	battery	بطارية
programme	يُبرمج - برنامج	gently	برفق - بلطف
shocked	مصدوم	sharpen	يَحُد - يشحذ
hang up the clothes	يُعلق الملابس	spray	يرش
clean up the kitchen	ينظف المطبخ	florist	بائع الزهور
put out the garbage	يُخرج القمامة	collar	طوق "حول الرقبة"
put away the dishes	يضع الأطباق في مكانها	stroke	يلاطف - يملس على
mop up the water	يجفف / يمسح المياه	fertilizer	سماد
pick up the books	يلتقط الكتب	furry	فَرْوي "مغطى بالفراء"
tidy up my room	أرتب غرفتي	memories	ذكريات
claws	مخالب	childhood	طفولة
instructional guide	دليل إرشادي	brick	طوبة
attention	عناية - اهتمام	attic	سقيفة "غرفة علوية للتخزين"

Help your child revise these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع هذه الكلمات.



(If) First Conditional

إذا الحالة الشرطية الأولى

Usage الاستخدام

1) **We use the first conditional to talk about future situations.**

نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للتحدث عن مواقف مستقبلية.

If + subject + present simple , subject + (will + inf.) ...

e.g. If it **is** hot tomorrow, I'**ll make** a smoothie.

Subject + (will + inf.) + if + subject + present simple

e.g. People **won't get** sick if they **have** a vaccine.

2) **We use can to express ability.**

نستخدم (مصدر الفعل + can) للتعبير عن القدرة.

If + subject + present simple , subject + (can + inf.)

e.g. If you **arrive** early, you **can get** a good seat.

3) **We use may when we aren't sure.**

نستخدم (مصدر الفعل + may) عندما نكون غير متأكدين من شيء.

e.g. If she **hurries**, she **may catch** the train; I'm not sure.

Note:

When the "if" clause is second, we don't use a comma.

عندما تكون جملة الشرط هي الثانية لا نستخدم فاصلة بين الجملتين.

e.g. Dad can take you to school if you ask him now.

Help your child use the first conditional.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى.

Phrasal Verbs الأفعال الاصطلاحية

A phrasal verb: is a verb followed by a preposition.
الفعل الاصطلاحي هو فعل متبوع بحرف جر.

verb + preposition

e.g. I always **tidy up** my room on weekends.

clean up ينظف	put out يخرج	tidy up يرتب	mop up يمسح
put away يضع الشيء في مكانه	pick up يلتقط	hang up يعلق	

Offering help عرض المساعدة

- **Would you like me to + inf. ....?**
- **Shall I + inf. ....?**
- **I'll + inf. .....**

Accepting قبول	Refusing  رفض
- Yes, please.	- No, thanks.

1) **A)** Would you like me to mop up the juice? **B)** Yes, please.
2) **A)** Shall I put away the toys? **B)** No, thanks.
3) **A)** There are books all over your bedroom floor.
   B) I'll pick up the books.

Asking for help طلب المساعدة

Could you + inf. ....?

Accepting قبول	Refusing رفض
- Yes, of course.	- Sorry, I can't.

A) The kitchen is messy. Could you put out the garbage?
B) Yes, of course.

 Help your child identify these language items.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه القواعد.

Activities on Unit (2)

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. You can buy indoor plants from ...., florist's, and garden centers.
   a) supermarkets b) clubs c) schools d) hospitals
2. There are .... that sell many different plants.
   a) stores b) clubs c) schools d) malls
3. The .... know how to look after the plants.
   a) teachers b) vets c) doctors d) assistants
4. Make sure you know what your .... is called.
   a) animal b) pet c) team d) plant

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

pick up - hang up - put away - put out - clean up

Granddad : Rasha, let's tidy up the house before your mom gets home.

Rasha : OK, Granddad. I'll 1).. the dishes.

Granddad : Good. I'll 2).............. the garbage. It's too heavy for you to carry.

Rasha : Would you like me to 3)........................ Hesham's toys and put them in his room?

Granddad : Yes, please. Could you 4)........................ your dad's jacket?

Rasha : OK. When we've finished this, I'll mop up the orange juice from the table.

Granddad : Thanks, Rasha.

- Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

clean up - hang up - mop up - pick up - put away

It's Mom's birthday today and she's visiting Grandma. I'm going to help her. First, I'll do the kitchen. I need to put out the trash. I think there's some orange juice on the floor, so I'll 1) .... the orange juice before I 2) .... the dishes in the cupboard. Next, I need to clean the carpets in all the rooms, and I need to 3) .... my sister's toys from the floor. Then, I'll 4) .... my coat in my bedroom cupboard, and finally, I'll tidy up the living room.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Hi Laila,

It's Grandma's birthday next week and we're organizing a special party for her. If we don't tell her, it'll be a big surprise. Uncle Amir and his family are arriving on Friday. If they bring lots of presents, we'll hide them in my room. Mom is going to cook lots of special food. If the weather is not too hot, we'll all eat outside. I'm helping my sister to make a cake. We're going to use mom's new food mixer. Dad is buying some special decorations for the house. It will look really pretty when we put lots of lights around the living room. Everyone will come to our house an hour before lunch. Then Dad will drive to Grandma's house to collect her. It's going to be great!

Love,

Samira

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Uncle Amir and his family are arriving on ....
   a) Saturday b) Friday c) Monday d) Sunday
2. The underlined pronoun "her" refers to ....
   a) uncle b) Grandma c) dad d) Laila
3. The underlined word "pretty" means ....
   a) bad b) ugly c) beautiful d) big

B) Answer the following questions.

4. When is Grandma's birthday? ....
5. Where will they hide the presents? ....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1. My sister is good at .... the guitar. She practices every day.
   a) playing b) having c) doing d) staying
2. You have some good books. I do, too - Let's .... them.
   a) throw b) lose c) swap d) burn
3. I enjoy .... tennis with my friends.
   a) doing b) playing c) getting d) having
4. If we put bread in a ...., it will be hot.
   a) refrigerator b) console c) toaster d) laptop
5. We don't want to do .... They are very difficult.
   a) football b) tennis c) chess d) push-ups
6. " .... " is something you make for the first time.
   a) An invitation b) An invention c) A party d) A blender
7. " .... " is the part of a machine that makes it move.
   a) Park b) Brake c) Motor d) Door
8. In 2089, people are lucky because their Bills do all their ....
   a) chores b) chairs c) charts d) chat
9. She used her .... to make milkshakes.
   a) fan b) kettle c) fridge d) blender
10. Fares loves board games. He plays .... with his dad every weekend.
    a) the guitar b) the piano c) the violin d) chess
11. Dad is making a fruit milkshake with our new ....
    a) blender b) choir c) fridge d) cooker
12. Youssef is going to watch .... on TV after dinner.
    a) cartons b) texts c) comics d) cartoons
13. If my hair gets wet, I'll use a .... to dry it.
    a) hairdryer b) toaster c) laptop d) guitar

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Language)

1. If we .... fruit and milk, we'll make a milkshake.
   a) have b) has c) had d) having
2. If you press the button, the eggs and milk ....
   a) blending b) will blend c) blends d) blended
3. She can make a hot drink if she .... water in this kettle.
   a) boil b) boiled c) boils d) boiling
4. If I .... to make a cake, I will use a blender.
   a) will want b) wanted c) wants d) want
5. She will ask for help if she .... in trouble.
   a) be b) is c) will be d) are
6. Fareeda has put .... her clothes and now her room is tidy.
   a) of b) up c) away d) on
7. Omar is cleaning .... the kitchen.
   a) up b) away c) off d) with
8. Reem and Tarek are tidying .... the living room.
   a) on b) at c) of d) up
9. Dad has put .... the garbage.
   a) away b) up c) out d) on
10. Fares needs to pick .... his toys from the floor.
    a) up b) off c) on d) away
11. I'll hang .... my clothes before I go to bed.
    a) off b) at c) on d) up
12. They'll .... up water from the floor.
    a) map b) mop c) put d) build
13. If I have time this week, I .... my aunt.
    a) visit b) visits c) visited d) will visit

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Maged - shares - with - his - **Seleem** - room - his brother - .

   ....

2. do - bedroom - have - **What** - your - in - you - ?

   ....

3. play - **Hana** - month - is - next - going to - chess - .

   ....

4. doesn't - the violin - **My dad** - play - .

   ....

5. is - **What** - her - making for - brother - Nagwa - Ali - ?

   ....

6. cleaning - kitchen - **Omar** - up - is - the - .

   ....

7. needs - pick up - the floor - from - **Fares** - his toys - to - .

   ....

8. grandparents - **Do** - with - live - you - your - ?

   ....

6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

A description of a room

Guiding words:

(apartment - new room - comfortable - homework - computer games)

....

....

....

....

....

Unit (3) School time!

Vocabulary

green roofs	أسطح خضراء	steep	شديد الانحدار
subjects	مواد دراسية	main ideas	أفكار رئيسية
boarding school	مدرسة داخلية	experiences	خبرات حياتية
sleds	زلاجات	introduction	مقدمة
flexible	مرن	reindeer	حيوان الرنّة / الأيل
cycle	يركب دراجة	timetable	جدول حصص
cafeteria	كافتيريا	nomadic	بدو رُحّل
neat	أنيق - مرتب	mobile	مُتنقل
school uniform	زي مدرسي	nature	الطبيعة
art club	نادي التربية الفنية	bridge	جسر - كوبري
tournament	دوري رياضي "مسابقة"	repair	يصلح
drama club	نادي المسرح - التمثيل	crash	تحطم - اصطدام
principal	مدير المدرسة	collapse	ينهار - يسقط
passionate	شغوف - متحمس	society	مجتمع
schedule	جدول	title	عنوان
cooking club	نادي الطهي	conclusion	خاتمة
football club	نادي كرة القدم	scream	يصرخ - صرخة
music club	نادي الموسيقى	court	البلاط الملكي
swimming club	نادي السباحة	poisonous	سام
Eco-playground	ملعب صديق للبيئة	papyrus	ورق البردي
welcome	يرحب	palace	قصر
demonstration	عرض توضيحي	scripts	مخطوطات
sports center	مركز رياضي	scribe	كاتب
journey	رحلة طويلة	tablet	لوح "للكتابة"
square	ميدان	sore	ملتهب - مؤلم

Help your child revise these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع هذه الكلمات.



1 Adverbs of Frequency ظروف التكرار

- We can use adverbs of frequency with the present simple to say how often something happens.

يمكن أن نستخدم ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن عدد مرات حدوث الفعل.

- They are used to describe habits or routines.

تستخدم في وصف العادات والروتين.

always	●●●●
usually	●●●○
often	●●○○
sometimes	●○○○
never	○○○○

- Adverbs of frequency come before the main verb, but after the verb to be.

تأتي ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسي ولكن بعد الفعل "be".

e.g. She often walks to school.

e.g. I am never late for school.

- We use How often...? to ask about adverbs of frequency.

نستخدم (كم مرة ...؟) للسؤال عن ظروف التكرار.

e.g. How often do you go to the cinema?

I never go to the cinema.

كما يمكن استخدام هذه الكلمات في الإجابة أيضًا.

once	مرة	twice	مرتان
three times	ثلاث مرات	every (day)	كل (يوم)

e.g. How often does she visit her aunt?

She visits her aunt once a week.

Help your child use adverbs of frequency.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم ظروف التكرار.

2 Using "make me" استخدم الفعل (make me)

- Use (make / makes me) to talk about how you feel because of something or someone. استخدم الفعل (make me) بمعنى (يجعلني) للحديث عن شعورك بسبب شخص أو شيء ما.

Subject فاعل **+ make(s) me + adjective** صفة

e.g. I have some friends. ⟶ I am happy.
My friends make me happy.

- You can also use make me with a verb to talk about how you feel because of an activity. يمكنك استخدام (make me) مع فعل للحديث عن شعورك بسبب نشاط ما.
- Use the (verb + ing) as the subject. استخدم (verb + ing) كفاعل للجملة.

Subject فاعل **(v +ing) + make(s) me (feel) + adjective** صفة

e.g. I play tennis. ⟶ I get healthy.
Playing tennis makes me feel healthy.
Running makes me feel healthy.
Books make me feel relaxed.

3 Reported Speech الكلام غير المباشر

Usage الاستخدام.

- We use reported speech to report what someone said.

نستخدم الكلام المنقول (غير المباشر) لنقل ما قاله شخص ما.

Mom said , " I have just listened to the radio."

Mom said that she had just listened to the radio.

خطوات التحويل إلى غير المباشر:

1. We use the verb said to report someone's speech.

نستخدم الفعل (said) لنقل كلام الشخص. (إذا كان فعل القول said to يتحول إلى told).

Help your child learn reported speech.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم الكلام غير المباشر.

2. We omit quotation marks and comma, instead we use "that".

نحذف علامات التنصيص " " والفاصلة ونستخدم (that) بدلًا منهم، ويمكن عدم استخدامها.

3. We change the pronouns according to the speaker and the addressee.

تغيير الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمخاطب.

I → he / she
me → him / her
my → his / her
we → they

4. We change the verb tense from present to past.

تغيير زمن الفعل من المضارع إلى الماضي.

Examples:

Laila said, "The bridge has collapsed."
→ Laila said that the bridge had collapsed.

He said, "We heard about your letter."
→ He said that they had heard about my letter.

Study these sentences.

ادرس هذه الجمل.

Direct speech	Reported speech
Present Simple	Past Simple
He said, "I walk with my friends."	He said that he walked with his friends.
Present Continuous	Past Continuous
She said, "I'm going to school."	She said that she was going to school.
Present Perfect	Past Perfect
He said, "I have eaten pizza."	He said that he had eaten pizza.
(Modals) will - can - may	would - could - might
Ola said, "I can swim."	Ola said that she could swim.

Help your child learn reported speech.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم الكلام غير المباشر.

Activities on Unit (3)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. They practiced .... today.
   a) outside b) inside c) outdoors d) upstairs
2. They had to run up and down the playground ....
   a) 10 times b) 15 times c) 20 times d) 30 times
3. Climbing a rope was very ....
   a) difficult b) easy c) high d) different
4. The race was .... meters.
   a) 200 b) 300 c) 400 d) 500

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

do - opinion - think - addition - right

Omar : Hello, Sara. What do you think of playing sport?
Sara : In my 1)........................, sport is fun.
Omar : You're 2)........................
Sara : In 3)........................, playing sport keeps you healthy.
Omar : I think students should 4)........................ sport every day.

- Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

swimming - drama - instruments - costumes - concert

Nadia goes to music club where they sing songs and play 1)........................ They learn songs from all over the world. At the end of term, they have a 2)........................ for their parents. Nader enjoys going to 3)........................ club. They learn plays and they act for their parents. Sometimes they make special 4)........................ for the actors to wear.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

I believe that studying the past helps us understand the present. In my opinion, it is important that we understand how past events have created the present. First of all, we can learn a lot by studying the past. History helps us understand our society and other cultures because we learn about life in the past, important artists, scientists, and politicians. In addition, we learn about how and why life has changed over the years. Some people say that the present is more interesting than the past, but I don't agree. History is interesting and exciting because it is full of great stories and interesting people. Finally, history helps us learn from past mistakes so that we don't repeat the same mistakes in the future.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Studying the past helps us understand the ....

   a) past b) present c) future d) time

2. History is full of great ....

   a) movies b) books c) stories d) tablets

3. The opposite of "interesting" is ....

   a) nice b) boring c) excited d) bored

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What's the best title of the text?

....

5. How does history help us learn from past mistakes?

....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1. We planted a .... on our building and it's now full of pretty plants.
   a) green roof b) black roof c) green wall d) green room
2. The .... people of Russia and other countries live in different places through the year.
   a) civil b) local c) nomadic d) farming
3. My favorite .... at school is ICT.
   a) sport b) subject c) instrument d) club
4. At my .... school, we stay all week and go home on the weekend.
   a) broading b) special c) boarding d) private
5. A .... is special clothes which students wear at school.
   a) uniform b) costume c) casual d) dress
6. Clean and tidy means ....
   a) note b) neat c) nut d) near
7. Malek goes to .... club. It makes him healthy and strong.
   a) music b) drama c) swimming d) art
8. The library is .... because all the electricity comes from solar panels.
   a) white b) blue c) green d) red
9. .... means when something falls down suddenly.
   a) Build b) Collapse c) Destroy d) Decorate
10. My car broke down. I need someone to .... it.
    a) play b) work c) repair d) help
11. Pharaohs made important decisions at a .... inside their palace.
    a) school b) court c) garden d) country
12. A .... wrote a list of all the events that happened at the palace.
    a) writer b) teacher c) scribe d) keeper
13. Ancient Egyptians wrote on ......, which they made from plants called reeds.
    a) paper b) papyrus c) board d) leaves

⬡ - Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Language)

1. He .... to school on time.
   a) go always b) always go c) always goes d) goes always
2. I .... eat lunch in the cafeteria. I have it with my family.
   a) always b) sometimes c) never d) ever
3. My room .... messy.
   a) is sometimes b) always is c) sometimes is d) never is
4. Lily often .... games with her friends.
   a) play b) is played c) plays d) playing
5. How .... do you go swimming? - Once a week.
   a) often b) high c) many d) always
6. Lina said that the bridge .... collapsed.
   a) has b) have c) had d) is
7. Sara .... that it was a long way by road.
   a) say b) said c) says d) told
8. A man said that they .... a new bridge.
   a) were building b) builds c) are building d) build
9. He said .... he was playing tennis.
   a) this b) that c) if d) what
10. Mona said that it was the only thing they .... do.
    a) can b) will c) shall d) could
11. She told me that she .... a letter to newspapers.
    a) send b) sent c) sending d) sends
12. Mom said she .... just listened to the radio.
    a) has b) have c) had d) is having
13. Our teacher told us that he .... in Alexandria.
    a) is b) was c) are d) had

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. goes - with - friends - his - Fares - swimming - .

....

2. on - Dalia - the bus - usually - her book - read - Does - ?

....

3. are - early - Adam - to school - Youssef - and - always - .

....

4. her phone - looks at - never - Amal - to bed - before - she goes - .

....

5. bedroom - sometimes - My - messy - is - brother's - .

....

6. are - subjects - Math - my - French - favorite - and - .

....

7. mom - today - Is - work - at - ?

....

8. rains, - If - flowers - grow - will - the - it - .

....

6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Green City School

Guiding words:

(environment - solar panels - electricity - recycle - plants)

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Unit (4) We can make a difference!

Vocabulary

glasses	نظارة	personal profile	ملف تعريف شخصي
braces	دعائم تقويم الأسنان	curly hair	شعر مجعد
wheelchair	كرسي متحرك	straight hair	شعر مفرود - ناعم
hearing aid	جهاز تقوية السمع	mean = unkind	قاسي
finger spelling	لغة الأصابع	disability	عجز - إعاقة
sign language	لغة الإشارة	decorate	يزين
text messages	رسائل نصية	advertisement	إعلان
lip-reading	قراءة الشفاه	group	مجموعة
communicate	يتواصل	kindness	عطف
sounds	أصوات	herd	قطيع
prosthetic arm	ذراع اصطناعية	roar	زئير "صوت الأسد" - يزأر
movable elbow	كوع صناعي متحرك	leader	قائد
information	معلومات	hunter	صياد
proud	فخور	entrance	مدخل
poster	ملصق	comment	تعليق
powerful	قوي	hobbies	هوايات
respect	يحترم	walker	مشاية
mouse - mice	فأر - فئران	snack bar	مطعم الوجبات الخفيفة
route	طريق	crawl	يزحف - يحبو
activities	أنشطة	cerebral palsy	الشلل الدماغي
plans	خطط	physiotherapist	أخصائي العلاج الطبيعي

Help your child revise these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع هذه الكلمات.



Reported Questions الأسئلة غير المباشرة

"How are you traveling to London?"

He asked me how I was traveling to London.

"Can you drive a car?"

He asked me if I could drive a car.

Steps: خطوات تحويل السؤال إلى غير مباشر.

1. We use the verb "asked". نستخدم الفعل (asked).
2. When it's a Yes/No question, we use if instead of the quotation marks. إذا كان السؤال بـ "هل" (يبدأ بفعل مساعد) نستخدم (if) كرابط بدلًا من علامات التنصيص.
3. When it's a wh-question, we use the same question word. إذا كان السؤال بأداة استفهام، نستخدم نفس كلمة الاستفهام.
4. We change the tense from present to past. نحول الزمن من المضارع إلى الماضي.
5. Change the pronouns. نغير الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمخاطب.

   you → I - we **we → they**
6. We change the word order, start with the subject, then the verb. Remove the word (do / does). نغير ترتيب الكلمات، نبدأ بالفاعل ثم الفعل. احذف الفعل المساعد (do / does).
7. We omit "?" and put a full stop. نحذف علامة الاستفهام، ونضع نقطة.

ترتيب الجملة بعد التحويل:

Subject + asked + if / wh + subject + verb (past) .... .

Examples:

"Do you hear lots of sounds outside?"
→ He asked us if we heard lots of sounds outside.

"What sounds do you hear every day?"
→ He asked us what sounds we heard every day.

Help your child use reported questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم الأسئلة غير المباشرة.

Noun suffixes لواحق الأسماء

- Suffixes are a group of letters that are added at the end of word.
اللواحق هي مجموعة حروف تُضاف إلى آخر الكلمة.

- Suffixes like ment, ness and ation can change a word into a noun.
اللواحق مثل ment ، ness ، ation يمكن أن تحول الكلمة إلى اسم.

1 verb + -ment

Verb		Noun	
agree	يوافق	agreement	اتفاق
entertain	يسلي	entertainment	تسلية
advertise	يعلن	advertisement	إعلان
improve	يحسن	improvement	تحسين

2 adjective + -ness
(adjectives with y , drop y and add iness)

Adjective		Noun	
happy	سعيد	happiness	سعادة
sad	حزين	sadness	الحزن
kind	لطيف / عطوف	kindness	اللطف / العطف

3 verb + -ion / ation

Verb		Noun	
inform	يخبر	information	معلومات
transform	يحول	transformation	تحويل
transport	ينقل	transportation	وسائل النقل
create	يخلق - يبدع	creation	إبداع

Examples:

- Ali is happy. - I can find happiness with my friends.
- I want someone to entertain me. - We need some entertainment.

Help your child identify noun suffixes.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على لواحق الأسماء.

Superlatives

صيغة التفضيل العليا

- When we want to compare more than two things in an adjective, we use the superlative form. عندما نريد أن نقارن بين أكثر من شيئين في صفة، نستخدم صيغة التفضيل العليا.

Short adjectives الصفات القصيرة

the + adj + est

e.g. Ali is the tallest one in the class.

e.g. Elephants are the biggest animals.

Note:

- Adjectives ending in (e), we add (st).

  nice ⟶ the nicest   fine ⟶ the finest

- Adjectives ending in (a vowel + a consonant), we double the last consonant and add (est).

  fat ⟶ the fattest   big ⟶ the biggest

- Adjectives ending in (a consonant + y), we omit (y) and add (iest).

  heavy ⟶ the heaviest   happy ⟶ the happiest

Long adjectives الصفات الطويلة

the most (الأكثر) / the least (الأقل) + adjective

e.g. Elephants are the most powerful animals in India.

Irregular adjectives صفات غير منتظمة

Adjectives	Comparative	Superlative
good جيد	better than	the best
bad سيئ	worse than	the worst
little قليل	less than	the least
many / much كثير	more than	the most

e.g. The elephant queen was the best of the elephants.

Help your child learn superlatives. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم صيغة التفضيل العليا.

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

Activities on Unit (4)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. .... wears a hearing aid.
   a) **Lara** b) **Tarek** c) **Injy** d) **Amir**
2. Tarek has .... dark hair.
   a) **long** b) **curly** c) **short** d) **straight**
3. Lara wears ....
   a) **hearing aid** b) **glasses** c) **braces** d) **dresses**
4. Lara is great at ....
   a) **math** b) **Arabic** c) **English** d) **science**

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

is - kindness - birthday - isn't - best

Reem : Would you like to come shopping with me? I want to buy a present for my mom.

Mazen : Oh, that's nice, Reem. Is it her 1) .... ?

Reem : No, it 2) .... I just want to buy her a present for being the 3) .... mom.

Hazem : That's a great idea. My mom always says, 4) .... is important.

- Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

prosthetic arm - cheap - comic book - disabilities - movable elbow

David Aguilar Amphoux is from Spain. When he was 18, he built a 1) .... with plastic bricks because he only had one arm. He designed it with a 2) .... and a hand to pick things up. David's dad has written a 3) .... about David. Everyone thinks this is great because it helps people understand more about 4) ....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

If we were all the same, life would be boring. In Mrs Mona's class, Asser is different to his friends because he's tall and he has brown eyes. He's good at science, but his friend Seleem is good at geography. Seleem's hair is <u>curly</u>, but Waleed's hair is straight and he wears glasses. Injy has curly hair and wears braces to help her teeth get straight. The important thing is that we look after each other. People shouldn't be unkind to someone because they're different. Amal has curly hair and she uses a wheelchair because she can't walk well. She has two brothers, but her friend Amina has one brother. Amina has a hearing aid because she has problems hearing.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Injy wears .... to help her teeth get straight.
   - a) **a dress** b) **braces** c) **glasses** d) **shorts**
2. The main idea of the text is "..".
   - a) **We are all the same** b) **We're all different**
   - c) **We're similar** d) **We have the same hair**
3. The underlined word "curly" is opposite to ....
   - a) **long** b) **short** c) **straight** d) **black**

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What do people with hearing problems wear?

....

5. Why is Asser different to his friends?

....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1. She wears .... to get her teeth straight.
   a) glasses b) braces c) jackets d) dresses
2. Tamer is good at .... He likes computers.
   a) Math b) PE c) ICT d) art
3. I can hear people .... in the street.
   a) playing b) talking c) running d) walking
4. I can send .... messages.
   a) text b) next c) sign d) post
5. People with hearing problems can communicate in .... language.
   a) English b) lip c) sign d) signal
6. In my .... , that book is a bit boring.
   a) think b) believe c) opinion d) mind
7. Soha can't hear well, so she is wearing ....
   a) head phones b) a hearing aid c) braces d) glasses
8. Fares felt .... when they made some beautiful posters.
   a) sad b) proud c) angry d) bored
9. We could find some .... on the internet.
   a) inform b) informal c) information d) informs
10. "...................." means a loud sound made by lions.
   a) Shout b) Roar c) Meowing d) Sing
11. "...................." is a way that you follow to get from one place to another.
   a) Sea b) Truck c) Route d) Lake
12. My little brother is one year, so he just ....
   a) runs b) walks c) crawls d) jumps
13. Hana can't walk well, so she uses a ....
   a) stick b) walker c) bike d) car

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Language)

1. She asked if I .... do American sign language.
   a) will b) may c) can d) could
2. He asked me what .... about finger spelling.
   a) did I know b) do I know c) I knew d) I know
3. Sara .... me where I played tennis.
   a) asks b) asked c) told d) said
4. I asked them .... Tarek liked sending text messages.
   a) what b) if c) that d) this
5. He asked me .... with my mom and dad.
   a) where I live b) if I lived c) if I live d) do I live
6. The queen elephant was the .... of all the elephants.
   a) kind b) kinder c) kindest d) most kind
7. The lion is .... animal in the forest.
   a) the strongest b) stronger c) strongest d) strong
8. The elephant is the .... animal.
   a) big b) bigger c) most big d) biggest
9. Ahmed is .... boy in my class.
   a) tall b) taller c) tallest d) the tallest
10. Cartoons are .... programs on TV.
    a) funny b) funnier c) funniest d) the funniest
11. Mom asked me how my school ....
    a) is b) was c) are d) were
12. Ahmed asked me .... any brothers.
    a) do I have b) if I have c) I do have d) if I had
13. English is the .... subject at school.
    a) difficult b) more difficult
    c) least difficult d) less difficult

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. most powerful - India - in - Elephants - the - are - animals - .

   ....

2. the - ran - 200-meter - fastest - race - Talia - in the - .

   ....

3. I've - movie - That - seen - the - was - worst - ever - .

   ....

4. isn't - at school - the - Geography - difficult - subject - most - .

   ....

5. the oldest - My - person - grandfather - family - is - in my - .

   ....

6. the - on - programs - Cartoons - TV - are - funniest - .

   ....

7. asked - why - Mom - liked - I - English - me - .

   ....

8. you - What - think - do - about - books - comic - ?

   ....

6 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Description of a friend

Guiding words:

(wear - green eyes - favorite food - friendly - happy)

....

....

....

....

The Story

1 Read and write (Yes) or (No).

1. Asser didn't like it when his Grandma picked him up from school.
2. Mayar has a new book.
3. Asser and Mayar make a cake at Grandma's house.
4. Asser wants his Mom and Dad to go to the concert.
5. Mayar's mom and dad are in the park.
6. The sensory garden is just for Mayar.
7. When Asser saw Grandma, he hugged her.
8. Mayar has dance classes in the evening.
9. Asser's parents usually do something nice with the children on the weekend.
10. Asser and Shady were resting in the park when they heard Asser's mom and dad.
11. Asser's parents were making a sensory garden to grow vegetables.
12. They are going to plant flowers so there will be nice things to smell.
13. There will be wind chimes to listen to.
14. There will be a swimming pool for children to swim in.
15. Mrs Azza gave Asser a braille book.
16. Grandma and the children made a cake together.
17. Asser found some muddy boots on the seat of the car.
18. Mayar wants to listen to the radio in the car.
19. Asser and Shady sat by some tall trees in the park.
20. Asser and Shady heard Shady's parents talking in the park.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

2 Read and answer the questions.

1. What did Grandma offer to make for Asser and Mayar?

....

2. What did Asser see when he opened the car trunk?

....

3. How often did Asser and Mayar go to Grandma's house that week?

....

4. Who came by Grandma's house and spoke to Asser?

....

5. What did Asser's mom show him when he saw her in the park?

....

6. What did Mayar have to read?

....

7. What was Asser worried that his parents might forget?

....

8. Why did Asser go to the garage?

....

9. Where did Asser see his parents?

....

10. What were his parents doing?

....

11. Why did Asser's parents have muddy boots?

....

12. What was Asser's parents' secret?

....

13. How did Asser find out his parents' secret?

....

Reading Skills

مهارات القراءة

How to deal with the "Reading Comprehension" question.

كيف تتعامل مع سؤال قطعة الفهم في ورقة الامتحان

قطعة الفهم هي عبارة عن فقرة تتكون من (٨٠ - ٩٠) كلمة وعلى الطالب أن يجيب عن الأسئلة التالية:

١- سؤالين اختيار من متعدد تقيس مدي فهم الطالب لمهارات القراءة التالية:

(حدد الفكرة العامة في النص - حدد معاني كلمات أو عبارات في النص - وضح فهمك لتفاصيل معينة في النص)

ويأتي السؤال بإحدى هذه الصيغ:

١) حدد الفكرة العامة في النص

- This text is about "..................".

Or: The (main idea / general idea) of the text is about "..................".

Or: The text talks about "..................".

٢) حدد معاني كلمات أو عبارات في النص

- The underlined word "................" has the same meaning as "................".

Or: The underlined word "................" is the opposite of the word "................".

Or: The underlined word "................" refers to "................".

Or: The underlined word "................" means "................".

٣) وضح فهمك لتفاصيل معينة في النص

سؤالان من الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام تقيس مدي فهم الطالب لمهارات القراءة التالية:

ويأتي السؤال بإحدى هذه الصيغ:

- ضع استنتاجات منطقية من النص:

- Infer استنتج

- Mention اذكر

- لخص التفاصيل والأفكار الداعمة في النص:

- Summarize the main idea of the text.

Writing Skills

مهارات الكتابة

1- How to write a paragraph: كيف تكتب فقرة إنشائية

١- اترك مسافة في بداية السطر الأول تقريبًا ١ سم.

٢- ابدأ كل جملة بحرف Capital.

٣- ضع (.) في نهاية كل جملة.

٤- اتبع كل علامات الترقيم.

٥- ابدأ جملتك بالفاعل ثم الفعل ونوع بدايات الجمل.

٦- استخدم الزمن المناسب للموضوع.

٧- استخدم جمل بسيطة.

٨- حسن خطك واترك مسافة بين كل كلمة وأخرى.

2- How to write an email: كيف تكتب رسالة بريد إلكتروني

From : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل

To : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل إليه

Subject : موضوع الرسالة

Dear / Hi / Hello اسم المرسل إليه ,

How are you? I'm happy to write this email to you. ← جملة افتتاحية

.... موضوع الرسالة ....

- Write back soon and tell me your news. ← جملة ختامية
- Best wishes.

Yours,

اسم المرسل

Send | A | Saved

3- How to write a biography:

كيف تكتب سيرة ذاتية

١- نذكر اسم الشخص.

- اسم الشخص + is ....
- He / She was born on + تاريخ الميلاد
- He / She began ....

٢- تفاصيل أخري عن الشخص.

- He / She was the first ....
- He / She was / is successful because ....

٣- أهم إنجازاته.

- He / She won ....
- He / She is also .... / Moreover /
- As well as this, he / she is ....

٤- كيف ستكون حياته فيما بعد.

- I think he / she will become the most ....

4- How to write a blog:

كيف تكتب مدونة:

١- اكتب تاريخ اليوم عند بداية كتابة المدونة.

٢- قم بكتابة عنوان مناسب لموضوع المدونة.

٣- صف الأماكن والأحداث التي مرت عليك .

٤- صف ما شعرت به خلال اليوم.

٥- اكتب بعض الضمائر الشخصية مثل (I / My).

٦- استخدم بعض الصور لتوضيح الفكرة.

٧- اكتب رأيك في الموضوع الذي تتحدث عنه باستخدام (I think that) / (In my opinion).

5- How to write a report: كيف تكتب تقرير:

Parts of a report أجزاء التقرير

title - order - pictures - end

❶ The title: tells readers the topic or subject of the report.

العنوان: يخبر القراء عن موضوع التقرير.

❷ The report has a beginning, a middle, and an end. It explains what happened and what order it happened in.

يحتوي التقرير على بداية ووسط ونهاية. وهي تشرح ماذا حدث وما الترتيب الذي حدثت فيه.

❸ The pictures make the report look interesting, and help the reader imagine.

الصور تجعل التقرير يبدو شيقًا وتساعد القارئ على التخيل.

❹ We can use When to talk about the order in which things happen. Both parts are in the same tense.

يمكن استخدام When للحديث عن الترتيب الذي تحدث فيه الأشياء. كلا الجزأين يكونان في نفس الزمن.

e.g. When my bowl was finished, my teacher put it in a kiln.

When the children get a lump of clay, they choose what to make.

6- How to write a diary entry: كيف تكتب مذكرة - يوميات:

1) Write the date. اكتب التاريخ.

2) Start with "Dear Diary". ابدأ بـ (Dear Diary).

3) Write about how you felt. اكتب كيف كان شعورك.

4) Use informal language. استخدم لغة غير رسمية.

5) Use personal pronouns as "I - me" استخدم ضمائر شخصية مثل (I - me).

6) Describe the (places - events). صف (الأماكن والأحداث).

Test (1)

محافظة البحر الاحمر

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Sara moved to a new ....
   a) house b) apartment c) cave d) village
2. Sara's bedroom is very nice and ....
   a) bad b) ugly c) comfortable d) huge
3. Noha is Sara's ....
   a) mom b) aunt c) grandma d) sister
4. There is a .... in Sara's bedroom.
   a) computer b) dog c) TV d) cupboard

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

appliances - games - at - laptop - lighting

In my opinion, electricity is most important in our free time. I like my 1) .... I can do my homework on it. I also can play video 2) .... with my sister. We watch television with my grandma and grandpa in the evening. My father thinks that electricity is more useful for 3) .... He doesn't like the dark and we need lights in the evening. My mother has another opinion. She thinks it's more important in the kitchen because she can't use the kitchen 4) ....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Anish Kapoor is a sculptor. He is from India but he moved to London to study art. He likes to use new and interesting shapes and different materials. One of his famous sculptures is "Tall Tree and the Eye". It stands outside a popular museum is Spain. It is made of stainless steel balls or spheres. Kapoor is a great artist who understands math well. He can make sculptures that will stay in place for a long time. Over the years Kapoor made other famous sculptures like "Cloud Gate" in Chicago, USA. It is very high and it is also made of stainless steel which reflects the sky, the buildings and people around it like a huge mirror.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about ....
   a) Mohamed Salah's life b) pyramids
   c) inventions d) Anish Kapoor's life
2. "Tall Tree and the Eye" is one of Kapoor's famous ....
   a) schools b) banks c) sculptures d) clubs
3. Kapoor is a great artist and .... who understands math well.
   a) sculptor b) doctor c) engineer d) teacher

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What does Kapoor like to use?

....

5. Why does the "Cloud Gate" reflect the sky?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write (YES) or (NO).

1. Asser has a sister. [ ]
2. Shady invited Asser to go to the park. [ ]
3. Mayar's book didn't have words in braille. [ ]
4. There is a fountain in the sensory garden. [ ]

B Read and answer the questions:

1. How did Asser put his pens and pencils?

....

2. When did Mayar's parents learn braille?

....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. When you .... blue and yellow, you can get green.
   a) mixed b) mixing c) mix d) mixes
2. I'll make a smoothie .... it is hot tomorrow.
   a) of b) if c) but d) by
3. People .... get sick if they have a vaccine.
   a) won't b) wouldn't c) couldn't d) didn't
4. My mom needs to clean .... the living room.
   a) at b) on c) down d) up
5. Can you .... out the garbage?
   a) put b) clean c) mop d) hang
6. I am always tired .... playing football.
   a) up b) on c) after d) under

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. you - free - , visit - If - are - us - .

   ....

2. should - up - your - hang - You - clothes - .

   ....

3. blender - The - is - best - appliance - the - .

   ....

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Your pet

Guiding elements:

(space - eat - safe place)

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Test (2)

مديرية التربية والتعليم بدمنهور
إدارة بندر كفر الدوار التعليمية

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Khaled has just started a new ....
   a) club   b) skill   c) school   d) team
2. Khaled thinks .... club is great.
   a) reading   b) music   c) art   d) cooking
3. Last week, they made .... cookies for Eid El Fitr.
   a) usual   b) traditional   c) special   d) healthy
4. This week, they are going to make lemon ....
   a) lemon   b) cookies   c) juice   d) cake

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

website - cinema - photos - exhibition - taking

Magdy is a creative photographer. He is good at 1) ...... photographs. On the weekend, his mom and dad took him to a photography 2) .... After the exhibition, they went into the city and Magdy took 3) .... of things he saw. He shared his photos on the school 4) .... and his friends liked them very much.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

My class worked on a pottery project at school this week. We started with a lump of clay, and we chose what to make. I wanted to make a bowl. First, the teacher showed us how to use a pottery wheel. Then it was our turn. We put on aprons over our clothes. When I put my clay on the wheel, it went fast. It was difficult, and I got **messy**. When my bowl was finished, the teacher put it in a kiln. This is a special oven which gets very hot. It makes the clay hard and strong. Finally, the bowl was ready and the teacher took it out. We waited for the bowl to be cool, and then I used special paint to decorate my bowl.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. He used special .... to decorate the bowl.
   a) jewelry b) shells c) paint d) shapes
2. The class worked on .... at school this week.
   a) making clothes b) a pottery project
   c) a trip d) special paints
3. The opposite of "messy" is ....
   a) lucky b) hot c) wet d) clean

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What is the kiln?

....

5. How do they keep their clothes clean?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write (YES) or (NO).

1. Mayar has dance classes in the evening. ( )
2. Mom and dad learned Braille when Mayar was a baby. ( )
3. When Asser saw Grandma, he smiled. ( )
4. Mom told Asser not to forget his violin for music ( )

B Read and answer the questions:

1. Where was Grandma waiting for Asser and Mayar?

....

2. Who was Mrs Azza?

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Actors wear special .... on stage.
   a) strings b) costumes c) tools d) plays
2. They feel excited when they .... the museum.
   a) visited b) visits c) visiting d) visit
3. To .... means to "go away".
   a) disappear b) watch c) appear d) enter
4. The lights of fireworks made the sky ....
   a) dark b) black c) bright d) cloudy
5. My teacher gave me second .... to do the project.
   a) roof b) chance c) frame d) park
6. He .... walks to school. He takes the bus.
   a) never b) always c) usually d) sometimes

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. is - wood - made - A sculpture - of - .

....

2. They - a school - can - vacation - go - tomorrow - on - .

....

3. are - What - activities - favorite - your - ?

....

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

A school trip

Guiding elements:

(work hard - study - learn - interesting - experiences)

....

....

....

Test (3)

محافظة الاسكندرية
المنطقة الشرقية

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Fady is very clever and ....
   a) sad b) creative c) worried d) relating
2. He creates arts from .... in his free time.
   a) clay b) project c) rubbish d) collage
3. He entered a competition for ....
   a) junk modeling b) painting c) pottery d) sculpture
4. Fady's dad bought him a ....
   a) house b) car c) robot d) bicycle

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

claws - stroke - chin - vaccination - couch

To make your cat feel home, give it a lo of attention. You should 1) .... it regularly to feel safe. Never wake your cat up while sleeping on a bed or a 2) .... , they need to sleep about fifteen hours a day. Cats need a scratch post to sharpen their 3) .... You should take your cat to a vet once a year for 4) .... If you look after your cat, it will be healthy and furry.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Thomas is a special dog. He lives on a beautiful beach where he swims alone or with other people. He loves cookies, playing with balls and digging in the sand. But he is very naughty because whenever he sees a ball, he takes it and hides it in the sand. One day a boy was building a sandcastle when a lot of balls appeared under his castle. The boy was surprised to see so many balls. When Thomas saw the balls, he ran to play with the little boy. Thomas then realized that playing with a friend is more fun than playing alone.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

A) **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Thomas realized that playing with a friend is ....

   a) boring b) interesting c) ugly d) messy

2. Thomas loves ....

   a) biscuits b) bubbles c) jewels d) spheres

3. Thomas is a/an .... dog.

   a) quiet b) organized c) untidy d) naughty

B) **Answer the following questions.**

4. Where does Thomas live?

....

5. Why was the boy surprised?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write (YES) or (NO).

1. Mom and dad learned braille to help Asser to read. ( )
2. Asser and Shady will plant the flowers and hang the wind chimes. ( )
3. The fountain is Mayar's favorite thing. ( )
4. Asser saw his dad's shovel clean. ( )

B Read and answer the questions:

1. What were Asser's parents making?

....

2. What did Asser hope mom and dad remember?

....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. .... do we use a toaster for?
   a) When b) Where c) What d) How
2. If I eat too much, I .... sick.
   a) feel b) feels c) is feeling d) felt
3. When it .... , the road gets wet.
   a) rain b) rains c) rained d) is raining
4. If it's sunny tomorrow, we .... for a walk.
   a) go b) goes c) is going d) will go
5. My cat was hiding .... the chair.
   a) under b) after c) before d) about
6. I always .... my clothes when I come back from school.
   a) put out b) mop up c) pick up d) hang up

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. a blender - make - We - milkshakes - to - use - .

....

2. nervous - you - on - always - Are - stage - ?

....

3. reading - like - books - doesn't - Sameh - comic - .

....

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

A school trip

Guiding elements:

(Last weekend - park/Cairo....etc - sunny - play games - snacks - fun)

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Test (4)

محافظة القليوبية

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Ali and Noha were on school vacation with their ....
   a) friends b) parents c) uncles d) aunts
2. Ali was playing with his new ....
   a) rabbit b) toy c) kitten d) puppy
3. Ali found some .... in the hole.
   a) books b) clothes c) pens d) paper
4. Ali felt very ....
   a) happy b) curious c) worried d) sorry

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

clean - students - air - roofs - building

In Egypt, some classes have their lessons in a garden on the roof of the school. The Shagara at School project design gardens and school 1) .... for schools in Egypt. Green roofs are gardens on the top of a 2) .... They bring nature into the city. They also 3) .... and cool the air. That means that they are great for the environment. The project teaches 4) .... and teachers how to plant a roof garden.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Omar's class worked on a pottery project at school this week. They started with a lump of clay, and they chose what to make. Omar wanted to make a bowl. First, the teacher showed them how to use a pottery wheel. Then it was their turn. They put on aprons over their clothes. When Omar put the clay on the wheel, it went fast. It was difficult and he got messy. When his bowl was finished, the teacher put it in a kiln. This is a special oven which gets very hot. It makes the clay hard and strong. Finally, the bowl was ready and the teacher took it out. They waited for the bowl to be cool, and then Omar used special paint to decorate his bowl.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The teacher showed his students how to use a pottery ....
   a) bowl b) lump c) clothes d) wheel
2. The text is generally about ....
   a) a school trip b) building a house
   c) making pottery d) making clothes
3. The opposite of "**difficult**" is ....
   a) hard b) easy c) strong d) cool

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What did the students put over their clothes?

....

5. What did Omar do after his bowl became cool?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write (YES) or (NO).

1. Asser saw his father waiting at the school garden. [ ]
2. Mayar can read braille books. [ ]
3. Asser saw his father's shovel. It was covered with mud. [ ]
4. A sensory garden is a place where you can catch fish. [ ]

B Read and answer the questions:

1. Where did Asser and Shady go?

....

2. What was Asser's parents' secret?

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Hala .... learned how to iron her own clothes.
   a) quickly b) quick c) quicker d) quickest
2. Omar usually ...... push-ups in his room because he wants to get stranger.
   a) do b) doing c) did d) does
3. It is raining outside, ... we must take our umbrellas.
   a) if b) because c) so d) when
4. He asked when the school ....
   a) starts b) starting c) start d) started
5. If she ...., she will catch the train.
   a) hurried b) hurry c) hurries d) hurrying
6. It is messy here. We need to clean .... the kitchen.
   a) up b) out c) away d) over

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. making - my hand - I - things - prefer - with - .

....

2. does - the doctor - on - What - the bite - put - ?

....

3. important - most - is - lighting - for - Electricity - .

....

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

My big house

Guiding elements:

(living room - bedroom - kitchen - bathroom - garden)

....

....

....

Test (5)

محافظة الغربية
مديرية طنطا التعليمية

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Hazem and his friend went to the Pyramids and .... a lot of photos there.
   a) took   b) visited   c) climbed   d) rode
2. They rode on a rollercoaster in the ....
   a) place   b) souks   c) museum   d) theme park
3. They had lunch at a ....
   a) class   b) restaurant   c) room   d) garden
4. Hazem promised to .... his friend in Cairo.
   a) play   b) drink   c) visit   d) put

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

about - me - opinion - that - think

Ali : Mom, I'd really like to understand English better.
Mom : What do you 1) .... about speaking English all day with me?
Ali : I don't know Mom. In my 2) ...., it might be difficult.
Mom : What 3) .... speaking English at dinner?
Ali : To 4) .... , that's a much better idea.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Birthdays are celebrated differently all over the world. In Egypt, we make delicious cakes for our children and put candles on them to show their age. Most children get presents from their parents and friends. In the USA and Britain, presents are given not only to children, but also to adults. People also give each other birthday cards. In China, it's usual for people to eat peaches and long noodles on their birthdays because they think that food gives them a long life.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. In .... countries, presents are given to adults.
   a) three b) four c) two d) five
2. In China, long .... and peaches can give people a long life
   a) noodles b) pineapples c) tomatoes d) lemon
3. In Egypt, we make .... cakes for children.
   a) bad b) delicious c) small d) short

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why do Egyptians put candles on their birthday cakes?

....

5. What do children get from their parents?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write (YES) or (NO).

1. Asser's grandma takes Mayar and Asser to her house after school. ____
2. Shady and Asser didn't go to the park together. ____
3. A sensory garden is a place where you can study. ____
4. Mayar was very happy with the sensory garden. ____

B Read and answer the questions:

1. Why did Asser's parents have muddy boots?

....

2. Who is Mrs Azza?

....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. If I go tc ɔed late, I .... wake up in the morning.
   a) will b) could c) can't d) are
2. When you go to the beach, ... a sunhat.
   a) took b) take c) taking d) taken
3. I always tidy .... my room on weekends.
   a) on b) up c) in d) under
4. .... makes me healthy and strong.
   a) Swim b) Swimming c) Swam d) Swum
5. I want to go the simulation ....,
   a) theater b) film c) cinema d) T.V.
6. If it's hot tomorrow, I .... make a smoothie.
   a) would b) will c) have d) has

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. bedroom - Sometimes - my - messy - is - brother's - .

....

2. her phone - looks at - never, - Amal - to bed - before - she goes - .

....

3. on - Dalia - the bus - usually - book - her - reads - .

....

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Your school

Guiding elements:

(very big - amazing - laboratory - science - equipment - playground - open area - computer - classroom - study easily)

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Test (6)

محافظة الإسكندرية
إدارة العجمي التعليمية

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We moved into a new apartment a .... ago.
   a) week   b) year   c) month   d) moment
2. I have a new ....
   a) bedroom   b) kitchen   c) bathroom   d) living room
3. We have a big .... in the living room.
   a) disk   b) computer   c) desk   d) flat
4. We can play many .... after we finish our H.W.
   a) toys   b) plays   c) dolls   d) games

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

subject - grade - friends - sweets - computer

My name is Lucy. I'm in 1) .... six. I go to a new school. I start making new 2) .... We play in the playground. I don't like science. My friends help me to study it easily. Now, it's my favorite 3) .... We also have a big lab in the school. We play many games on the 4) .... in our free time.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Today our teacher, Mrs Mona, asks us to do a project on " How can we live in a clean place?". My friends Omar and Ali help me. We go to the school library to get some information. We read a very interesting book about cleanliness. Omar wants to grow more trees. Ali wants to collect all the rubbish in the school so he asks many friends to help us. I make a post to tell our friends how to keep our area clean. Mrs Mona is happy and gives us a prize. She tells us that we should live in a green place. We should be friendly to our environment. Really, we love Mrs Mona and we will listen to her advice.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Mrs Mona asks the students to do a ....
   a) lesson b) map c) project d) plan
2. They go to the .... to get some information.
   a) library b) club c) fair d) class
3. Mrs Mona wants us to live in a .... place.
   a) red b) green c) white d) yellow

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What does Ali want to do to help in the project?

....

5. What does Mrs Mona give the students?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write (YES) or (NO).

1. Mom told Mayar to remember her apron for pottery classes. ( )
2. Asser's book had words in braille. ( )
3. The shovel was covered in ice. ( )
4. Asser practiced his song for the concert. ( )

B Read and answer the questions:

1. What did grandma offer to make for Asser and Mayar?

....

2. Who is Mrs Azza?

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. If you mix yellow and red, you .... orange.
   a) makes b) made c) make d) making
2. What .... you do if you feel sad?
   a) doing b) do c) are d) were
3. He ran because he was late .... the concert.
   a) on b) under c) behind d) for
4. If she hurries, she .... catch the train. I'm not sure.
   a) are b) do c) will d) may
5. You should hang .... your clothes before you go to bed.
   a) up b) on c) out d) down
6. He will .... at home if he is sick.
   a) stayed b) staying c) stays d) stay

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. have - one - up - You - hour - to - your - tidy - bedroom - .

   ....

2. your - What's - tool - favorite - kitchen - ?

   ....

3. do - I - new - a - club - sport - at - the - .

   ....

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Your favorite food

Guiding elements:

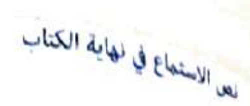
(food - important - healthy - family - mom - every weekend)

....

....

....

Test (7)



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Life on earth is ....

   a) sad   b) sweet   c) bad   d) noisy

2. Every family has a Bill ....

   a) robot   b) cat   c) rabbit   d) monkey

3. The robot works 24 hours a ....

   a) month   b) year   c) week   d) day

4. The Bill robots do all people's ....

   a) chores   b) clothes   c) chorus   d) tours

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

hour - bank - home - raining - chores

Yesterday it was 1) .... , so we all stayed at 2) .... and cleaned it. Mom and dad gave us some 3) .... as a challenge. We had one 4) .... to do our chores.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

On this day, a year ago, something **terrible** happened. The day started normally. In Australia, some Bills were ironing clothes for their humans to wear to work. In Italy, other Bills were quietly making milkshakes, and others were fixing cars. In Egypt, the Bills were making koshari for the next day's lunch. But then, all over the world, the noise of the robots suddenly

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

stopped. All the Bills suddenly broke down. They fell to the ground, and their lights went out.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about
   a) cars b) people c) Bill robots d) milkshakes
2. In Egypt, the Bills were making ....
   a) meat b) fish c) cheese d) koshari
3. The underlined word "terrible" means very ....
   a) good b) nice c) bad d) cold

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What were Bills making in Italy?

....

5. What happened suddenly for all robots?

....



4 The Reader

A Read and write (YES) or (NO).

1. Grandma was busy this week. ( )
2. Asser saw his dad's shovel outside the garage. ( )
3. Mayar listened to an audiobook. ( )
4. Asser was worried about his football match. ( )

B Read and answer the questions:

1. Where did Asser and Mayar have a good time?

....

2. What did Asser and Shady hear at the park?

....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. If I .... a lot of fruit, I'll make a smoothie.
   a) have   b) has   c) had   d) was having
2. I'll mop .... the floor.
   a) over   b) at   c) in   d) up
3. He .... if we could all see the whiteboard.
   a) said   b) asked   c) told   d) tells
4. Gameela is the .... girl in the class.
   a) happy   b) happier   c) happiest   d) worse
5. .... do you practice the piano?
   a) How many   b) How often   c) what   d) How usually
6. .... makes me feel healthy.
   a) Run   b) Runs   c) Running   d) To run

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. nature - is - Where - trail - the - ?

....

2. a - Your - needs - cat - vaccination - .

....

3. Egyptian - Fathy - was - architect - Hassan - a famous - .

....

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

School trips

Guiding words:

(exciting - experiences - places - real life)

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Test (8)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Nebsin didn't want to ....

a) eat b) drink c) wash d) get up

2. The sun was ....

a) cold b) bright c) light d) cool

3. The bed was ....

a) hard b) noisy c) comfortable d) bad

4. Nebsin's mom was making ....

a) breakfast b) lunch c) dinner d) snack

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

bridge - quickest - steep - small - quicker

The village where Lina and Sarah lived was 1) ...., and had 2) .... mountains all around it. The 3) .... over the river was the 4) .... way to get to the town, with the school, stores, doctors and sports centers.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Andy Goldsworthy is a famous British artist who works both with and in nature. He creates sculptures that are made with natural materials, such as flowers, leaves, snow, grass and wood. To do this, he uses only his

hands and simple tools. Then instead of putting his works in a gallery, he presents them outdoors in their natural environment. Because they are in the wind, sun and rain, the works are usually temporary.

A) **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Andy Goldsworthy is from ....
   a) Egypt   b) Britain   c) USA   d) France
2. He uses only his hands and simple ....
   a) devices   b) tools   c) machines   d) snacks
3. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to ....
   a) materials   b) tools   c) his works   d) leaves

B) **Answer the following questions.**

4. Where does he present his works?

....

5. Why are the works usually temporary?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write (YES) or (NO).

1. Asser and his grandma saw Mayar come out of her classroom. ( )
2. Asser's mom will pick them up from Grandma's at ten o'clock. ( )
3. Asser's Grandma asked him to take his water bottle. ( )
4. Grandma would love to do something to help. ( )

B Read and answer the questions:

1. Where did Asser and Shady have fun?

....

2. What was Asser thinking about?

....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. When you heat water, it ....
   a) boiled b) boils c) was boiling d) boiling
2. I'll hang .... my clothes before I go to bed.
   a) in b) on c) up d) out
3. Lina said that she .... listened to the radio.
   a) has b) have c) is having d) had
4. Our house is the .... in town.
   a) old b) older c) oldest d) as old
5. .... a sunny day, I go to the park.
   a) At b) On c) In d) By
6. .... you like me to tidy up the room?
   a) Can b) Shall c) Would d) Could

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. engineer - the - A - solved - computer - problem - .

....

2. bedroom - My - sometimes - messy - is - brother's - .

....

3. worried - a concert - before - is - Ahmed - always - .

....

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Studying the past

Guiding words:

(past - understand - events - created - cultures)

....

....

....

Test (9)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب .

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Aban lives in ....

a) India b) China c) Bangladesh d) England

2. His school is on a ....

a) train b) boat c) bus d) mountain

3. Sometime in his country, there are ....

a) storms b) winds c) volcanoes d) floods

4. There are .... children in his class.

a) ten b) twenty c) twelve d) eighteen

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

creative - worried - art - playground - river

Samia : Hey, Amira. How are you? You look1) ....

Amira : I am. I'm making some outdoor 2) .... for the 3) .... project competition, but it's very windy today. When it's windy, the leaves and flowers in my art move.

Samia : Oh, dear. Where is the art?

Amira : It's at the back of the school 4) ....

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

How can you make your cat feel at home? Give your cat lots of attention so it feels **safe**. You should stroke it. This means that you should move your hand over its back, or under its chin – cats love this! They like

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

a warm, comfortable bed, but sometimes they just sleep on the couch! Don't wake it up – cats need to sleep for about 15 hours every day! They like small meals at different times in the day. Cats shouldn't have much milk to drink. Milk is bad for them. Water is better.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is how to ....
   a) **hurt cats** b) **care for cats** c) **buy cats** d) **sell cats**
2. Cats like to sleep for about .... hours a day.
   a) **five** b) **ten** c) **fifteen** d) **fifty**
3. The underlined word **"safe"** is opposite to ....
   a) **good** b) **dangerous** c) **warm** d) **happy**

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Where do cats sometimes sleep?

....

5. Why do cats need lots of attention?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write (YES) or (NO).

1. Mayar has a new book. ( )
2. Mom and dad aren't busy this week. ( )
3. Dad's shovel was in the garage. ( )
4. Shady is Asser's friend. ( )

B Read and answer the questions:

1. Why did Asser's parents have muddy boots?

....

2. What was Mayar's favorite thing in the sensory garden?

....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. If it's too hot outside, we .... inside the house.
   a) can stay b) are staying c) could stay d) would stay
2. She asked .... at school.
   a) if we communicate b) how we communicated
   c) how we communicate d) do we communicate
3. That man is the .... chef in our city.
   a) good b) bad c) better d) best
4. She hates milk. She .... drinks it.
   a) always b) usually c) never d) often
5. I'm always nervous when I'm .... stage.
   a) at b) on c) in d) into
6. My brother always puts .... the garbage.
   a) on b) away c) out d) up

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. sport - the - What - is - difficult - most - ?

....

2. things - I - my - with - prefer - hand - making - .

....

3. make - is going to - choir - Dalia - for - costumes - the - .

....

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Chores at home

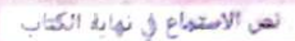
Guiding words:

(mop up - put out - put away - hang up)

....

....

Test (10)



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Sibelius monument was built in ....

   a) **1976** b) **1967** c) **1960** d) **1970**

2. Jean Sibelius was a famous ....

   a) **baker** b) **doctor** c) **teacher** d) **musician**

3. Sibelius was from ....

   a) **England** b) **Poland** c) **Finland** d) **France**

4. Finland is a country in .... Europe.

   a) **northern** b) **southern** c) **eastern** d) **western**

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

cakes - birthday - organizing - surprise - balloons

It's Grandma's 1) .... next week and we're 2) .... a special party for her. If we don't tell her, it'll be a big 3) .... Mom is going to make special 4) .... We are going to help her.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

I joined a new club at school this term. We are learning to use computers to make animations. It's good fun! At the moment, I'm making a story with moving pictures about somebody who makes a rocket and goes to the Moon. I also go to music club every week. I play the violin, and I'll be in a concert next week – I'm a bit **nervous!**

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The writer joined a/an .... club at school this term.
   a) **swimming** b) **computer** c) **art club** d) **English**
2. They use the computers to make ....
   a) **animations** b) **animals** c) **birds** d) **plays**
3. The underlined word "nervous" means ....
   a) **calm** b) **quiet** c) **worried** d) **scary**

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What instrument does the writer play?

....

5. What is he making at the moment?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write (YES) or (NO).

1. Asser and Mayar have a bad time with Grandma. ( )
2. Asser wanted his parents to come and watch him at the school concert. ( )
3. When Asser's parents saw him, they were surprised. ( )
4. Asser enjoyed showing Shady around the sensory garden. ( )

B Read and answer the questions:

1. How were dad's boots?

....

2. Where did the children stay that week?

....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. When you finish your homework, ... it to your teacher.
   a) gives b) will give c) giving d) give
2. Let's tidy .... the house before your mom gets home.
   a) up b) down c) off d) in
3. A man said that they .... a new bridge.
   a) build b) are building c) were building d) builds
4. Mona is .... one in the class.
   a) tall b) short c) tallest d) the tallest
5. Reading books makes me .... happy.
   a) feel b) feels c) felt d) feeling
6. He .... me why I was late.
   a) said b) told c) asked d) wondered

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. want - a present - I - buy - to - mom - for - .
   ....
2. the - What - do - elephant - did - ?
   ....
3. puts - garbage - out - My - the - brother - .
   ....

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Green City School

Guiding words:

(environment - garden - solar panels - recycle - library)

....
....
....

Test (11)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Noha and Hesham are talking about a ....

a) sport b) subject c) competition d) restaurant

2. They have to enter a .... project competition.

a) bad b) creative c) ugly d) terrible

3. Noha's favorite activity is ....

a) reading b) writing c) fishing d) painting

4. She always feels .... when she's painting.

a) sad b) angry c) bad d) happy

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

object - carefully - photograph - park - paint

Last week, our club went for a walk in the 1).................... . When our teacher pointed to an 2).................... , we took a 3).................... of it, but we could only take one photo, so we had to to look 4).................... and decide where to stand. It was fun and it made me excited about the subject. When we compared our photos later, they were really different!

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

If we were all the same, life would be boring. In Mrs Mona's class, Asser is different to his friends because he's tall and he has brown eyes. He's good at science, but <u>his</u> friend Seleem is good at geography. Seleem's hair is curly, but Waleed's hair is straight and he wears glasses. Injy has curly hair and wears braces to help her teeth get straight.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

The important thing is that we look after each other. People shouldn't be unkind to someone because they're different.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The opposite of "boring" is
   a) interesting b) sad c) bad d) bored
2. Asser is tall and has .... eyes.
   a) blue b) green c) brown d) yellow
3. The underlined pronoun "his" refers to
   a) Asser b) Seleem c) Mona d) Injy

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What does Waleed wear?

....

5. What subject is Asser good at?

....



A Read and write (YES) or (NO).

1. Mayar's book has words in braille. ( )
2. Grandma offered to make a cake for the children. ( )
3. Asser put the school bags in the open trunk. ( )
4. There will be water chimes in the garden. ( )

B Read and answer the questions:

1. What did mom and dad learn when Mayar was a baby?

....

2. Where did Asser see his dad's shovel?

....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Ali .... his lessons hard.
   a) usually study b) usually studies
   c) study usually d) studies usually
2. If I have fruit and milk, I .... a milkshake.
   a) would make b) are making c) will make d) made
3. He asked me where ....
   a) do I live b) I live c) did I live d) I lived
4. Cairo is the .... city in Africa.
   a) biggest b) bigger c) big d) smaller
5. .... you mop up the water, please?
   a) Could b) Shall c) Must d) Should
6. I don't have a bike. I .... cycle to school.
   a) always b) usually c) never d) sometimes

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. next - grandma's - It's - birthday - week - my - .
   ....
2. at - Mom - work - today - isn't - .
   ....
3. heat - you - boils - When - water, - it - .
   ....

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Tall Tree and the Eye sculpture

Guiding words:

(sculpture - Spain - steel - strong - spheres - pattern)

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Test (12)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Anish Kapoor is a/an ....
   a) designer b) painter c) actor d) sculptor
2. He was born in ....
   a) India b) England c) Egypt d) China
3. He moved to London to study ....
   a) engineering b) English c) art d) music
4. He likes to use new and interesting ....
   a) tools b) sizes c) colors d) shapes

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

understand - arm - book - movable - foot

David Aguilar Amphoux is from Spain. When he was 18, he built a prosthetic **1)** .... with plastic bricks because he only had one arm. He designed it with a **2)** .... elbow and a hand to pick things up. David's dad has written a comic **3)** .... about David. Everyone thinks this is great because it helps people **4)** .... more about disabilities. Prosthetic arms and legs can be expensive to make, but David made his cheaply with plastic bricks.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Tall Tree and the Eye is a **famous** sculpture by Anish Kapoor. It stands outside the Guggenheim Museum in Bilbao, Spain. This sculpture is about 13 meters tall. It is made of 73 stainless steel balls, or spheres. Stainless steel is very shiny, so when you look at Tall Tree and the Eye, you can

see your own face many times. The spheres are arranged in an irregular pattern. This makes them look like bubbles which are floating! Kapoor is a great artist. He understands math well, and he also understands materials. This means he can make sculptures that will stay in place for a long time.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about a ....
   a) sculpture b) museum c) material d) subject
2. The underlined word "**famous**" means..............................
   a) unknown b) small c) well-known d) tiny
3. The spheres are arranged in an .... pattern.
   a) circle b) irregular c) regular d) round

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Who made Tall Tree and the Eye?

....

5. How do you know that Kapoor was a great artist?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write (YES) or (NO).

1. Asser and Mayar have a good time with Grandma. ( )
2. Outside the garage, Asser saw his dad's shovel. ( )
3. Asser and Shady walked around the bushes. ( )
4. Asser enjoyed showing Shady around the sensory garden. ( )

B Read and answer the questions:

1. What was Mayar's favorite thing in the garden?

....

2. How did Asser's parents look when they saw him in the park?

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. This restaurant is .... busy. Many people visit it every day.
   a) sometimes b) never c) not d) always
2. When I meet my friends, we .... animations.
   a) made b) make c) making d) makes
3. I think we have to clean .... the kitchen. It's really messy.
   a) out b) down c) off d) up
4. She forgot to .... out the garbage yesterday.
   a) put b) hang c) pick d) mop
5. How .... does your father walk to work?
   a) often b) always c) usually d) never
6. She asked me if .... in Cairo.
   a) I live b) do I live c) I lived d) did I live

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. stop - is - **My** - house - near - the bus - .
   ....
2. dishes - **She** - away - is - putting - the - .
   ....
3. do - tidy up - room - **How** - your - often - you - ?
   ....

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

Your opinion about school trips

Guiding words:

(In my opninion - First of all - In addition - Finally)

....

....

Test (13)



نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Schools give children a good ....

a) **meal** b) **education** c) **uniform** d) **party**

2. Children start .... school at 7 years old.

a) **prep** b) **elementary** c) **high** d) **KG**

3. .... people move from place to place.

a) **City** b) **Country** c) **Nomadic** d) **Egyptian**

4. Teachers have to be .... with the timetable.

a) **hard** b) **flexible** c) **fast** d) **nice**

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

kindness - groups - information - advertisement - kind

OK, everyone, I want you to get into **1)** .... to make posters about animals that live in tropical rainforests. It should be an **2)** .... for the rainforest. I would like colorful posters with lots of interesting **3)** .... You can get in your groups now. I'd like everyone to work together and don't forget -**4)** .... is important.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Today, our teacher, Mrs Mona, asked us, "How are we different to each other?" That's an easy question to answer! Asser is very tall. He's taller than everyone else in the class. I'm very short. I have green eyes and Asser has brown eyes. Seleem's hair is **curly**, but Waleed's hair is very

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

straight, and he wears glasses. Injy wears braces to help her teeth get straight. Amal uses a wheelchair because she cannot walk well. Amina has a hearing aid because she has problems hearing.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Asser is very ....
   a) short   b) tiny   c) small   d) tall
2. I have .... eyes.
   a) brown   b) blue   c) green   d) black
3. The opposite of 'curly" is ....
   a) long   b) short   c) straight   d) black

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What does Waleed wear?

....

5. Why does Injy wear braces?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write (YES) or (NO).

1. When Asser's parents saw him, they were surprised. ( )
2. Asser and Shady started helping. It was easy work. ( )
3. Asser and Mayar have pottery classes at lunchtime. ( )
4. Mom and dad were happy to see Mayar's new book. ( )

B Read and answer the questions:

1. What did Mayar's parents learn when she was a baby?

....

2. How did Asser's parents look when they saw him?

....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Lake Nasser is the .... lake in Egypt.
   a) big b) bigger c) biggest d) more big
2. My friends make me ....
   a) happily b) calmly c) happy d) noisily
3. He said that he .... at the party the day before.
   a) was b) is c) will be d) be
4. If I'm sad, I ....
   a) painted b) is painting c) paint d) am painting
5. I'm always tired .... a concert.
   a) on b) as c) after d) when
6. You should .... your parents if you're worried.
   a) inform b) information c) informing d) informed

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. roar - attention - Elephants - get - to - .

....

2. was - vacation - school - Sameh - on - .

....

3. when - What - are - you - hungry - do - you - do - ?

....

7 Write a text of SEVENTY (70) words about:

A strange day

Guiding words:

(Yesterday - interactive - whiteboard - information)

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Test (14)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The school show was after two ....
   a) days b) weeks c) months d) years
2. Waleed is going to play the ....
   a) guitar b) flute c) harp d) piano
3. The choir is going to sing .... songs.
   a) beautiful b) bad c) sad d) terrible
4. Dalia is going to make .... for the choir.
   a) books b) bags c) costumes d) food

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

do - opinion - think - addition - right

Omar : Hello, Sara. What do you think of playing sport?

Sara : In my 1).............................., sport is fun.

Omar : You're 2)..............................

Sara : In 3).............................., playing sport keeps you healthy.

Omar : I think students should 4).................. sport every day in schools.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

I think the blender is the best kitchen appliance! If it's hot tomorrow, I'll make a smoothie with fruit and ice! I use it for making milkshakes with my mom. My mom uses it to make delicious soups, too. Did you know that a Polish-American man called Stephen Póplawski invented the blender in 1922? He put a sharp blade in the bottom of a tall glass. When the blade turns, <u>it</u> chops the food. He added a small motor. The motor turned the

blade, which blended the food together. He used his new invention to make milkshakes.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the text is about the ....
   a) **blender** b) **fridge** c) **cooker** d) **iron**
2. Stephen Poplawski is a Polish- .... man.
   a) **French** b) **American** c) **Indian** d) **Chinese**
3. The underlined pronoun "it" prefers to ....
   a) **glass** b) **motor** c) **blade** d) **blender**

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What does mom make with the blender?

....

5. Who invented the blender?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write (YES) or (NO).

1. Asser put his pens and pencils away neatly. ( )
2. The family all got in the car to go to school. ( )
3. Asser and Mayar went to their grandma's house. ( )
4. Asser's parents looked at each other and cried. ( )

B Read and answer the questions:

1. What did the plan show? ....
2. Where did Asser and Shady have fun? ....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. If you want to get up early, you can .... an alarm.
   a) setting b) sets c) set d) had set
2. I will mop .... the water.
   a) down b) on c) off d) up
3. He said that he .... just listened to the radio.
   a) has b) have c) had d) is having
4. He .... if we could all see the whiteboard.
   a) said b) told c) says d) asked
5. When Samia runs, she .... happy.
   a) feel b) feels c) felt d) feeling
6. I often get nervous .... a concert.
   a) on b) when c) before d) into

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. school - never - Lilly - walks - to - .
   ....
2. post - A cat - needs - scratch - a - .
   ....
3. they - Where - play - did - football - ?
   ....

7 Write a text of seventy (70) words about:

Caring for your turtle

Guiding words:

(nice - flowers - food - space - soil - heat lamp)

....

....

Test (15)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Give your cat .... of attention.
   a) few b) little c) no d) lots
2. Attention makes your cat feel ....
   a) safe b) sad c) angry d) dangerous
3. You should .... your cat.
   a) hit b) hurt c) stroke d) strike
4. You should move your .... over its back.
   a) leg b) hand c) foot d) ankle

2 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

tired - concert - guitar - Thank - make

Interviewer : Wow, Mazen! The 1) .... was amazing. You're so talented!

Mazen : 2) .... you so much! I loved it, but I'm always 3) .... after a concert!

Interviewer : I'm not surprised. You played the 4) .... and sang for over an hour.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Anish Kapoor is a sculptor. He was born in India in 1954, and moved to London, UK, to study art in 1973. He likes to use new and interesting shapes as well as different materials. Kapoor makes very large pieces of art for public places, and people can see his art all over the world. Tall Tree and the Eye is a famous sculpture by Anish Kapoor. It stands outside the Guggenheim Museum in Bilbao, Spain. This sculpture is about 13 meters tall. It is made of 73 stainless steel balls, or spheres.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Anish Kapoor is a ....

a) **sculptor** b) **doctor** c) **baker** d) **teacher**

2. The Guggenheim Museum is in Bilbao, ...

a) **France** b) **Spain** c) **Germany** d) **England**

3. Kapoor is an .... sculptor.

a) **Indian** b) **Londoner** c) **English** d) **Spanish**

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Where was Anish Kapoor born?

....

5. How tall is Tall Tree and the Eye?

....

4 The Reader

A Read and write (YES) or (NO).

1. Asser looked out of the classroom door for his mom. ( )
2. Asser put the school bags in the open trunk. ( )
3. Asser was angry about the concert. ( )
4. Asser's dad put down his spade. ( )

B Read and answer the questions:

1. What did Grandma offer to make for Asser and Mayar?

....

2. How did Asser find out his parents' secret?

....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. When you go to the beach, ... a sunhat.
   a) took b) taking c) take d) takes
2. We have to put .... the garbage tonight.
   a) on b) out c) up d) in
3. I don't have a bike. I .... cycle to school.
   a) always b) usually c) often d) never
4. January is often the .... month in the year.
   a) cold b) colder c) coldest d) cold as
5. .... you like me to put away the toys?
   a) Can b) Would c) Shall d) Could
6. How .... do you visit your aunt?
   a) many b) old c) often d) old

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. in - subject - What - easiest - is - school - the - ?

....

2. like - Cats - bed - comfortable - a - .

....

3. a smoothie - I'll - fruit - ice - with - make - and - .

....

7 Write a text of Seventy (70) words about:

Electricity

Guiding words:

(useful - free time - video games - kitchen)

....

....

Listening Texts

Unit (1)

1) Listen and choose.

Noha and Hesham are talking about a competition. They have to enter a creative project competition. Noha's favorite activity is painting. She always feels happy when she's painting. If she's sad , she paints. Hesham doesn't feel happy when he's painting. He prefers making things with his hands. His favorite activity is making pottery. He thinks it's relaxing .

Unit (2)

1) Listen and choose.

You can buy indoor plants from supermarkets, florists, and garden centers. There are stores that sell many different plants. It might be best to buy from a garden center as the assistants know how to look after the plants and they can give you some useful advice. Make sure you know what your plant is called so you can find out more about it.

Unit (3)

1) Listen and choose.

Today we practiced inside for the first half hour. First, we had to run up and down the playground 20 times. Then we climbed a rope. That was really difficult. After that, we ran a 400-meter race outside. I love running but it makes me very tired. After that, we played a game for 15 minutes. It was great. My team won!

Unit (4)

1) Listen and choose.

Tarek wears a hearing aid. He's great at playing the guitar, and he has one brother. He's tall and he has straight dark hair. Lara is short. She has long curly hair and she wears glasses. She is great at science. She has two brothers and a sister.

Test (1)

1) Listen and choose.

Sara moved into a new apartment last month. It is very big. She prefers her bedroom. It's very nice and comfortable. She shares it with her sister Noha. There is a cupboard in her room for clothes. She has space for her hobbies and for her friends

Test (2)

1) Listen and choose.

My name's Khaled. I've just started a new club Cooking club is great. Last week, we made special cookies for Eid Al-Fitr. This week, we're going to make lemon cake. It's going to be fun.

Test (3)

1) Listen and choose.

Fady is very clever and creative. He creates arts from clay in his free time. He entered a competition for pottery. He won a prize. His dad bought him a bicycle.

Test (4)

1) Listen and choose.

Ali and Noha were on school vacation with their parents. Ali was playing with his new kitten. It ran through a hole in the wall. Ali found some paper in the hole. He felt very curious.

Test (5)

1) Listen and choose.

Hazem and his friend went to the Pyramids last week. They took a lot of photos there. Then they went to the theme park where they rode a rollercoaster. They had lunch at a restaurant. Hazem enjoyed his time and promised to visit his friend in Cairo again.

Test (6)

1) Listen and choose.

We moved into a new apartment a month ago. I have a new bedroom and share it with my brother. I like it because we have big space for our hobbies. We have a big desk in the living room for our TV. We can play many games on the computer after we finish our H.W.

Test (7)

1) Listen and choose.

It's the year 2089, and life on Earth is sweet! Humans have easy lives because every family has a Bill robot which works 24 hours a day for them. The Bill robots do all their chores.

Test (8)

1) Listen and choose.

Nebsin didn't want to get up. The sun was bright, but his bed was comfortable."Nebsin!" Dad called. "Time for school!" Nebsin went into the kitchen. His mom was making breakfast, and his brother was playing.

Test (9)

1) Listen and choose.

Aban lives in Bangladesh. His school is on a boat because sometimes in his country there are floods. There are 20 children in his class. there are solar panels on the roof of the boat to make electricity.

Test (10)

1) Listen and choose.

The Sibelius monument was built in 1967 to celebrate the famous musician Jean Sibelius, who died in 1957. Sibelius was from Finland, a country in northern Europe.

Test (11)

1) Listen and choose.

Noha and Hesham are talking about a competition. They have to enter a creative project competition. Noha's favorite activity is painting. She always feels happy when she's painting. If she's sad, she paints.

Test (12)

1) Listen and choose.

Anish Kapoor is a sculptor. He was born in India in 1954, and moved to London, UK, to study art in 1973. He likes to use new and interesting shapes as well as different materials. Kapoor makes very large pieces of art for public places, and people can see his art all over the world.

Test (13)

1) Listen and choose.

Schools give children a good education. In some countries, children start elementary school at seven years old. In other countries, the children are younger. In other countries in Africa, for example, Kenya, some people have a nomadic culture, where they move from place to place. This means their teacher has to be flexible with the timetable.

Test (14)

1) Listen and choose.

It was two weeks until the school show, and everybody was excited. Everybody except Magdy. Waleed is going to play the piano. The choir is going to sing beautiful songs. Dalia is going to make costumes for the choir.

Test (15)

1) Listen and choose.

How can I make my cat feel at home? Give your cat lots of attention so it feels safe. You should stroke it. This means that you should move your hand over its back or under its chin - cats love this.

Final Revision Answers

Units

Unit (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. creative
2. happy
3. sad
4. relaxing

2) Read and complete the dialog.

1. outdoor art
2. playground
3. sees
4. park

-) Read and complete the text.

1. Finland
2. concerts
3. sculpture
4. steel

3) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. British 2. works 3. gallery

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Andy creates sculptures.
5. They're natural materials such as flowers leaves, snow, grass and wood.

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. animations
2. beads
3. pottery
4. sculpture
5. material
6. outdoor art
7. junk modeling
8. junk modeling
9. reflected
10. bubbles
11. play
12. choir
13. photography

-) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. feels 2. wear 3. heat
4. stay 5. cries 6. wears
7. give 8. doesn't 9. on
10. before 11. at 12. after
13. behind

5) Put the words in the correct order.

1. Andy Goldsworthy creates sculptures with natural materials.
2. What material is the scuplture made of?
3. When I run, I feel happy.
4. Have you ever performed on stage at school?
5. Ahmed looked very confident at the concert.
6. What did Samir do for the school show?
7. There is an advertisement for a concert on the website.
8. Who do you eat with at lunchtime?

6) Write a text of (70) words about:

A school show

Yesterday, it was the school show. It was great. I was in a play because I like acting. Tamer was the photographer for the school show. When everyone was on stage, Tamer took photos. The play was about a family at home in the living room. We needed some furniture like a sofa, a lamp, and some pictures for the wall. My teacher Mr Ali is very good at making things. He showed me what to do.

Unit (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. supermarkets
2. stores
3. assistants
4. plant

2) Read and complete the dialog.

1. put away
2. put out
3. pick up
4. hang up

-) Read and complete the text.

1. mop up
2. put away
3. pick up
4. hang up

3) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Friday 2. Grandma 3. beautiful

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Next week. 5. In Samira's room.

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. playing 2. swap 3. playing
4. toaster 5. push-ups 6. An invention
7. Motor 8. chores 9. blender
10. chess 11. blender 12. cartoons
13. hairdryer

-) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. have 2. will blend 3. boils
4. want 5. is 6. away
7. up 8. up 9. out
10. up 11. up 12. mop
13. will visit

5) Put the words in the correct order.

1. Seleem shares his room with his brother Maged.

2. What do you have in your bedroom?
3. Hana is going to play chess next month.
4. My dad doesn't play the violin.
5. What is Nagwa making for her brother Ali?
6. Omar is cleaning up the kitchen.
7. Fares needs to pick up his toys from the floor.
8. Do you live with your grandparents?

6) Write a text of (70) words about:

A description of a room

We moved into a new apartment last month. I'm happy because I have a new room. My new room is large, light and more comfortable. I share it with my brother, Hassan. We are always good friends. We have a long desk for PCs, so we can do our homework in our bedroom. When we finish our homework, we can play computer games in our room. We watch cartoons with our friends, too.

Unit (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. inside 2. 20 times
3. difficult 4. 400

2) Read and complete the dialog.

1. opinion 2. right
3. addition 4. do

-) Read and complete the text.

1. instruments 2. concert
3. drama 4. costumes

3) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. present 2. stories 3. boring

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Is studying the past important?
5. So that we don't repeat the same mistakes in the future.

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. green roof 2. nomadic 3. subject
4. boarding 5. uniform 6. neat
7. swimming 8. green 9. Collapse
10. repair 11. court 12. scribe
13. papyrus

-) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. always goes 2. never 3. is sometimes
4. plays 5. often 6. had
7. said 8. were building
9. that 10. could 11. sent
12. had 13. was

5) Put the words in the correct order.

1. Fares goes swimming with his friends.
2. Does Dalia usually read her book on the bus?
3. Youssef and Adam are always early to school.
4. Amal never looks at her phone before she goes to bed.
5. My brother's bedroom is sometimes messy.
6. Math and French are my favorite subjects.
7. Is mom at work today?
8. If it rains, the flowers will grow.

6) Write a text of (70) words about:

Green City School

At Green City School, they want to help the environment. They use solar panels to make electricity. They recycle a lot of paper. They have a school garden to grow plants, vegetables, and fruit. It is a great place to learn about nature. The climbing frame in the Eco-playground is made of recycled materials. The library is green because all the electricity comes from solar panels.

Unit (4)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. Tarek 2. straight
3. glasses 4. science

2) Read and complete the dialog.

1. birthday 2. isn't
3. best 4. kindness

-) Read and complete the text.

1. prosthetic arm 2. movable elbow
3. comic book 4. disabilities

3) Read the following text and answer.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. braces 2. We are all different.
3. straight

B) Answer the following questions.

4. A hearing aid.
5. Because he is tall and he has brown eyes.

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. braces 2. ICT 3. talking
4. text 5. sign 6. opinion

Final revision Answer

7. a hearing aid 8. proud 9. information
10. Roar 11. Route 12. crawls
13. walker

4) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. could 2. I knew 3. asked
4. if 5. if I lived 6. kindest
7. the strongest 8. biggest 9. the tallest
10. the funniest 11. was 12. if I had
13. least difficult

5) Put the words in the correct order.

1. Elephants are the most powerful animals in India.
2. Talia ran the fastest in the 200-meter race.
3. That movie was the worst I've ever seen.
4. Geography isn't the most difficult subject at school.
5. My grandfather is the oldest person in my family.
6. Cartoons are the funniest programs on TV.
7. Mom asked me why I liked English.
8. What do you think about comic books?

6) Write a text of (70) words about:

Description of a friend

Tom is my best friend. He is 12 years old. He is from England. He is English. He is tall and wears glasses. He has short brown hair. He has green eyes. He can play football, but he can't play tennis. He loves reading and always has a book in his hand. His favorite color is yellow. His favorite food is pizza. He also likes pets. He has a small puppy. He is friendly and nice. He is always happy.

The Story

1) read and write Yes or No

1. No 2. Yes 3. No
4. Yes 5. Yes 6. No
7. Yes 8. No 9. Yes
10. Yes 11. No 12. Yes
13. Yes 14. No 15. No
16. No 17. No 18. No
19. No 20. No

2) Read and answer.

1. She offered to make them cookies.
2. He saw his mom and dad's boots, and they were muddy.
3. They went to Grandma's house every day.
4. His friend Shady.
5. She showed him a large information board with a plan on it.
6. She had to read her new book in braille.
7. His parents might forget his school concert.
8. He went to the garage to get his football.
9. On the other side of the park.
10. They were digging.
11. Because they were working in the park.
12. They were making a playground with a sensory garden.
13. By chance, when he heard them in the park.

Tests

Test (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. apartment 2. comfortable
3. sister 4. cupboard

2) Read and complete the text.

1. laptop 2. games
3. lighting 4. appliances

3) Comprehension.

1. Anish Kapoor's life 2. sculptures 3. sculptor
4. He likes to use new and interesting shapes and materials.
5. Because it is made of stainless steel.

4) The Reader.

A) 1. Yes 2. Yes 3. No 4. Yes

B) 1. He put them neatly.
2. When she was a baby.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. mix 2. if 3. won't
4. up 5. put 6. after

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1. If you are free, visit us.
2. You should hang up your clothes.
3. The blender is the best appliance.

7) Write a text of (70) words about:

Your pet

I have a pet turtle. Turtles are nice animals. They need a very large space for their home. They need clean soil to dig in, too. They like to eat flowers and plants. You can also buy special turtle food. They like sleeping in a safe, dark place. They sometimes

need a heat lamp to keep them nice and warm.

Test (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. club 2. cooking
3. special 4. website

2) Read and complete the text.

1. taking 2. exhibition 3. photos 4. cake

3) Comprehension.

1. paint 2. a pottery project 3. clean
4. It's a special oven which gets very hot.
5. They put on aprons over their clothes.

4) The Reader.

A) 1. No 2. Yes 3. Yes 4. No
B) 1. At the school gates.
2. She is Mayar's teacher.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. costumes 2. visit 3. disappear
4. bright 5. chance 6. never

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1. A sculpture is made of wood.
2. They can go on a school vacation tomorrow.
3. What are your favorite activities?

7) Write a text of (70) words about:

A school trip

School trips are exciting learning experiences. We can learn a lot by visiting new places. School trips are often interesting. When we go back to school, we can do a project about what we saw on the trip. School trips are a very important part of our education. Let's try to go on one school trip every year.

Test (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. creative 2. clay
3. pottery 4. bicycle

2) Read and complete the text.

1. stroke 2. couch 3. claws 4. vaccination

3) Comprehension.

1. interesting 2. spheres 3. naughty
4. On a beautiful beach.
5. He was surprised to see so many balls.

4) The Reader.

A) 1. No 2. Yes 3. Yes 4. No
B) 1. They were making a sensory garden.
2. His concert.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. What 2. feel 3. rains
4. will go 5. under 6. hang up

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1. We use a blender to make milkshakes.
2. Are you always nervous on stage?
3. Sameh doesn't like reading comic books.

7) Write a text of (70) words about:

A school trip

Last weekend, I went on a school trip. We went to the park. We went on the school bus. It was a sunny day. We played games and had fun. Some students played football. I played tennis with some boys. In the afternoon, we had some snacks. It was great fun. We enjoyed very much.

Test (4)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. parents 2. kitten
3. paper 4. curious

2) Read and complete the text.

1. roofs 2. building 3. clean 4. students

3) Comprehension.

1. wheel 2. making pottery 3. easy
4. They put on aprons.
5. He used special paint to decorate it.

4) The Reader.

A) 1. No 2. Yes 3. Yes 4. No
B) 1. They went to the park.
2. That they were making a sensory garden.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. quickly 2. does 3. so
4. started 5. hurries 6. up

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1. I prefer making things with my hand.
2. What does the doctor put on the bite?
3. Electricity is most important for lighting.

7) Write a text of (70) words about:

My big house

Last week, we moved into a new house. It is very big. It has a big living room where I can play and watch TV. There are three bedrooms. I'm happy because I have a new bedroom. It's large and I share it with my brother. The kitchen is bigger, so Mom can cook easily. There are two bathrooms. We have a big garden where we play and have fun with our friends.

Test (5)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. took 2. theme park
3. a restaurant 4. visit

2) Read and complete the text.

1. think 2. opinion 3. about 4. me

3) Comprehension.

1. two 2. noodles 3. delicious
4. To show their age.
5. They get presents.

4) The Reader.

A) 1. Yes 2. No 3. No 4. Yes
B) 1. Because they were digging in the park.
2. She's Mayar's teacher.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. can't 2. take 3. up
4. Swimming 5. theater 6. will

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1. Sometimes my brother's bedroom is messy.
2. Amal never looks at her phone before she goes to bed.
3. Dalia usually reads her book on the bus.

7) Write a text of (70) words about:

Your school

I go to Al-Manar School. It's very big. It's an amazing school. There is a big laboratory where students do experiments. We have a science department with a lot of equipment. It has a playground with a big open area. There is a computer lab. There are many big classrooms where we study easily. I'm proud of my school.

Test (6)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. month 2. bedroom
3. desk 4. games

2) Read and complete the text.

1. grade 2. friends 3. subject 4. computer

3) Comprehension.

1. project 2. library 3. green
4. He wants to collect the rubbish in the school.
5. She gives them a prize.

4) The Reader.

A) 1. Yes 2. No 3. No 4. Yes
B) 1. Cookies.
2. She is Mayar's teacher.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. make 2. do 3. for
4. may 5. up 6. stay

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1. You have one hour to tidy up your bedroom.
2. What's your favorite kitchen tool?
3. I do a new sport at the club.

7) Write a text of (70) words about:

Your favorite food

Food is very important for our bodies. We need food to be healthy and strong. My mom makes healthy food for us. I help her make breakfast and lunch. She always says we should eat well. She often makes us pizza every weekend. We should drink a lot of water and fresh juice. Healthy food gives us vitamins that protect our bodies.

Test (7)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. sweet 2. robot
3. day 4. chores

2) Read and complete the text.

1. raining 2. home
3. chores 4. hour

3) Comprehension.

1. Bill robots 2. koshari 3. bad
4. They were making milkshakes.
5. They broke down.

4) The Reader.

A) 1. No 2. Yes 3. Yes 4. No
B) 1. At their grandma's house.
2. They heard some people talking. It sounded like Asser's parents.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. have 2. up
3. asked 4. happiest
5. How often 6. Running

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1. Where is the nature trail?
2. Your cat needs a vaccination.
3. Hassan Fathy was a famous Egyptian architect.

7) Write a text of (70) words about:

School Trips

In my opinion, school trips are exciting learning experiences. We can learn a lot by visiting new places. When we learn about something in

the classroom and then see it in real life, we understand it better. School trips are often more interesting than only reading about things in books or watching videos.

Test (8)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. get up 2. bright
3. comfortable 4. breakfast

2) Read and complete the text.

1. small 2. steep
3. bridge 4. quickest

3) Comprehension.

1. Britain 2. tools 3. his works
4. He presents his works outdoors in their natural environment.
5. Because they are in the wind, sun and rain.

4) The Reader.

A) 1. Yes 2. No 3. Yes 4. No

B) 1. In the park.

2. His school concert.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. boils 2. up
3. had 4. oldest
5. On 6. Would

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1. A computer engineer solved the problem.
2. My brother's bedroom is sometimes messy.
3. Ahmed is always worried before a concert.

7) Write a text of (70) words about:

Studying the past

I believe that studying the past helps us understand the present. In my opinion, it is important that we understand how past events have created the present. We can learn a lot by studying the past. History helps us understand our society and other cultures because we learn about life in the past, important artists, scientists, and politicians.

Test (9)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. Bangladesh 2. boat
3. floods 4. twenty

2) Read and complete the dialog.

1. worried 2. art
3. creative 4. playground

3) Comprehension.

1. care for cats 2. fifteen 3. dangerous
4. They sometimes sleep on the couch.
5. To feel safe.

4) The Reader.

A) 1. Yes 2. No 3. No 4. Yes

B) 1. Because they were digging. 2. The fountain.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. can stay 2. how we communicated
3. best 4. never
5. on 6. out

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1. What is the most difficult sport?
2. I prefer making things with my hand.
3. Dalia is going to make costumes for the choir.

7) Write a text of (70) words about:

Chores at home

Mom is visiting Grandma. I'm going to help her. First, I'll do the kitchen. I need to put out the trash. I think there's some orange juice on the floor, so I'll mop up the orange juice before I put away the dishes in the cupboard. Next, I need to clean the carpets in all the rooms, and I need to pick up my sister's toys from the floor. Then, I'll hang up my coat in my bedroom cupboard, and finally, I'll tidy up the living room.

Test (10)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. 1967 2. musician
3. Finland 4. northern

2) Read and complete the text.

1. birthday 2. organizing
3. surprise 4. cakes

3) Comprehension.

1. computer 2. animations 3. worried
4. He plays the violin.
5. He is making a story with moving pictures.

4) The Reader.

A) 1. No 2. Yes 3. Yes 4. No

B) 1. They were muddy.

2. At Grandma's house.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. give 2. up
3. were building 4. the tallest
5. feel 6. asked

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1. I want to buy a present for mom.

2. What did the elephant do?
3. My brother puts out the garbage.

7) Write a text of (70) words about:

Green City School

At Green City School, they want to help the environment. They use solar panels to make electricity. They recycle a lot of paper. They have a school garden to grow plants, vegetables, and fruit. It is a great place to learn about nature. The climbing frame in the Eco-playground is made of recycled materials. The library is green because all the electricity comes from solar panels.

Test (11)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. competition 2. creative
3. painting 4. happy

2) Read and complete the text.

1. park 2. object
3. photograph 4. carefully

3) Comprehension.

1. interesting 2. brown 3. Asser
4. He wears glasses. 5. He is good at science.

4) The Reader.

A) 1. Yes 2. No 3. Yes 4. No
B) 1. They learned braille.
2. Outside he garage.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. usually studies 2. will make
3. I lived 4. biggest
5. Could 6. never

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1. It's my grandma's birthday next week.
2. Mom isn't at work today.
3. When you heat water, it boils.

7) Write a text of (70) words about:

Tall Tree and the Eye sculpture

Tall Tree and the Eye is a famous sculpture by Anish Kapoor. It stands outside the Guggenheim Museum in Bilbao, Spain. This sculpture is about 13 meters tall. It is made of 73 stainless steel balls or spheres. Stainless steel is very shiny, so when you look at Tall Tree and the Eye, you can see your own face many times. The spheres are arranged in an irregular pattern. This makes them look like bubbles that are floating!

Test (12)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. sculptor 2. India
3. art 4. shapes

2) Read and complete the text.

1. arm 2. movable
3. book 4. understand

3) Comprehension.

1. sculpture 2. well-known 3. irregular
4. Anish Kapoor.
5. He understands math well and also materials.

4) The Reader.

A) 1. Yes 2. Yes 3. Yes 4. No
B) 1. The fountain 2. They looked surprised.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. always 2. make
3. up 4. put
5. often 6. I lived

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1. My house is near the bus stop.
2. She is putting away the dishes.
3. How often do you tidy up your room?

7) Write a text of (70) words about:

School trips

In my opinion, school trips are exciting learning experiences. First of all, we can learn a lot by visiting new places. In addition, school trips are often more interesting than only reading about things in books or watching videos. Finally, school trips should be at least once a year.

Test (13)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. education 2. elementary
3. Nomadic 4. flexible

2) Read and complete the text.

1. groups 2. advertisement
3. information 4. kindness

3) Comprehension.

1. tall 2. green 3. straight
3. He wears glasses.
4. To help her teeth get straight.

4) The Reader.

A) 1. Yes 2. No 3. No 4. Yes
B) 1. They learned braille.

2. They were surprised.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. biggest 2. happy
3. was 4. paint
5. after 6. inform

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1. Elephants roar to get attention.
2. Sameh was on school vacation.
3. What do you do when you are hungry?

7) Write a text of (70) words about:

A strange day

Yesterday, it was a strange day. We had a power outage in our school. My class and I were looking at the interactive whiteboard. Suddenly, all the information disappeared. First, Mr Khaled asked us all to sit in a circle and talk about the electricity. We know that electricity is important in our lives. It was a really interesting discussion.

Test (14)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. weeks 2. piano
3. beautiful 4. costumes

2) Read and complete the text.

1. opinion 2. right 3. addition 4. do

3) Comprehension.

1. blender 2. American
3. blade 4. She makes delicious soups.
5. Stephen Poplawski.

4) The Reader.

A) 1. Yes 2. No 3. Yes. 4. No

B) 1. It showed lots of new play equipment.
2. In the park.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. set 2. up
3. had 4. asked
5. feels 6. before

6) Put the words in the correct order.

1. Lilly never walks to school.
2. A cat needs a scratch post.
3. Where did they play football?

7) Write a text of (70) words about:

Caring for your turtle

Turtles are nice animals. They like to eat flowers and plants. You can buy them special turtle food. Turtles need a very large space for their home. They need clean soil to dig in, too. They sometimes need a heat lamp. This is a special light to keep the turtle nice and warm.

Test (15)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. lots 2. safe
3. stroke 4. hand

2) Read and complete the dialog.

1. concert 2. Thank
3. tired 4. guitar

3) Comprehension.

1. sculptor 2. Spain 3. Indian
4. In India. 5. About 13 meters tall.

4) The Reader.

A) 1. No 2. Yes 3. No 4. Yes

B) 1. Cookies
2. He saw them in the park digging.

5) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. take 2. out
3. never 4. coldest
5. Would 6. often

6) Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. What is the easiest subject in school?
2. Cats like a comfortable bed.
3. I'll make a smoothie with fruit and ice.

7) Write a text of (70) words about:

Electricity

In my opinion, electricity is useful in our free time. We play video games on the laptop. Electricity is important in the kitchen. We can't use our electric kettle without electricity. Electricity is important for lighting. We don't like the dark, and we need lights in the evening.